



Red Hat Directory Server 10

Administration Guide

Updated for Directory Server 10.6

Red Hat Directory Server 10 Administration Guide

Updated for Directory Server 10.6

Marc Muehlfeld
Red Hat Customer Content Services
mmuehlfeld@redhat.com

Petr Bokoč
Red Hat Customer Content Services

Tomáš Čapek
Red Hat Customer Content Services

Petr Kovář
Red Hat Customer Content Services

Ella Deon Ballard
Red Hat Customer Content Services

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2020 Red Hat, Inc.

This document is licensed by Red Hat under the [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License](#). If you distribute this document, or a modified version of it, you must provide attribution to Red Hat, Inc. and provide a link to the original. If the document is modified, all Red Hat trademarks must be removed.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, the Red Hat logo, JBoss, OpenShift, Fedora, the Infinity logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux[®] is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java[®] is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS[®] is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL[®] is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js[®] is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack[®] Word Mark and OpenStack logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Abstract

This guide covers both GUI and command-line procedures for managing Directory Server instances and databases. This documentation is no longer maintained. For details, see .

Table of Contents

DEPRECATED DOCUMENTATION	6
CHAPTER 1. BASIC RED HAT DIRECTORY SERVER SETTINGS	7
1.1. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	7
1.2. FILE LOCATIONS	7
1.3. STARTING THE DIRECTORY SERVER MANAGEMENT CONSOLE	7
1.4. STARTING AND STOPPING A DIRECTORY SERVER INSTANCE	9
1.5. STARTING AND STOPPING THE DIRECTORY SERVER ADMINISTRATION SERVER SERVICE	11
1.6. ENABLING LDAP	12
1.7. CHANGING DIRECTORY SERVER PORT NUMBERS	13
1.8. MANAGING DIRECTORY SERVER INSTANCES	16
1.9. USING DIRECTORY SERVER PLUG-INS	17
1.10. SERVER CONFIGURATION ATTRIBUTES	22
CHAPTER 2. CONFIGURING DIRECTORY DATABASES	24
2.1. CREATING AND MAINTAINING SUFFIXES	24
2.2. CREATING AND MAINTAINING DATABASES	33
2.3. CREATING AND MAINTAINING DATABASE LINKS	43
2.4. CONFIGURING CASCADING CHAINING	66
2.5. USING REFERRALS	77
CHAPTER 3. MANAGING DIRECTORY ENTRIES	86
3.1. MANAGING ENTRIES USING THE COMMAND LINE	86
3.2. MANAGING ENTRIES USING THE DIRECTORY CONSOLE	96
CHAPTER 4. TRACKING MODIFICATIONS TO DIRECTORY ENTRIES	112
4.1. TRACKING MODIFICATIONS TO THE DATABASE THROUGH UPDATE SEQUENCE NUMBERS	112
4.2. TRACKING ENTRY MODIFICATIONS THROUGH OPERATIONAL ATTRIBUTES	115
4.3. TRACKING THE BIND DN FOR PLUG-IN INITIATED UPDATES	116
4.4. TRACKING PASSWORD CHANGE TIMES	117
CHAPTER 5. MAINTAINING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY	119
5.1. HOW REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY WORKS	119
5.2. USING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY WITH REPLICATION	120
5.3. ENABLING AND DISABLING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY	120
5.4. MODIFYING THE UPDATE INTERVAL	121
5.5. MODIFYING THE ATTRIBUTE LIST	122
5.6. CONFIGURING SCOPE FOR THE REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY	123
CHAPTER 6. POPULATING DIRECTORY DATABASES	124
6.1. IMPORTING DATA	124
6.2. EXPORTING DATA	132
6.3. BACKING UP AND RESTORING DATA	136
CHAPTER 7. MANAGING ATTRIBUTES AND VALUES	146
7.1. ENFORCING ATTRIBUTE UNIQUENESS	146
7.2. ASSIGNING CLASS OF SERVICE	151
7.3. LINKING ATTRIBUTES TO MANAGE ATTRIBUTE VALUES	174
7.4. ASSIGNING AND MANAGING UNIQUE NUMERIC ATTRIBUTE VALUES	178
CHAPTER 8. ORGANIZING AND GROUPING ENTRIES	188
8.1. USING GROUPS	188
8.2. USING ROLES	210

8.3. AUTOMATICALLY CREATING DUAL ENTRIES	226
8.4. USING VIEWS	234
CHAPTER 9. CONFIGURING SECURE CONNECTIONS	242
9.1. REQUIRING SECURE CONNECTIONS	242
9.2. SETTING A MINIMUM STRENGTH FACTOR	242
9.3. MANAGING THE NSS DATABASE USED BY DIRECTORY SERVER	243
9.4. ENABLING TLS	256
9.5. DISPLAYING THE ENCRYPTION PROTOCOLS ENABLED IN DIRECTORY SERVER	270
9.6. SETTING THE ENCRYPTION PROTOCOL VERSIONS	271
9.7. USING HARDWARE SECURITY MODULES	272
9.8. USING CERTIFICATE-BASED CLIENT AUTHENTICATION	272
9.9. SETTING UP SASL IDENTITY MAPPING	275
9.10. USING KERBEROS GSS-API WITH SASL	282
9.11. SETTING SASL MECHANISMS	284
9.12. USING SASL WITH LDAP CLIENTS	285
CHAPTER 10. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION	286
10.1. ENCRYPTION KEYS	287
10.2. ENCRYPTION CIPHERS	287
10.3. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION FROM THE CONSOLE	288
10.4. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION USING THE COMMAND LINE	289
10.5. ENABLING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION FOR EXISTING ATTRIBUTE VALUES	290
10.6. GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS AFTER ENABLING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION	290
10.7. EXPORTING AND IMPORTING AN ENCRYPTED DATABASE	290
10.8. UPDATING THE TLS CERTIFICATES USED FOR ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION	292
CHAPTER 11. MANAGING FIPS MODE SUPPORT	293
Enabling FIPS Mode Support	293
Disabling FIPS Mode Support	293
CHAPTER 12. MANAGING THE DIRECTORY SCHEMA	294
12.1. OVERVIEW OF SCHEMA	294
12.2. MANAGING OBJECT IDENTIFIERS	298
12.3. DIRECTORY SERVER ATTRIBUTE SYNTAXES	299
12.4. MANAGING CUSTOM SCHEMA IN THE CONSOLE	299
12.5. MANAGING SCHEMA USING LDAPMODIFY	306
12.6. CREATING CUSTOM SCHEMA FILES	308
12.7. DYNAMICALLY RELOADING SCHEMA	310
12.8. TURNING SCHEMA CHECKING ON AND OFF	312
12.9. USING SYNTAX VALIDATION	314
CHAPTER 13. MANAGING INDEXES	318
13.1. ABOUT INDEXES	318
13.2. CREATING STANDARD INDEXES	322
13.3. GENERATING NEW INDEXES TO EXISTING DATABASES	326
13.4. CREATING BROWSING (VLV) INDEXES	327
13.5. CHANGING THE INDEX SORT ORDER	332
13.6. CHANGING THE WIDTH FOR INDEXED SUBSTRING SEARCHES	333
13.7. DELETING INDEXES	334
CHAPTER 14. FINDING DIRECTORY ENTRIES	341
14.1. IMPROVING SEARCH PERFORMANCE THROUGH RESOURCE LIMITS	341
14.2. FINDING ENTRIES USING THE DIRECTORY SERVER CONSOLE	346
14.3. USING LDAPSEARCH	348

14.4. LDAP SEARCH FILTERS	351
14.5. EXAMPLES OF COMMON LDAPSEARCHES	365
14.6. USING PERSISTENT SEARCH	370
14.7. SEARCHING WITH SPECIFIED CONTROLS	370
CHAPTER 15. MANAGING REPLICATION	377
15.1. REPLICATION OVERVIEW	377
15.2. CONFIGURING REPLICATION FROM THE COMMAND LINE	380
15.3. REPLICATION SCENARIOS	389
15.4. CREATING THE SUPPLIER BIND DN ENTRY	393
15.5. CONFIGURING SINGLE-MASTER REPLICATION	395
15.6. CONFIGURING MULTI-MASTER REPLICATION	404
15.7. CONFIGURING CASCADING REPLICATION	416
15.8. TEMPORARILY SUSPENDING REPLICATION	428
15.9. DISABLING AND RE-ENABLING A REPLICATION AGREEMENT	428
15.10. MANAGING ATTRIBUTES WITHIN FRACTIONAL REPLICATION	429
15.11. MAKING A READ-ONLY REPLICA UPDATABLE	431
15.12. REMOVING A SUPPLIER FROM THE REPLICATION TOPOLOGY	432
15.13. MANAGING DELETED ENTRIES WITH REPLICATION	434
15.14. CONFIGURING CHANGELOG ENCRYPTION	435
15.15. REMOVING THE CHANGELOG	436
15.16. MOVING THE REPLICATION CHANGELOG DIRECTORY	437
15.17. TRIMMING THE REPLICATION CHANGELOG	438
15.18. INITIALIZING CONSUMERS	440
15.19. FORCING REPLICATION UPDATES	444
15.20. REPLICATION OVER TLS	445
15.21. SETTING REPLICATION TIMEOUT PERIODS	447
15.22. REPLICATING O=NETSCAPERROOT FOR ADMINISTRATION SERVER FAILOVER	447
15.23. USING THE RETRO CHANGELOG PLUG-IN	449
15.24. MONITORING REPLICATION STATUS	451
15.25. COMPARING TWO DIRECTORY SERVER INSTANCES	455
15.26. SOLVING COMMON REPLICATION CONFLICTS	457
15.27. TROUBLESHOOTING REPLICATION-RELATED PROBLEMS	463
CHAPTER 16. SYNCHRONIZING RED HAT DIRECTORY SERVER WITH MICROSOFT ACTIVE DIRECTORY ...	467
16.1. ABOUT WINDOWS SYNCHRONIZATION	467
16.2. SUPPORTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY VERSIONS	470
16.3. SYNCHRONIZING PASSWORDS	470
16.4. STEPS FOR CONFIGURING WINDOWS SYNCHRONIZATION	471
16.5. SYNCHRONIZING USERS	486
16.6. SYNCHRONIZING GROUPS	493
16.7. CONFIGURING UNI-DIRECTIONAL SYNCHRONIZATION	500
16.8. CONFIGURING MULTIPLE SUBTREES AND FILTERS IN WINDOWS SYNCHRONIZATION	501
16.9. SYNCHRONIZING POSIX ATTRIBUTES FOR USERS AND GROUPS	502
16.10. DELETING AND RESURRECTING ENTRIES	503
16.11. SENDING SYNCHRONIZATION UPDATES	504
16.12. MODIFYING THE SYNCHRONIZATION AGREEMENT	507
16.13. MANAGING THE PASSWORD SYNC SERVICE	513
16.14. TROUBLESHOOTING	515
CHAPTER 17. SETTING UP CONTENT SYNCHRONIZATION	517
CHAPTER 18. MANAGING ACCESS CONTROL	519

18.1. ACCESS CONTROL PRINCIPLES	519
18.2. ACI PLACEMENT	519
18.3. ACI STRUCTURE	520
18.4. ACI EVALUATION	520
18.5. LIMITATIONS OF ACIS	521
18.6. HOW DIRECTORY SERVER HANDLES ACIS IN A REPLICATION TOPOLOGY	521
18.7. DISPLAYING ACIS	522
18.8. ADDING AN ACI	522
18.9. DELETING AN ACI	526
18.10. UPDATING AN ACI	527
18.11. DEFINING TARGETS	528
18.12. DEFINING PERMISSIONS	536
18.13. DEFINING BIND RULES	539
18.14. CHECKING ACCESS RIGHTS ON ENTRIES (GET EFFECTIVE RIGHTS)	555
18.15. LOGGING ACCESS CONTROL INFORMATION	566
18.16. ADVANCED ACCESS CONTROL: USING MACRO ACIS	567
18.17. SETTING ACCESS CONTROLS ON DIRECTORY MANAGER	572
18.18. COMPATIBILITY WITH PREVIOUS RELEASES	574
CHAPTER 19. MANAGING USER AUTHENTICATION	575
19.1. SETTING USER PASSWORDS	575
19.2. SETTING PASSWORD ADMINISTRATORS	575
19.3. CHANGING PASSWORDS STORED EXTERNALLY	576
19.4. MANAGING THE PASSWORD POLICY	577
19.5. UNDERSTANDING PASSWORD EXPIRATION CONTROLS	587
19.6. MANAGING THE DIRECTORY MANAGER PASSWORD	588
19.7. CHECKING ACCOUNT AVAILABILITY FOR PASSWORDLESS ACCESS	592
19.8. CONFIGURING A PASSWORD-BASED ACCOUNT LOCKOUT POLICY	594
19.9. CONFIGURING TIME-BASED ACCOUNT LOCKOUT POLICIES	596
19.10. REPLICATING ACCOUNT LOCKOUT ATTRIBUTES	603
19.11. ENABLING DIFFERENT TYPES OF BINDS	605
19.12. USING PASS-THROUGH AUTHENTICATION	611
19.13. USING ACTIVE DIRECTORY-FORMATTED USER NAMES FOR AUTHENTICATION	619
19.14. USING PAM FOR PASS-THROUGH AUTHENTICATION	620
19.15. MANUALLY INACTIVATING USERS AND ROLES	626
CHAPTER 20. MONITORING SERVER AND DATABASE ACTIVITY	630
20.1. TYPES OF DIRECTORY SERVER LOG FILES	630
20.2. DISPLAYING LOG FILES	630
20.3. CONFIGURING LOG FILES	631
20.4. GETTING ACCESS LOG STATISTICS	639
20.5. MONITORING THE LOCAL DISK FOR GRACEFUL SHUTDOWN	642
20.6. MONITORING SERVER ACTIVITY	644
20.7. MONITORING DATABASE ACTIVITY	651
20.8. MONITORING DATABASE LINK ACTIVITY	657
20.9. ENABLING AND DISABLING COUNTERS	658
CHAPTER 21. MONITORING DIRECTORY SERVER USING SNMP	659
21.1. ABOUT SNMP	659
21.2. CONFIGURING THE DIRECTORY SERVER FOR SNMP	659
21.3. SETTING UP AN SNMP AGENT FOR DIRECTORY SERVER	660
21.4. CONFIGURING SNMP TRAPS	661
21.5. USING THE MANAGEMENT INFORMATION BASE	662

CHAPTER 22. MAKING A HIGH-AVAILABILITY AND DISASTER RECOVERY PLAN	667
22.1. IDENTIFYING POTENTIAL SCENARIOS	667
22.2. DEFINING THE TYPE OF ROLLOVER	668
22.3. IDENTIFYING USEFUL DIRECTORY SERVER FEATURES FOR DISASTER RECOVERY	668
22.4. DEFINING THE RECOVERY PROCESS	670
22.5. BASIC EXAMPLE: PERFORMING A RECOVERY	670
APPENDIX A. USING LDAP CLIENT TOOLS	672
A.1. RUNNING EXTENDED OPERATIONS	672
A.2. COMPARING ENTRIES	673
A.3. CHANGING PASSWORDS	674
A.4. GENERATING LDAP URLS	675
APPENDIX B. LDAP DATA INTERCHANGE FORMAT	678
B.1. ABOUT THE LDIF FILE FORMAT	678
B.2. CONTINUING LINES IN LDIF	679
B.3. REPRESENTING BINARY DATA	680
B.4. SPECIFYING DIRECTORY ENTRIES USING LDIF	681
B.5. DEFINING DIRECTORIES USING LDIF	685
B.6. STORING INFORMATION IN MULTIPLE LANGUAGES	687
APPENDIX C. LDAP URLS	689
C.1. COMPONENTS OF AN LDAP URL	689
C.2. ESCAPING UNSAFE CHARACTERS	690
C.3. EXAMPLES OF LDAP URLS	691
APPENDIX D. INTERNATIONALIZATION	693
D.1. ABOUT LOCALES	693
D.2. SUPPORTED LOCALES	693
D.3. SUPPORTED LANGUAGE SUBTYPES	694
D.4. SEARCHING AN INTERNATIONALIZED DIRECTORY	696
D.5. TROUBLESHOOTING MATCHING RULES	701
APPENDIX E. MANAGING THE ADMINISTRATION SERVER	702
E.1. INTRODUCTION TO RED HAT ADMINISTRATION SERVER	702
E.2. ADMINISTRATION SERVER CONFIGURATION	703
APPENDIX F. USING ADMIN EXPRESS	722
F.1. MANAGING SERVERS IN ADMIN EXPRESS	722
F.2. CONFIGURING ADMIN EXPRESS	724
APPENDIX G. USING THE CONSOLE	732
G.1. OVERVIEW OF THE DIRECTORY SERVER CONSOLE	732
G.2. CHANGING THE CONSOLE APPEARANCE	740
G.3. MANAGING SERVER INSTANCES	750
G.4. MANAGING DIRECTORY SERVER USERS AND GROUPS	753
G.5. SETTING ACCESS CONTROLS	768
INDEX	775
APPENDIX H. REVISION HISTORY	817

DEPRECATED DOCUMENTATION



IMPORTANT

Note that as of November 30, 2020, the support for Red Hat Directory Server 10 has ended. For details, see ["Red Hat Directory Server Life Cycle policy"](#). Red Hat recommends users of Directory Server 10 to update to the latest version.

Due to the end of the maintenance phase of this product, this documentation is no longer updated. Use it only as a reference!

CHAPTER 1. BASIC RED HAT DIRECTORY SERVER SETTINGS

The Red Hat Directory Server includes a directory service, an administration server to manage multiple server instances, and a Java-based console to manage server instances through a graphical interface. This chapter provides an overview of the basic tasks for administering a directory service.

The Directory Server is a robust, scalable server designed to manage an enterprise-wide directory of users and resources. It is based on an open-systems server protocol called the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). The server manages the directory databases and responds to client requests.

Directory Server is comprised of several components, which work in tandem:

- The *Directory Server* is the core LDAP server daemon. It is compliant with LDAP v3 standards. This component includes command-line server management and administration programs and scripts for common operations like export and backing up databases.
- The *Directory Server Console* is the user interface that simplifies management of users, groups, and other LDAP data. The Console is used for all aspects of the server management, including backups; security, replication, or databases configuration; server monitoring; and viewing statistics.
- The *Administration Server* is the management agent which administers Directory Server instances. It communicates with the Directory Server Console and performs operations on the Directory Server instances. It also provides a simple HTML interface and online help pages.

You can administer Directory Server by using command-line utilities, but it is also possible to use the Directory Server Console.

1.1. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

See the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server 10 Release Notes](#).

1.2. FILE LOCATIONS

See the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

1.3. STARTING THE DIRECTORY SERVER MANAGEMENT CONSOLE

The Management Console provides a graphical user interface that enables you to perform administrative tasks, such as:

- Managing Directory Server instances
- Managing the Administration Server
- Managing users and groups



NOTE

The Management Console uses Java. For details about the supported Java runtime environments and versions, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Release Notes](#).

To open the Management Console, enter:

```
# redhat-idm-console
```

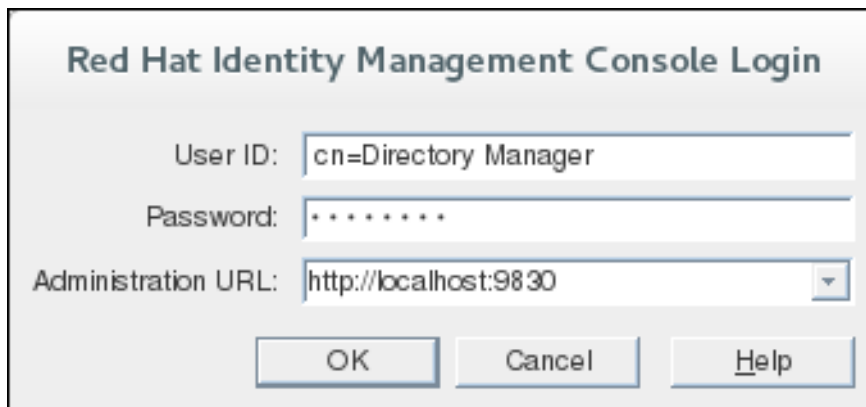
For supported command-line options, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

1.3.1. Opening the Directory Server Console

1. Start the Directory Server Management Console:

```
# redhat-idm-console
```

2. Log in as the **cn=Directory Manager** user:



The image shows a login dialog box titled "Red Hat Identity Management Console Login". It contains three input fields: "User ID" with the value "cn=Directory Manager", "Password" with masked characters "*****", and "Administration URL" with the value "http://localhost:9830". Below the fields are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

3. On the **Servers and Applications** tab, navigate to *administration_domain_name* → *host_name* → **Server Group** → **Directory Server (instance_name)**, and click **Open**.

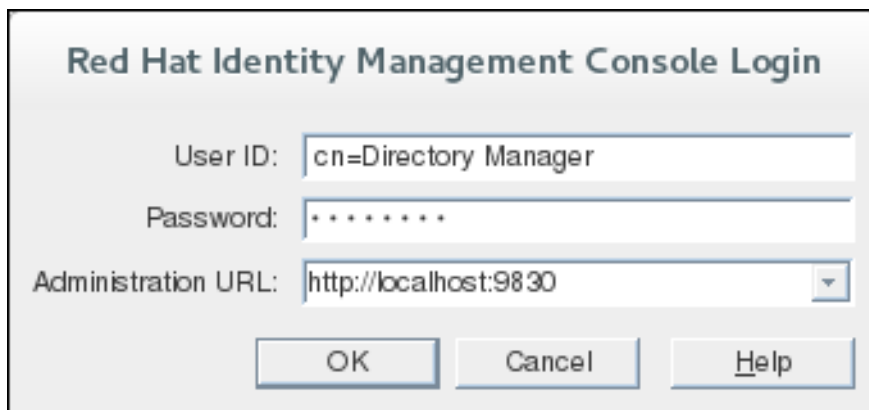


1.3.2. Opening the Administration Server Console

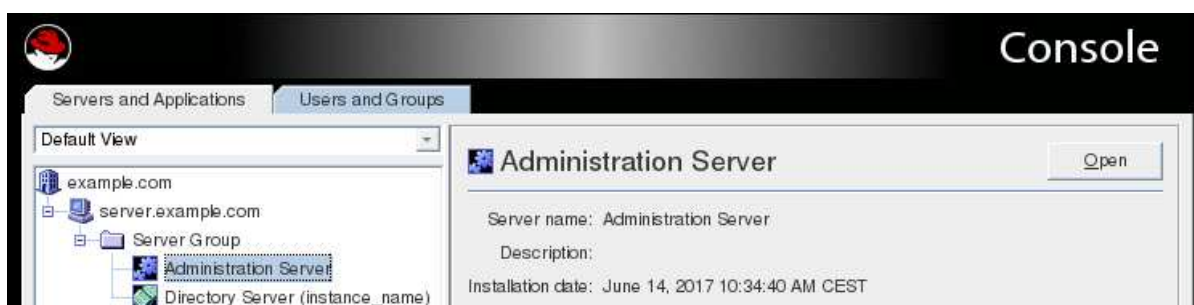
1. Start the Directory Server Management Console:

```
# redhat-idm-console
```

2. Log in as the **cn=Directory Manager** user:



3. On the **Servers and Applications** tab, navigate to *administration_domain_name* → *host_name* → **Server Group** → **Administration Server**, and click **Open**.



1.4. STARTING AND STOPPING A DIRECTORY SERVER INSTANCE

1.4.1. Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Command Line

Use the **systemctl** utility to start, stop, or restart an instance:

- To start an instance:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance_name
```

- To stop an instance:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance_name
```

- To restart an instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

Optionally, you can enable Directory Server instances to automatically start when the system boots:

- for a single instance:

```
# systemctl enable dirsrv@instance_name
```

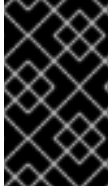
- for all instances on a server:

```
# systemctl enable dirsrv.target
```

For further details, see the [Managing System Services](#) section in the *Red Hat System Administrator's Guide*.

1.4.2. Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Console

Besides the command line, you can use the Directory Server Console to start, stop, or restart instances.



IMPORTANT

If you run SELinux in **enforcing** mode, you cannot use the Console to start or stop an instance. To work around the problem, use the command line to manage the services. See [Section 1.4, "Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance"](#).



IMPORTANT

If you enabled TLS encryption for an instance, Directory Server prompts for the TLS certificate password when the instance starts. The Directory Server Console does not support displaying this password prompt in the GUI. To work around the problem:

- use the command line to manage the service. See [Section 1.4.1, "Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Command Line"](#).
- create a password file. See [Section 9.4.1.5, "Creating a Password File for Directory Server"](#).

To start, stop, or restart a Directory Server instance:

1. Start the Directory Server Console and log in using the **cn=Directory Manager** user name.

For details, see [Section E.2.2, "Opening the Administration Server Console"](#).

2. On the **Servers and Applications** tab, navigate to *administration_domain_name* → *host_name* → **Server Group** → **Directory Server (*instance_name*)**, and click **Open**.



3. On the **Tasks** tab, click the task you want to execute:



4. Click **Yes** to confirm.

After the task finished, the console displays a message if the operation was successful or failed.

1.5. STARTING AND STOPPING THE DIRECTORY SERVER ADMINISTRATION SERVER SERVICE

The Administration Server provides the Directory Server Console – a GUI to manage Directory Server.

1.5.1. Starting and Stopping the Administration Server Service Using the Command Line

Use the **systemctl** utility to start, stop, or restart the Administration Server service:

- To start the service:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv-admin
```

- To stop the service:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv-admin
```

- To restart the service:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv-admin
```

Optionally, enable the Administration Server to automatically start when the system boots:

```
# systemctl enable dirsrv-admin
```

For further details, see the [Managing System Services](#) section in the *Red Hat System Administrator's Guide*.

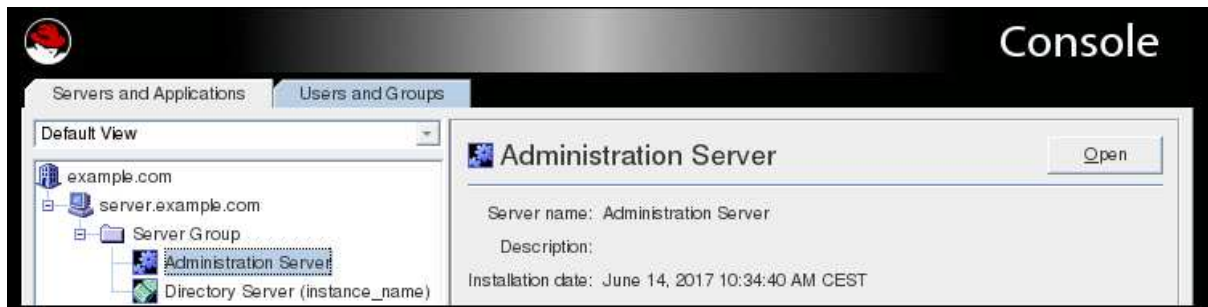
1.5.2. Restarting and Stopping the Administration Server Service Using the Console

To restart or stop the Administration Server service:

1. Start the Directory Server Console and log in using the **cn=Directory Manager** user name.

For details, see [Section E.2.2, "Opening the Administration Server Console"](#).

- On the **Servers and Applications** tab, navigate to *administration_domain_name* → *host_name* → **Server Group** → **Administration Server**, and click **Open**.



- On the **Tasks** tab, click the task you want to execute:



- Click **Yes** to confirm.

After the task finished, the console displays a message if the operation was successful or failed.

1.6. ENABLING LDAPi

Inter-process communication (IPC) is a way for separate processes on a Unix machine or a network to communicate directly with each other. LDAPi allows LDAP connections to run over IPC connections, meaning that LDAP operations can run over Unix sockets. These connections are much faster and more secure than regular LDAP connections.

LDAPi is enabled through two configuration attributes:

- ***nsslapd-ldapilisten*** to enable LDAPi for Directory Server
- ***nsslapd-ldapifilepath*** to point to the Unix socket file

To enable LDAPi:

- Modify the ***nsslapd-ldapilisten*** to turn LDAPi on and add the socket file attribute.

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-ldapilisten
nsslapd-ldapilisten: on
-
add: nsslapd-ldapifilepath
nsslapd-ldapifilepath: /var/run/slapd-example.socket
```

- Restart the server to apply the new configuration.


```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance
```

1.7. CHANGING DIRECTORY SERVER PORT NUMBERS

The standard and secure LDAP port numbers used by Directory Server can be changed through the Directory Server Console or by changing the value of the *nsslapd-port* or *nsslapd-secureport* attribute under the **cn=config** entry in the **dse.ldif**.



NOTE

Modifying the standard or secure port numbers for a Configuration Directory Server, which maintains the **o=NetscapeRoot** subtree, should be done through the Directory Server Console.

1.7.1. Changing Standard Port Numbers

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab, and then select the top entry in the navigation tree in the left pane.
2. Select the **Settings** tab in the right pane.
3. Change the port numbers. The port number for the server to use for non-TLS communications in the **Port** field, with a default value of **389**.
4. Click **Save**.
5. The Console returns a warning, *You are about to change the port number for the Configuration Directory. This will affect all Administration Servers that use this directory and you'll need to update them with the new port number. Are you sure you want to change the port number?* Click **Yes**.
6. Then a dialog appears, reading that the changes will not take effect until the server is restarted. Click **OK**.



NOTE

Do not restart the Directory Server at this point. If you do, you will not be able to make the necessary changes to the Administration Server through the Console.

7. Open the Administration Server Console.
8. In the **Configuration** tab, select the **Configuration DS** tab.



9. In the **LDAP Port** field, type in the new LDAP port number for your Directory Server instance.
10. Change the SELinux labels for the Directory Server ports so that the new port number is used in the Directory Server policies. For example:

```
# semanage port -a -t ldap_port_t -p tcp 1389
```



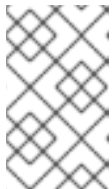
WARNING

If the SELinux label is not reset, then the Directory Server will not be able to be restarted.

11. In the **Tasks** tab of the Directory Server Console, click **Restart Directory Server**. A dialog to confirm that you want to restart the server. Click **Yes**.
12. Open the **Configuration DS** tab of the Administration Server Console and select **Save**.

A dialog will appear, reading *The Directory Server setting has been modified. You must shutdown and restart your Administration Server and all the servers in the Server Group for the changes to take effect.* Click **OK**.

13. In the **Tasks** tab of the Administration Server Console, click **Restart Admin Server**. A dialog opens reading that the Administration Server has been successfully restarted. Click **Close**.



NOTE

You *must* close and reopen the Console before you can do anything else in the Console. Refresh may not update the Console, and, if you try to do anything, you will get a warning that reads *Unable to contact LDAP server*.

1.7.2. Changing the LDAPS Port Numbers

Changing the configuration directory or user directory port or secure port numbers has the following repercussions:

- The Directory Server port number must also be updated in the Administration Server configuration.
- If there are other Directory Server instances that point to the configuration or user directory, update those servers to point to the new port number.

To modify the LDAPS port:

1. Make sure that the CA certificate used to issue the Directory Server instance's certificate is in the Administration Server certificate database. Importing CA certificates for the Administration Server is the same as the Directory Server process described in [Section 9.3.3, "Installing a CA Certificate"](#).
2. The secure port can be configured using the Directory Server Console, much like the process in [Section 1.7.1, "Changing Standard Port Numbers"](#) (only setting the value in the **Encrypted Port** field). However, in some circumstances, such as if there are multiple Directory Server instances on the same machine, where changing port numbers may not be possible through the Directory Server Console. It may be better to use **ldapmodify** to change the port number.

For example:

```
# ldapmodify -x -h server.example.com -p 1389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W
dn: cn=config
replace: nsslapd-securePort
nsslapd-securePort: 1636
```

3. Edit the corresponding port configuration for the Directory Server instance in the Administration Server configuration (**o=netscaperoot**).

First, search for the current configuration:

```
# ldapsearch -x -h config-ds.example.com -p 389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -b
"cn=slapd-ID,cn=389 Directory Server,cn=Server
Group,cn=server.example.com,ou=example.com,o=NetscapeRoot" -s base "(objectclass=*)"
nsSecureServerPort

dn: cn=slapd-ID,cn=389 Directory Server,cn=Server
Group,cn=server.example.com,ou=example.com,o=NetscapeRoot
nsSecureServerPort: 636
```

Then, edit the configuration:

```
# ldapmodify -x -h config-ds.example.com -p 389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W

dn: cn=slapd-ID,cn=389 Directory Server,cn=Server
Group,cn=server.example.com,ou=example.com,o=NetscapeRoot
replace: nsSecureServerPort
nsSecureServerPort: 1636
```

4. Start the Directory Server Console for the instance and confirm that the new LDAPS port number is listed in the **Configuration** tab.
5. Optionally, select the **Use SSL in Console** check box.

6. Change the SELinux labels for the Directory Server ports so that the new port number is used in the Directory Server policies. For example:

```
# semanage port -a -t ldap_port_t -p tcp 1636
```



WARNING

If the SELinux label is not reset, then the Directory Server will not be able to be restarted.

7. Restart the Directory Server instance.

1.8. MANAGING DIRECTORY SERVER INSTANCES

1.8.1. Creating a New Directory Server Instance

For details, see the corresponding sections in the *Red Hat Directory Server Installation Guide*:

- [Creating a new instance using the command line](#)
- [Creating a new instance using the Console](#)

1.8.2. Removing a Directory Server Instance

1.8.2.1. Removing a Directory Server Instance Using the Command Line

It is possible to remove a single instance of Directory Server without uninstalling all other instances, removing an Administration Server instance, or removing the packages.

```
# remove-ds.pl -i slapd-instance_name -a
```

The **remove-ds.pl** script removes any related files and directories if the **-a** (all) option is specified. But the Directory Server instance is not unregistered from the Configuration Directory Server.

By default, the **key** and **cert** files are left in the instance configuration directory, and the configuration directory is renamed **slapd-instance-name.removed**. Using the **-a** option (as shown) removes the security databases, as well.



NOTE

If there is a problem with the Directory Server, like the installation failed or the server cannot be restarted, then running **remove-ds.pl** script fails. In this case, try the **-f** option to force the removal process.

1.8.2.1.1. Removing a Directory Server Instance and Administration Server

It is possible to remove both the Directory Server and the Administration Server (if configured on the same system).

The **-y** option is required for the script to perform the removal operation. Otherwise, the **remove-ds-admin.pl** script performs a dry-run but does not remove any servers.

The **-a** option is not required, but it is recommended if a Directory Server or Administration Server instance may be re-configured on the system later. By default, all of the security databases are preserved by the removal script. The **-a** option removes the security databases, as well.



NOTE

The Directory Server instance must be running for the script to bind to the server.

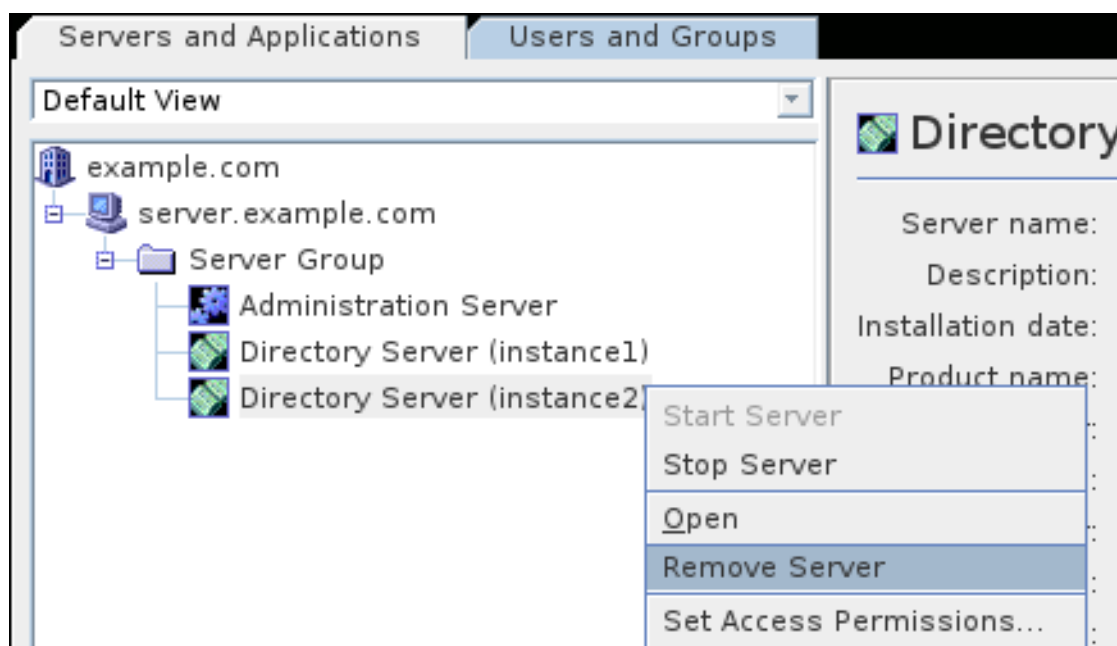


NOTE

If there is a problem with the Directory Server, like the installation failed or the server cannot be restarted, then running **remove-ds-admin.pl** script fails. In this case, try the **-f** option to force the removal process.

1.8.3. Removing a Directory Server Instance Using the Console

1. Open the Directory Server Console. For details, see [Section 1.3.1, "Opening the Directory Server Console"](#).
2. Right-click the server instance, and select **Remove Server**.



3. Click **Yes** to confirm.

1.9. USING DIRECTORY SERVER PLUG-INS

Directory Server has a number of default plug-ins which configure core Directory Server functions, such as replication, classes of service, and even attribute syntaxes. Core plug-ins are enabled and completely configured by default.

Other default plug-ins extend the functionality of the Directory Server by providing consistent, but user-defined, behaviors, as with DNA, attribute uniqueness, and attribute linking. These plug-ins are available, but not all are enabled or configured by default.

Using plug-ins also allows the Directory Server to be easily extended, so customers can write and deploy their own server plug-ins to perform whatever directory operations they need for their specific deployment.

For further details, see:

- [Section 1.9, “Using Directory Server Plug-ins”](#)
- The *Plug-in Implemented Server Functionality Reference* section in the *Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference*
- [Red Hat Directory Server Plug-in Guide](#)

1.9.1. Enabling Plug-ins Dynamically

Directory Server supports dynamic plug-ins that can be enabled without restarting the Directory Server. Allowing for dynamically enabled plug-ins makes server administration significantly easier. By using dynamic plug-ins, you can avoid restarting the server multiple times to install and configure the plug-ins. This makes deploying software applications for the Directory Server much faster.

Each plug-in can be enabled or disabled by switching the value of the **nsslapd-pluginEnabled** attribute. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -x -D 'cn=Directory Manager' -W
dn: cn=Plug-in_name,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

Restarting the Directory Server when plug-ins are reconfigured is not required if you specify the **nsslapd-dynamic-plugins** switch under the **cn=config** entry. To enable the dynamic plug-in feature, set the **nsslapd-dynamic-plugins** attribute to **on**:

```
dn: cn=config
nsslapd-dynamic-plugins: on
```

To disable the dynamic plug-in feature, set the **nsslapd-dynamic-plugins** attribute to **off**:

```
dn: cn=config
nsslapd-dynamic-plugins: off
```

By default, **nsslapd-dynamic-plugins** is set to **off**.

1.9.2. Enabling Plug-ins

1.9.2.1. Enabling Plug-ins in the Command Line

To disable or enable a plug-in through the command line, use the **ldapmodify** utility to edit the value of the **nsslapd-pluginEnabled** attribute. For example:

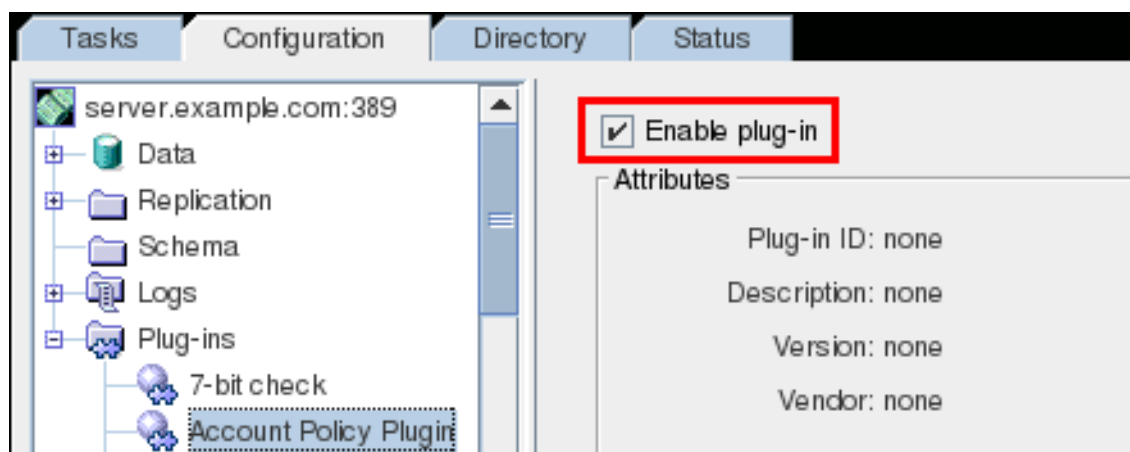
```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: cn=ACL Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

1.9.2.2. Enabling Plug-ins in the Directory Server Console

To enable and disable plug-ins using the Directory Server Console:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Double-click the **Plugins** folder in the navigation tree.
3. Select the plug-in from the **Plugins** list.
4. To disable the plug-in, clear the **Enabled** check box. To enable the plug-in, check this check box.



5. Click **Save**.
6. Restart the Directory Server.

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance
```



NOTE

When a plug-in is disabled, all of the details about the plug-in – such as its version and its vendor – are not displayed in the Directory Server Console; all details fields show **NONE**.

Once a plug-in is enabled, those details will not be displayed in the Console until the Directory Server is restarted (loading the new plug-in configuration) and the Directory Server Console is refreshed.

1.9.3. Configuring Plug-ins

In Directory Server 9 and earlier, you configured plug-ins using the *nsslapd-pluginarg** attributes. Directory Server 10 added support for specific configuration attributes for certain plug-ins.



IMPORTANT

If both the plug-in-specific configuration attributes and the deprecated *nsslapd-pluginarg** attributes are set in a plug-in's configuration, Directory Server only uses settings in plug-in-specific attributes.

The following two examples use the same settings for the **Referential Integrity** plug-in but using the different configuration options:

Example 1.1. Plug-in Configuration using Configuration Attributes

```
referint-update-delay: 0
referint-logfile: /var/log/dirsrv/slapd-localhost/referint
referint-logchanges: 0
referint-membership-attr: member
referint-membership-attr: uniquemember
referint-membership-attr: owner
referint-membership-attr: seeAlso
```



NOTE

Red Hat recommends using only the configuration plug-in-specific attributes. For plug-in-specific attributes, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

Example 1.2. Plug-in Configuration using Plug-in Argument Attributes (Deprecated)

```
nsslapd-pluginarg0: 0
nsslapd-pluginarg1: /var/log/dirsrv/slapd-localhost/referint
nsslapd-pluginarg2: 0
nsslapd-pluginarg3: member
nsslapd-pluginarg4: uniquemember
nsslapd-pluginarg5: owner
nsslapd-pluginarg6: seeAlso
```

1.9.3.1. Configuring Plug-ins using the Command Line

To use the **ldapmodify** utility to configure settings of a plug-in:

1. Identify the distinguished name (DN) of the plug-in's configuration. For details, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).
2. Set the new value. For example, to set the update delay of the **Referential Integrity** plug-in to **0**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=referential integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config
```



```
changetype: modify
replace: referint-update-delay
referint-update-delay: 0
```

- Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

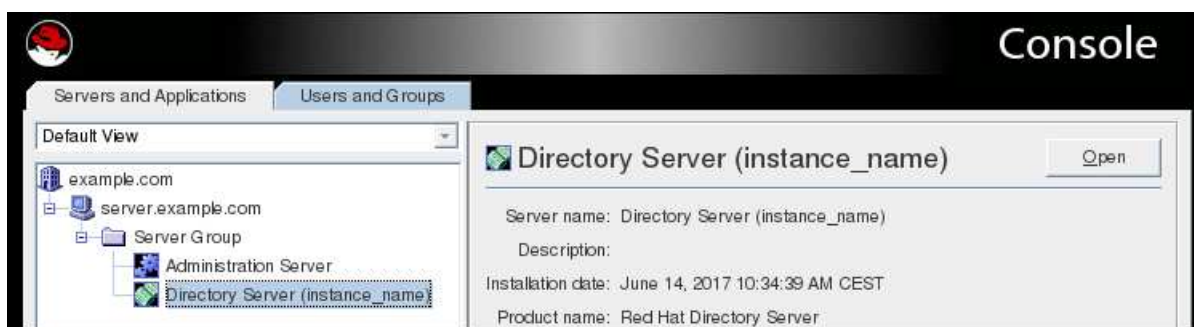
1.9.3.2. Configuring Plug-ins using the Console

To use the Directory Server Console to configure settings of a plug-in:

- Start the Directory Server Console and log in using the **cn=Directory Manager** user name.

For details, see [Section E.2.2, "Opening the Administration Server Console"](#).

- On the **Servers and Applications** tab, navigate to *administration_domain_name* → *host_name* → **Server Group** → **Directory Server (*instance_name*)**, and click **Open**.



- Navigate to **Plug-ins** and select the plug-in to configure.
- Click the **Advanced** button in the right panel.



NOTE

Red Hat recommends to configure the plug-in using the **Property Editor**, which uses the plug-in-specific attributes.

- Set the plug-in-specific attributes.
- Click **OK** to close the **Property Editor**.
- Restart Directory Server. For details, see [Section 1.5.2, "Restarting and Stopping the Administration Server Service Using the Console"](#).

1.9.4. Setting the Plug-in Precedence

The plug-in precedence is the priority it has in the execution order of plug-ins. For pre- and post-operation plug-ins, this allows one plug-in to be executed and complete before the next plug-in is initiated, which lets the second plug-in take advantage of the first plug-in's results.

Plug-in precedence is configured in the **nsslapd-pluginPrecedence** attribute on the plug-in's configuration entry. This attribute has a value of 1 (highest priority) to 99 (lowest priority). If the attribute is not set, it has a default value of 50.



IMPORTANT

Do not set the plug-in precedence for the default Directory Server plug-ins unless told to do so by Red Hat support. The plug-in precedence attribute is primarily to govern the behavior of *custom* plug-ins, not to change the behavior of the core Directory Server plug-ins.

The ***nsslapd-pluginPrecedence*** attribute is set using the **ldapmodify** command. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=My Example Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginPrecedence
nsslapd-pluginPrecedence: 1
```

1.10. SERVER CONFIGURATION ATTRIBUTES

Directory Server stores the configuration maintained in the **cn=config** entry in the ***/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif*** file. If you set up a new instance, Directory Server only stores configuration attributes that have been modified in this file. Attributes that are not listed, use their default value.

This enables you to:

- Identify all configuration parameters set in this instance by displaying the ***/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif*** file.
- Restore a default value by deleting the parameter.

If you delete a configuration parameter, the parameter is no longer listed in the ***/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif*** file. However, the parameter and its default value is displayed when you search the parameter in the **cn=config** entry using the LDAP protocol.

Note that you cannot delete the parameters listed in [Table 1.1, “Configuration Attributes That Cannot Be Deleted”](#) to reset them to their default. If you try to delete them, the server will reject the request with a **Server is unwilling to perform (53)** error.

- Use the latest default values provided by a new Directory Server version.

New versions often provide optimized settings and increased security. For example, if you do not set the ***passwordStorageScheme*** attribute, Directory Server automatically uses the strongest supported password storage scheme available. If a future update changes the default value to increase security, passwords will be automatically encrypted using the new storage scheme when a user set a passwords.



NOTE

If you manually set a parameter to the same value as its default, the value is not updated. This happens, when a newer version uses a different default value.

Table 1.1. Configuration Attributes That Cannot Be Deleted

<i>nsslapd-accesslog</i>	<i>nsslapd-auditlog</i>	<i>nsslapd-bakdir</i>
<i>nsslapd-certdir</i>	<i>nsslapd-certmap-basedn</i>	<i>nsslapd-conntablesize</i>
<i>nsslapd-errorlog</i>	<i>nsslapd-instancedir</i>	<i>nsslapd-ldifdir</i>
<i>nsslapd-localhost</i>	<i>nsslapd-localuser</i>	<i>nsslapd-lockdir</i>
<i>nsslapd-rootpw</i>	<i>nsslapd-referral</i>	<i>nsslapd-referralmode</i>
<i>nsslapd-rundir</i>	<i>nsslapd-saslpath</i>	<i>nsslapd-schemadir</i>
<i>nsslapd-tmpdir</i>	<i>nsslapd-workingdir</i>	

CHAPTER 2. CONFIGURING DIRECTORY DATABASES

The directory is made up of databases, and the directory tree is distributed across the databases. This chapter describes how to create *suffixes*, the branch points for the directory tree, and how to create the databases associated with each suffix. This chapter also describes how to create database links to reference databases on remote servers and how to use referrals to point clients to external sources of directory data.

2.1. CREATING AND MAINTAINING SUFFIXES

Different pieces of the directory tree can be stored in different databases, and then these databases can be distributed across multiple servers. The directory tree contains branch points called *nodes*. These nodes may be associated with databases. A suffix is a node of the directory tree associated with a particular database. For example, a simple directory tree might appear as illustrated in [Figure 2.1, "A Directory Tree with One Root Suffix"](#).

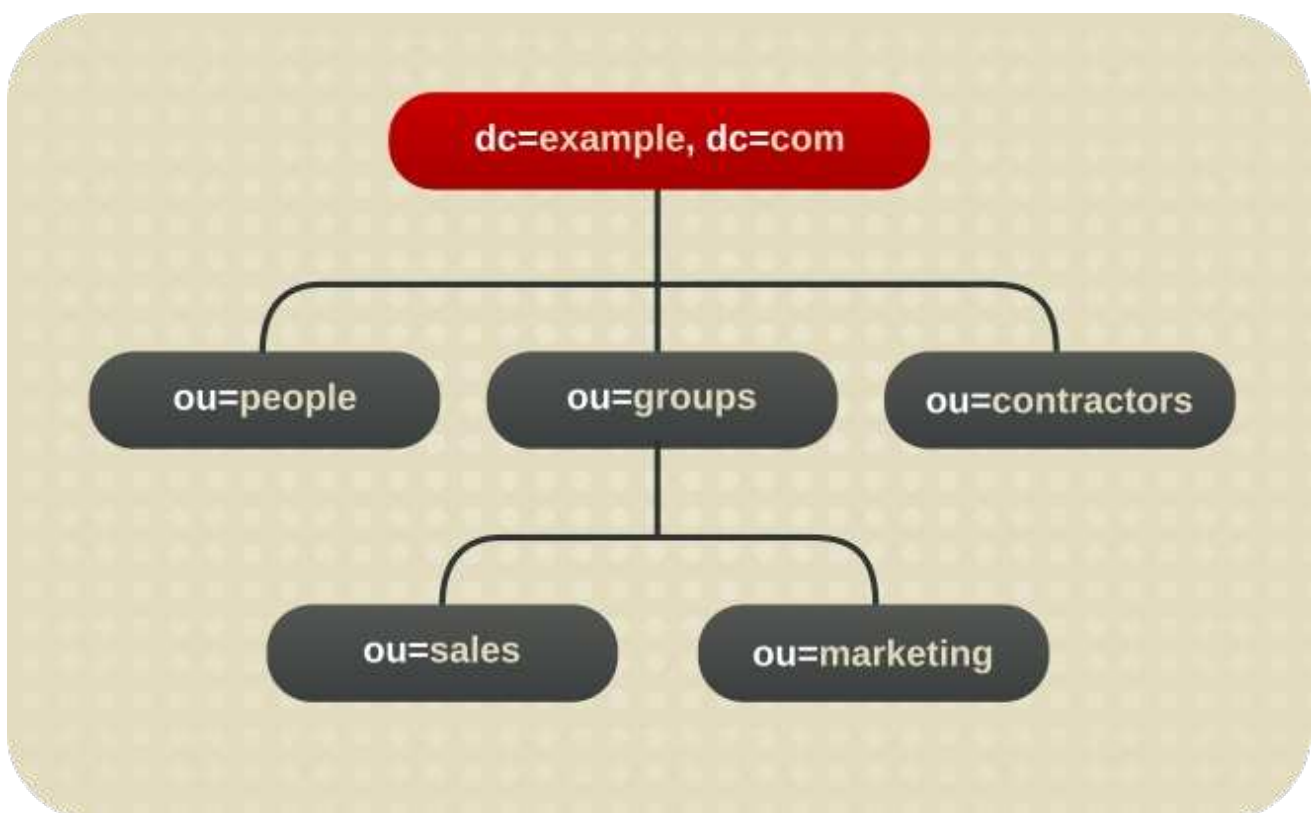


Figure 2.1. A Directory Tree with One Root Suffix

The **ou=people** suffix and all the entries and nodes below it might be stored in one database, the **ou=groups** suffix in another database, and the **ou=contractors** suffix in yet another database.

2.1.1. Creating Suffixes

A *root suffix* is the parent of a sub suffix. It can be part of a larger tree designed for the Directory Server. A *sub suffix* is a branch underneath a root suffix. Both root and sub suffixes are used to organize the contents of the directory tree. The data for root and sub suffixes are contained in databases.

A directory might contain more than one root suffix. For example, an ISP might host several websites, one for **example.com** and one for **redhat.com**. Here, two root suffixes are required, one corresponding to the **dc=example,dc=com** naming context and one corresponding to the **dc=redhat,dc=com** naming context, as shown in [Figure 2.2, "A Directory Tree with Two Root Suffixes"](#).

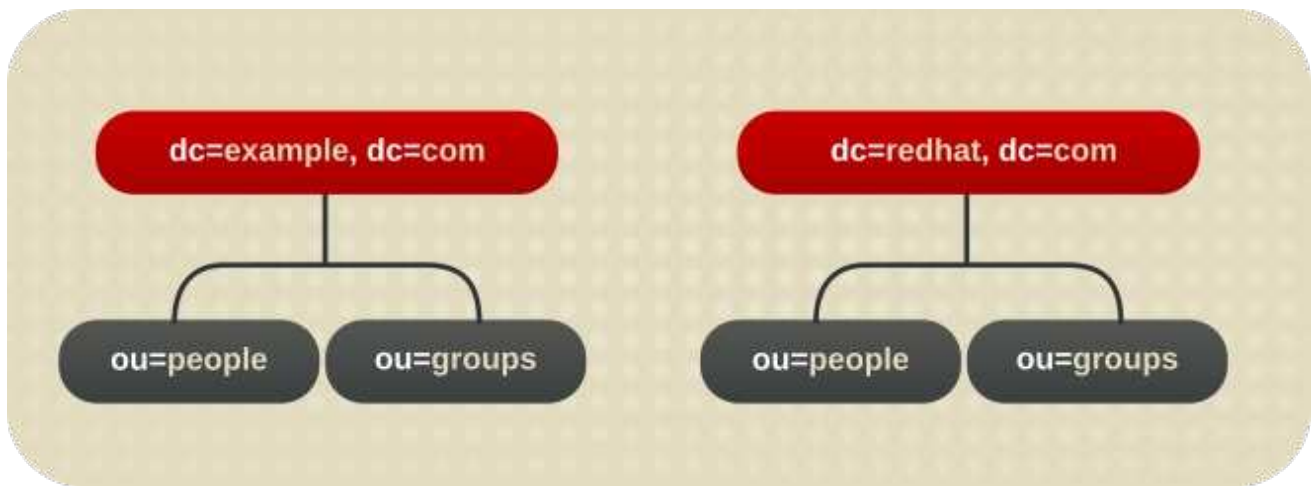


Figure 2.2. A Directory Tree with Two Root Suffixes

It is also possible to create root suffixes to exclude portions of the directory tree from search operations. For example, Example Corporation wants to exclude their European office from a search on the general Example Corporation directory. To do this, they create two root suffixes. One root suffix corresponds to the general Example Corporation directory tree, **dc=example,dc=com**, and one root suffix corresponds to the European branch of their directory tree, **l=europe,dc=example,dc=com**. From a client application's perspective, the directory tree looks as illustrated in [Figure 2.3, "A Directory Tree with a Root Suffix Off Limits to Search Operations"](#).

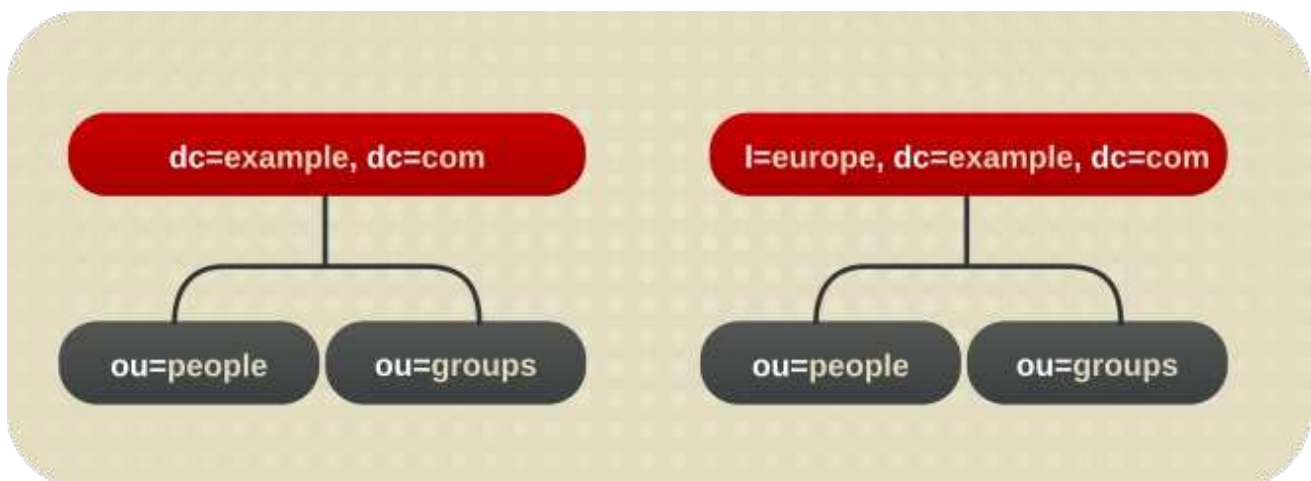


Figure 2.3. A Directory Tree with a Root Suffix Off Limits to Search Operations

Searches performed by client applications on the **dc=example,dc=com** branch of the directory will not return entries from the **l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** branch of the directory, as it is a separate root suffix.

If you wanted to include entries in the European branch of the directory tree in general searches, you could make the European branch a sub suffix of the general branch. To do this, create a root suffix for Example Corporation, **dc=example,dc=com**, and then create a sub suffix beneath it for the European directory entries, **l=europe,dc=example,dc=com**. From a client application's perspective, the directory tree would appear as illustrated in [Figure 2.4, "A Directory Tree with a Sub Suffix"](#).

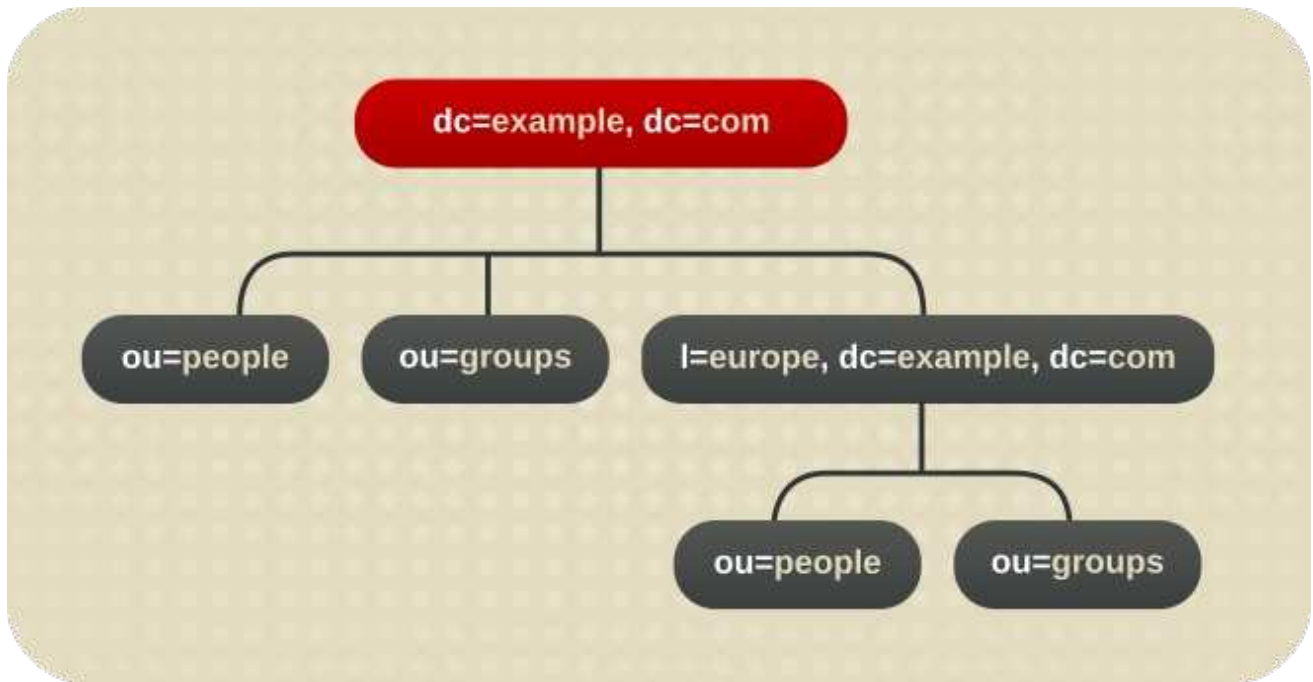
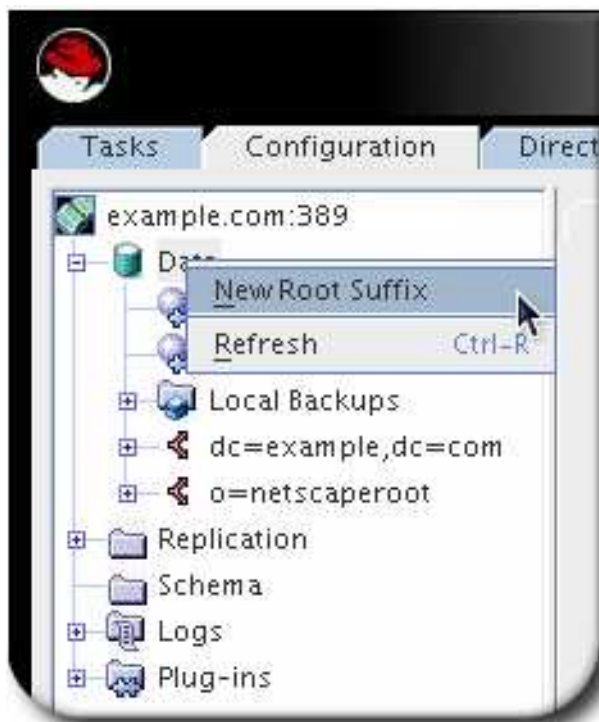


Figure 2.4. A Directory Tree with a Sub Suffix

This section describes creating root and sub suffixes for the directory using either the Directory Server Console or the command line.

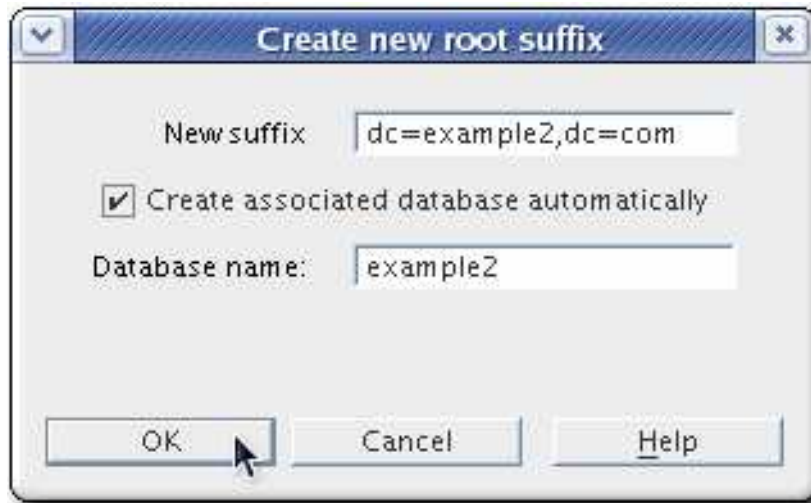
2.1.1.1. Creating a New Root Suffix Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Right-click **Data** in the left navigation pane, and select **New Root Suffix** from the pop-up menu.



3. Enter a unique suffix in the **New suffix** field.

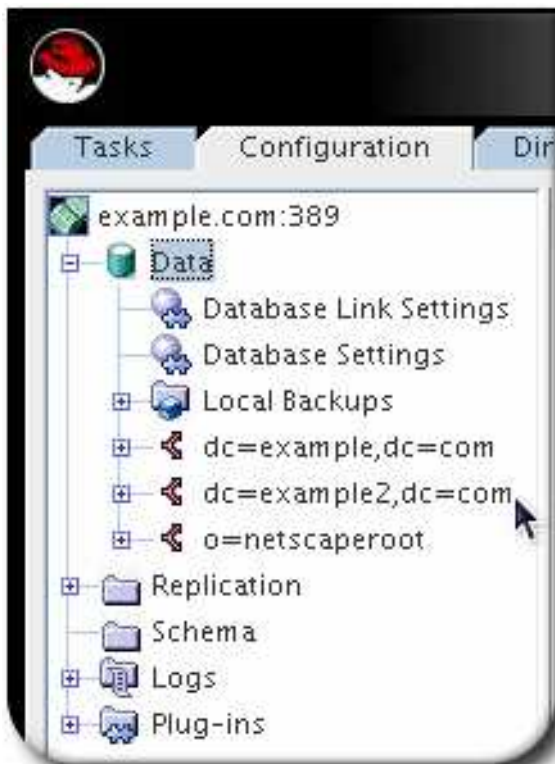
The suffix must be named in line with **dc** naming conventions, such as **dc=example,dc=com**.



4. Select the **Create associated database automatically** to create a database at the same time as the new root suffix, and enter a unique name for the new database in the **Database name** field, such as **example2**. The name can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), and underscores (_). No other characters are allowed.

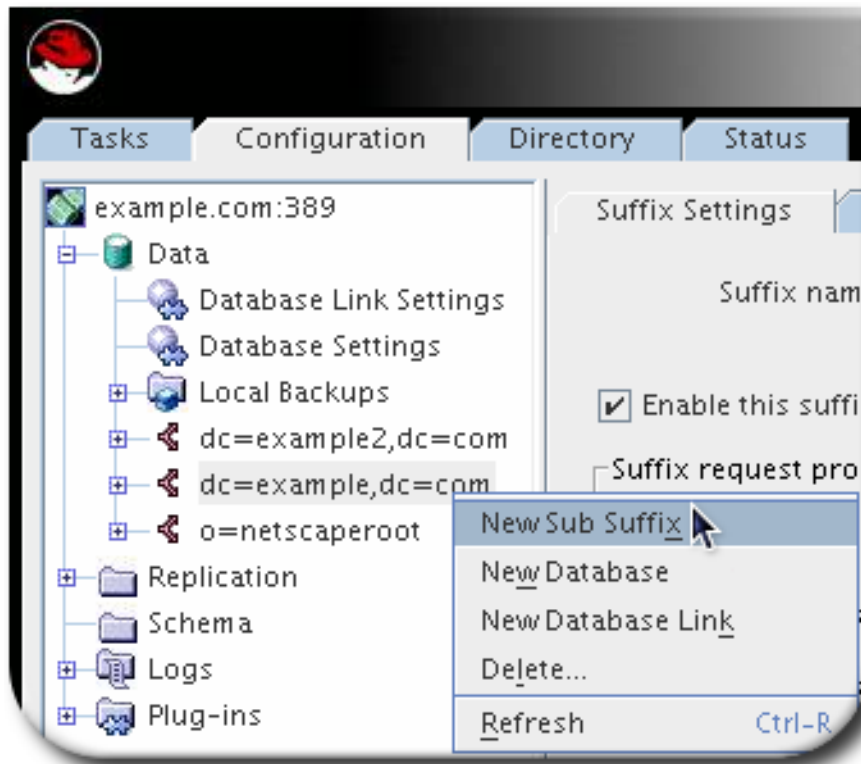
Deselect the check box to create a database for the new root suffix later. This option specifies a directory where the database will be created. The new root suffix will be disabled until a database is created.

The new root suffix is listed under the **Data** folder.



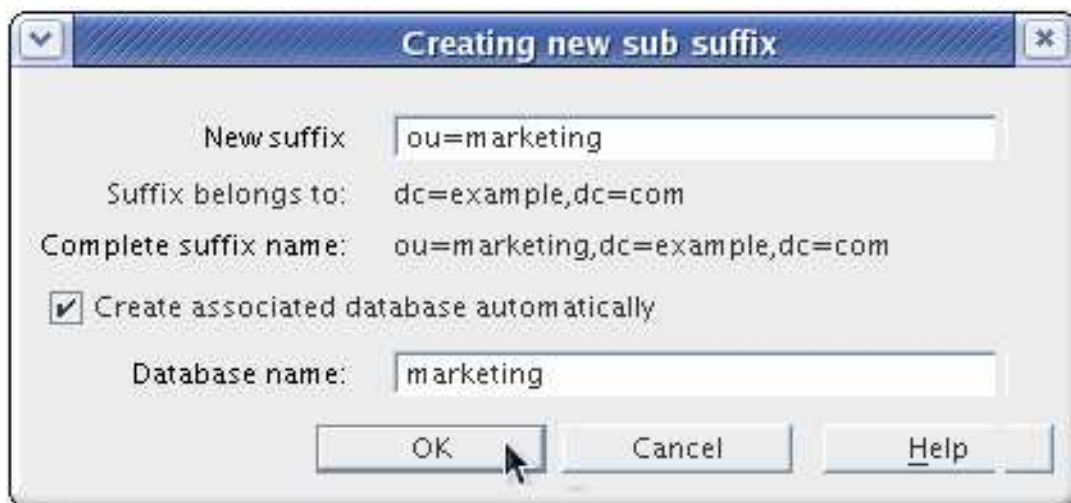
2.1.1.2. Creating a New Sub Suffix Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Under the **Data** in the left navigation pane, select the suffix under which to add a new sub suffix. Right-click the suffix, and select **New Sub Suffix** from the pop-up menu.



The **Create new sub suffix** dialog box is displayed.

3. Enter a unique suffix name in the **New suffix** field. The suffix must be named in line with **dc** naming conventions, for example **ou=groups**.

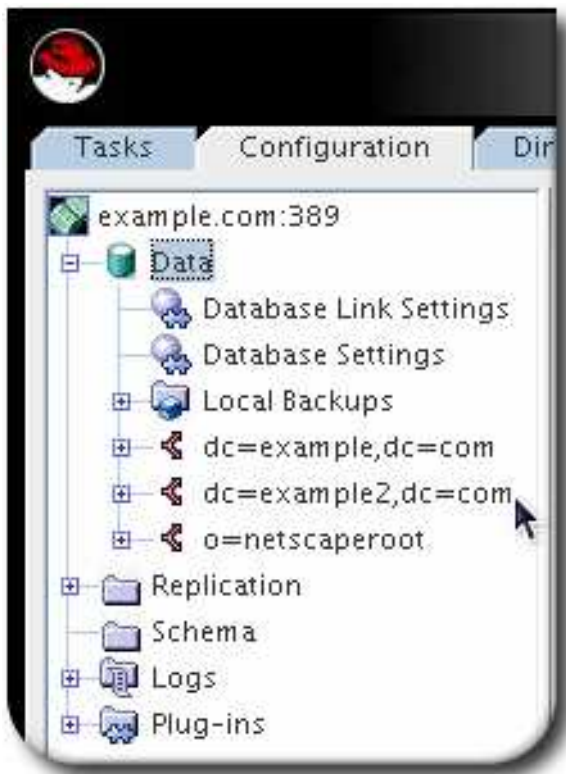


The root suffix is automatically added to the name. For example, if the sub suffix **ou=groups** is created under the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix, the Console automatically names it **ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com**.

4. Select the **Create associated database automatically** check box to create a database at the same time as the new sub suffix, and enter a unique name for the new database in the **Database name** field, such as **example2**. The name can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), and underscores (_). No other characters are allowed.

If the check box is not selected, then the database for the new sub suffix must be created later. The new sub suffix is disabled until a database is created.

The suffix appears automatically under its root suffix in the **Data** tree in the left navigation pane.



2.1.1.3. Creating Root and Sub Suffixes using the Command Line

The suffix configuration information is stored in the **cn=mapping tree,cn=config** entry. Use the **ldapmodify** utility to add new suffixes to the directory.

For a list of all parameters you can set when creating a suffix, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

Creating a Root Suffix

For example, to add the **dc=example,dc=com** root suffix:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: cn="dc=example,dc=com",cn=mapping tree,cn=config
changetype: add
cn: dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: backend
nsslapd-backend: UserData
```

Creating a Sub Suffix

Creating a sub suffix is similar to creating a root suffix. The difference is that you additionally set the parent suffix in the **nsslapd-parent-suffix**.

For example, to create the **ou=groups** sub suffix under the **dc=example,dc=com** root suffix:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: cn="ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com",cn=mapping tree,cn=config
changetype: add
cn: ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: backend
nsslapd-backend: GroupData
nsslapd-parent-suffix: dc=example,dc=com
```

2.1.2. Maintaining Suffixes

2.1.2.1. Viewing the Default Naming Context

A naming context is analogous to the suffix; it is the root structure for naming directory entries. There can be multiple naming contexts, depending on the directory and data structure. For example, a standard Directory Server configuration has a user suffix such as **dc=example,dc=com**, a configuration suffix in **cn=config**, and an administrative configuration suffix in **o=netscaperoot**.

Many directory trees have multiple naming contexts to be used with different types of entries or with logical data divisions. Clients which access the Directory Server may not know what naming context they need to use. The Directory Server has a server configuration attribute which signals to clients what the default naming context is, if they have no other naming context configuration known to them.

The default naming context is set in the **nsslapd-defaultnamingcontext** attribute in **cn=config**. This value is propagated over to the root DSE (Directory Server Agent Service Entry) and can be queried by clients anonymously by checking the **defaultnamingcontext** attribute in the root DSE:

```
# ldapsearch -p 389 -h server.example.com -x -b "" -s base | egrep namingcontext
namingContexts: dc=example,dc=com
namingContexts: dc=example,dc=net
namingContexts: dc=redhat,dc=com
defaultnamingcontext: dc=example,dc=com
```

IMPORTANT

To maintain configuration consistency, do not remove the **nsslapd-defaultnamingcontext** attribute from the **nsslapd-allowed-to-delete-attrs** list.

By default, the **nsslapd-defaultnamingcontext** attribute is included in the list of attributes which *can* be deleted, in the **nsslapd-allowed-to-delete-attrs** attribute. This allows the current default suffix to be deleted and then update the server configuration accordingly.

If for some reason the **nsslapd-defaultnamingcontext** attribute is removed from the list of configuration attributes which can be deleted, then no changes to that attribute are preserved. If the default suffix is deleted, that change cannot be propagated to the server configuration. This means that the **nsslapd-defaultnamingcontext** attribute retains the old information instead of being blank (removed), which is the correct and current configuration.

2.1.2.2. Disabling a Suffix

In certain situations, a suffix in the directory needs to be disabled. If a suffix is disabled, the content of the database related to the suffix are no longer accessible by clients.

2.1.2.2.1. Disabling a Suffix Using the Command Line

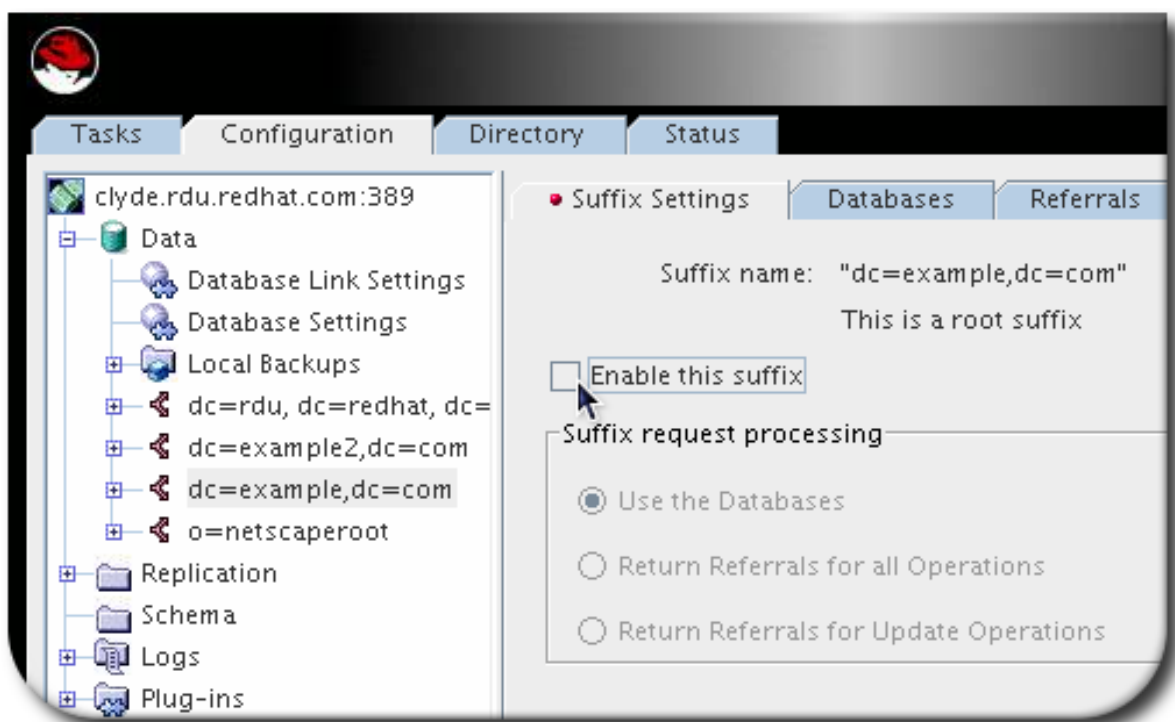
To disable a suffix using the command line, set the *nsslapd-state* attribute of the corresponding suffix entry to **disabled**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=suffix_DN,cn=mapping tree,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-state
nsslapd-state: disabled
```

2.1.2.2.2. Disabling a Suffix Using the Console

To disable a suffix using the Console:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Under **Data** in the left navigation pane, click the suffix to disable.
3. Click the **Suffix Setting** tab, and deselect the **Enable this suffix** check box.



2.1.2.3. Deleting a Suffix

If a suffix is no longer required, delete it from the database.



WARNING

Deleting a suffix also deletes all database entries and replication information associated with that suffix.

2.1.2.3.1. Deleting a Suffix Using the Command Line

To delete a suffix using the command line:

1. Delete the suffix from the mapping tree:

```
# ldapdelete -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
"cn=suffix_DN",cn=mapping tree,cn=config"
```

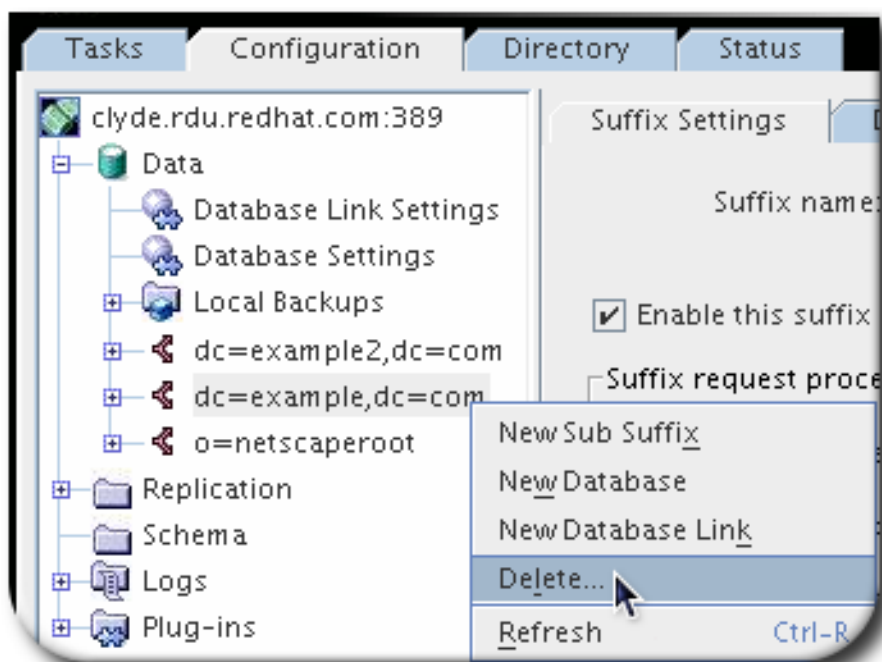
2. If the suffix uses a separate database, delete the database:

```
# ldapdelete -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
"cn=database_name,cn=ldb database,cn=plugins,cn=config"
```

2.1.2.3.2. Deleting a Suffix Using the Console

To delete a suffix using the Console:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Under **Data** in the left navigation pane, select the suffix to delete.
3. Right-click the suffix, and select **Delete** from the menu.



4. Select either **Delete this suffix and all of its sub suffixes** or **Delete this suffix only**.



2.2. CREATING AND MAINTAINING DATABASES

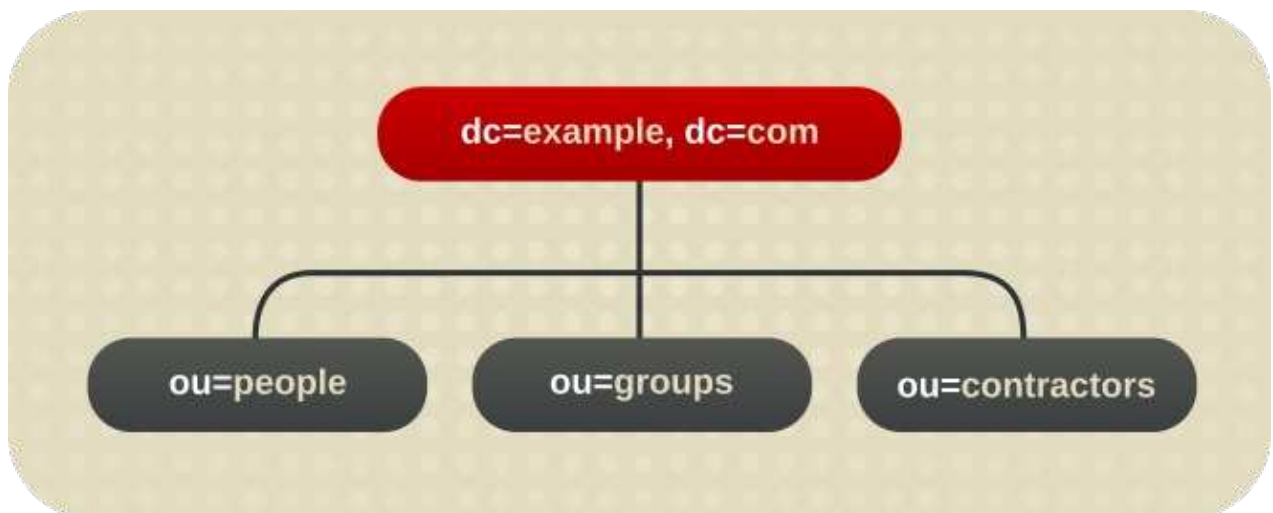
After creating suffixes to organizing the directory data, create databases to contain data of that directory.

2.2.1. Creating Databases

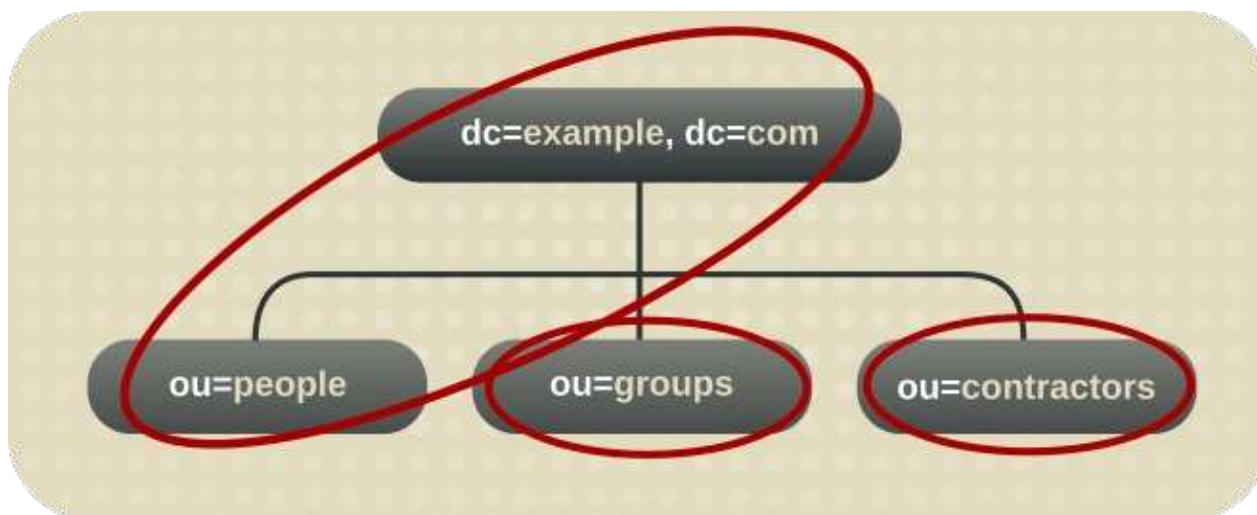
The directory tree can be distributed over multiple Directory Server databases. There are two ways to distribute data across multiple databases:

One database per suffix. The data for each suffix is contained in a separate database.

Three databases are added to store the data contained in separate suffixes:



This division of the tree units corresponds to three databases, for example:

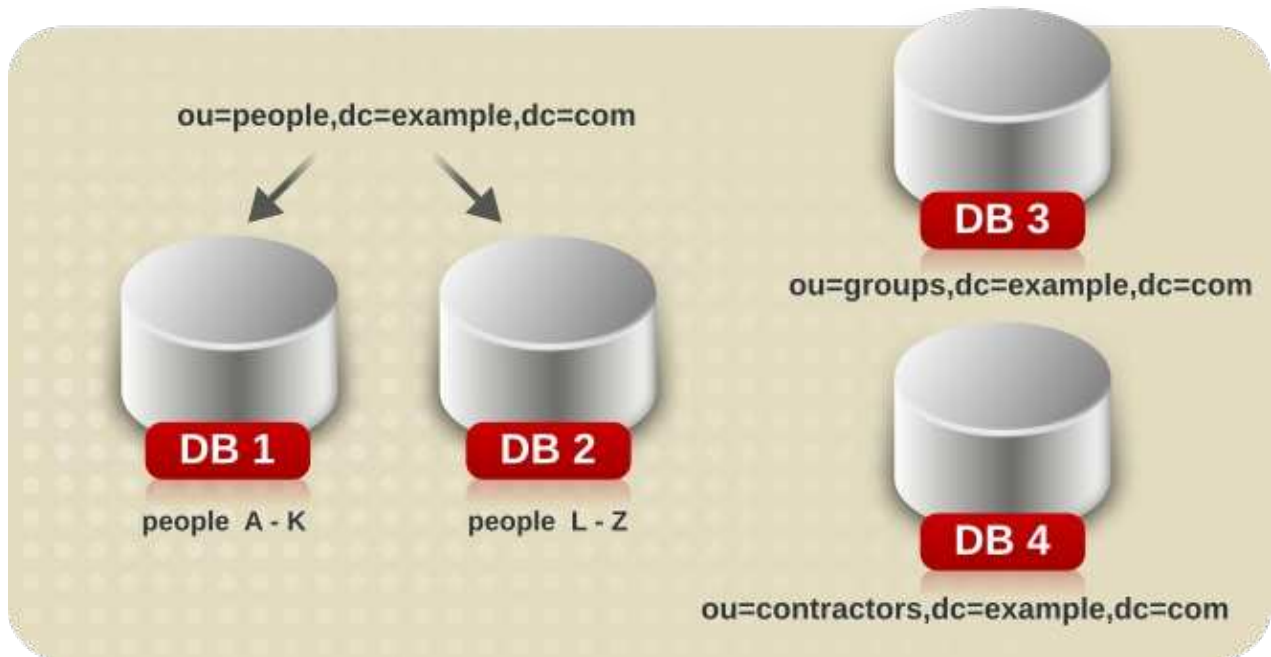


In this example, DB1 contains the data for **ou=people** and the data for **dc=example,dc=com**, so that clients can conduct searches based at **dc=example,dc=com**. However, DB2 only contains the data for **ou=groups**, and DB3 only contains the data for **ou=contractors**:



Multiple databases for one suffix.

Suppose the number of entries in the **ou=people** branch of the directory tree is so large that two databases are needed to store them. In this case, the data contained by **ou=people** could be distributed across two databases:

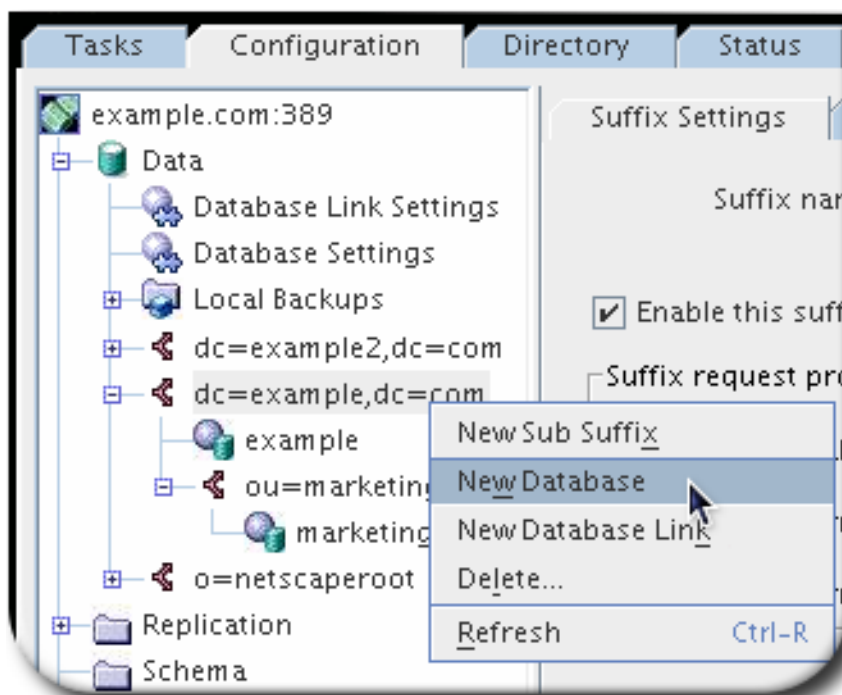


DB1 contains people with names from **A-K**, and DB2 contains people with names from **L-Z**. DB3 contains the **ou=groups** data, and DB4 contains the **ou=contractors** data.

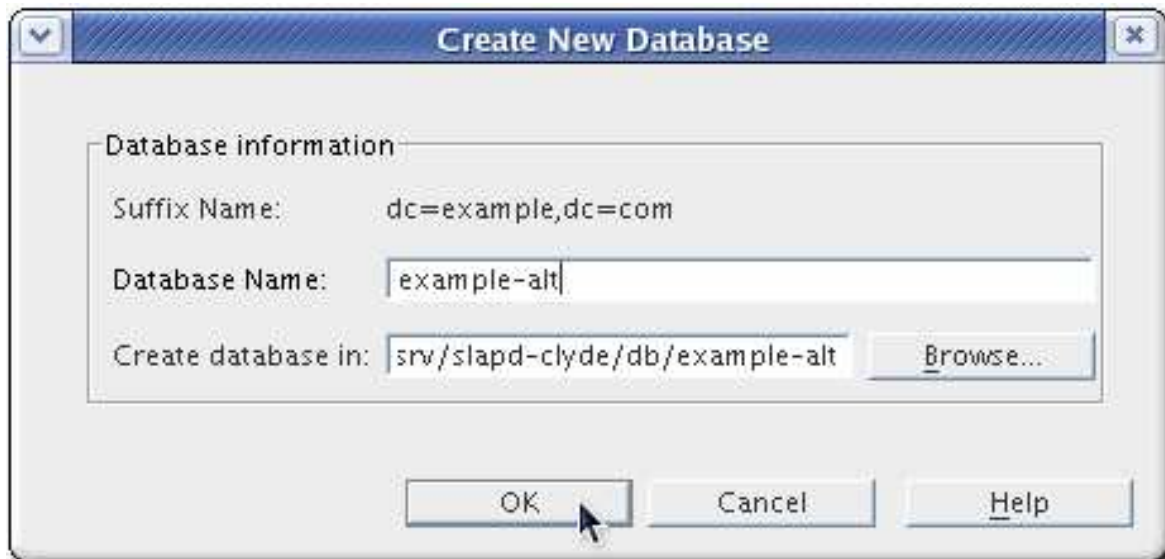
A custom plug-in distributes data from a single suffix across multiple databases. Contact Red Hat Consulting for information on how to create distribution logic for Directory Server.

2.2.1.1. Creating a New Database for an Existing Suffix Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. In the left pane, expand **Data**, then click the suffix to which to add the new database.
3. Right-click the suffix, and select **New Database** from the pop-up menu.



4. Enter a unique name for the database, such as **example2**. The database name can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), and underscores (_).



The **Create database in** field is automatically filled with the default database directory (`/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/db`) and the name of the new database. It is also possible to enter or browse for a different directory location.

2.2.1.2. Creating a New Database for a Single Suffix from the Command Line

Use the **ldapmodify** command-line utility to add a new database to the directory configuration file. The database configuration information is stored in the **cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry. For example, add a new database to the server **example1**:

1. Run **ldapmodify** and create the entry for the new database.

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=UserData,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsBackendInstance
nsslapd-suffix: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

The added entry corresponds to a database named **UserData** that contains the data for the root or sub suffix **ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**.

2. Create a root or a sub-suffix, as described in [Section 2.1.1.3, "Creating Root and Sub Suffixes using the Command Line"](#). The database name, given in the DN attribute, must correspond with the value in the **nsslapd-backend** attribute of the suffix entry.

2.2.1.3. Adding Multiple Databases for a Single Suffix

A single suffix can be distributed across multiple databases. However, to distribute the suffix, a custom distribution function has to be created to extend the directory. For more information on creating a custom distribution function, contact Red Hat Consulting.

NOTE

Once entries have been distributed, they cannot be redistributed. The following restrictions apply:

- The distribution function cannot be changed once entry distribution has been deployed.
- The LDAP **modrdn** operation cannot be used to rename entries if that would cause them to be distributed into a different database.
- Distributed local databases cannot be replicated.
- The **ldapmodify** operation cannot be used to change entries if that would cause them to be distributed into a different database.

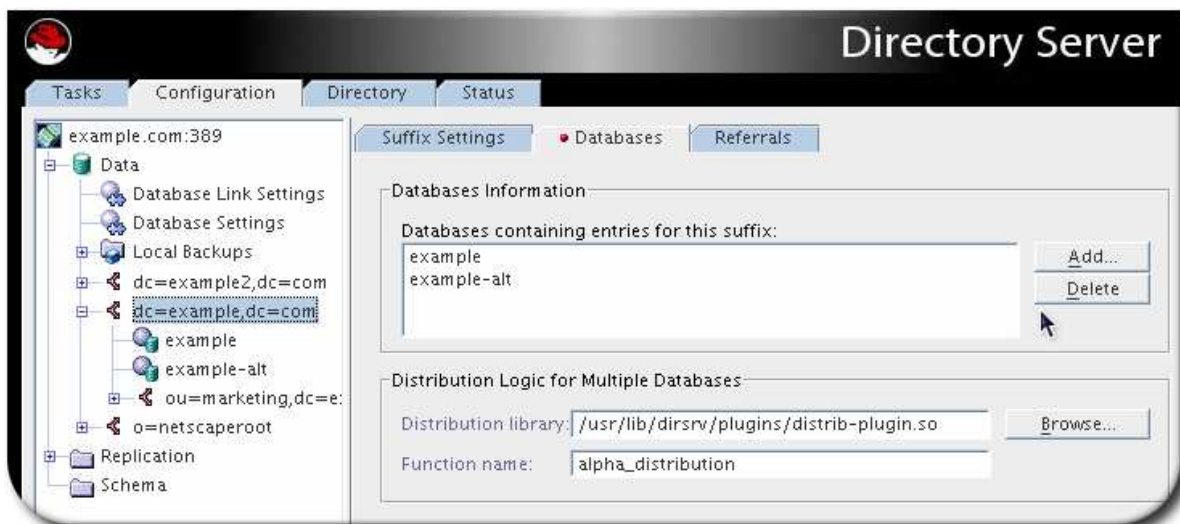
Violating these restrictions prevents Directory Server from correctly locating and returning entries.

After creating a custom distribution logic plug-in, add it to the directory.

The distribution logic is a function declared in a suffix. This function is called for every operation reaching this suffix, including subtree search operations that start above the suffix. A distribution function can be inserted into a suffix using both the Console and the command line interface.

2.2.1.3.1. Adding the Custom Distribution Function to a Suffix Using the Directory Server Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand **Data** in the left navigation pane. Select the suffix to which to apply the distribution function.
3. Select the **Databases** tab in the right window.



4. The databases associated with the suffix are already listed in the **Databases** tab. Click **Add** to associate additional databases with the suffix.
5. Enter the path to the distribution library.
6. Enter the name of the distribution function in the **Function name** field.

2.2.1.3.2. Adding the Custom Distribution Function to a Suffix Using the Command Line

1. Run **ldapmodify**.

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

2. Add the following attributes to the suffix entry itself, supplying the information about the custom distribution logic:

```
dn: suffix
changetype: modify
add: nsslapd-backend
nsslapd-backend: Database1
-
add: nsslapd-backend
nsslapd-backend: Database2
-
add: nsslapd-backend
nsslapd-backend: Database3
-
add: nsslapd-distribution-plugin
nsslapd-distribution-plugin: /full/name/of/a/shared/library
-
add: nsslapd-distribution-funct
nsslapd-distribution-funct: distribution-function-name
```

The **nsslapd-backend** attribute specifies all databases associated with this suffix. The **nsslapd-distribution-plugin** attribute specifies the name of the library that the plug-in uses. The **nsslapd-distribution-funct** attribute provides the name of the distribution function itself.

For more information about using the **ldapmodify** command-line utility, see [Section 3.1, "Managing Entries Using the Command Line"](#).

2.2.2. Maintaining Directory Databases

- [Section 2.2.2.1, "Placing a Database in Read-Only Mode"](#)
- [Section 2.2.2.2, "Deleting a Database"](#)
- [Section 2.2.2.3, "Changing the Transaction Log Directory"](#)

2.2.2.1. Placing a Database in Read-Only Mode

When a database is in read-only mode, you cannot create, modify, or delete any entries. One of the situations when read-only mode is useful is for manually initializing a consumer or before backing up or exporting data from the Directory Server. Read-only mode ensures a faithful image of the state of these databases at a given time.

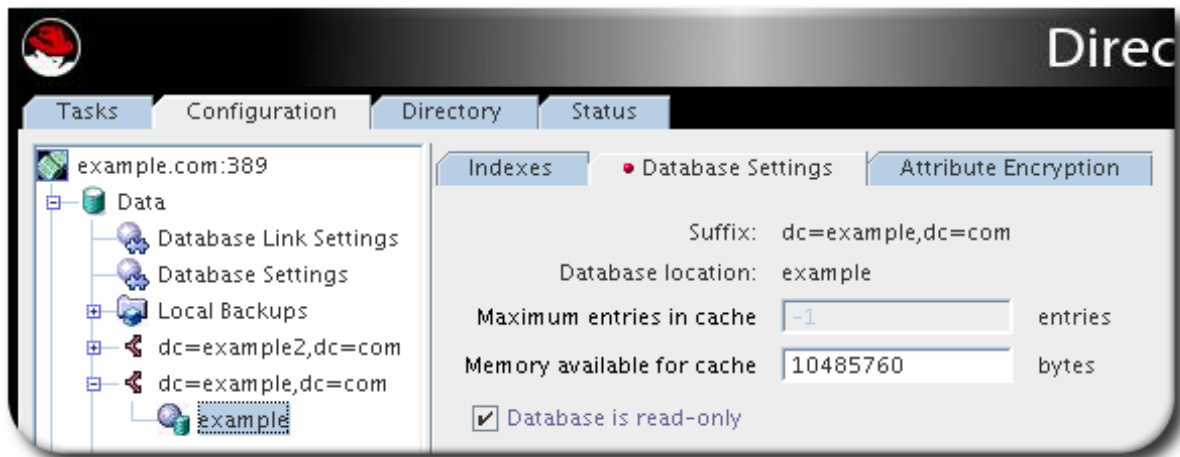
The Directory Server Console and the command-line utilities do not automatically put the directory in read-only mode before export or backup operations because this would make your directory unavailable for updates. However, with multi-master replication, this might not be a problem.

- [Section 2.2.2.1.1, "Making a Database Read-Only Using the Console"](#)
- [Section 2.2.2.1.2, "Making a Database Read-Only from the Command Line"](#)

- [Section 2.2.2.1.3, "Placing the Entire Directory Server in Read-Only Mode"](#)

2.2.2.1.1. Making a Database Read-Only Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand **Data** in the left pane. Expand the suffix containing the database to put in read-only mode.
3. Select the database to put into read-only mode.
4. Select the **Database Settings** tab in the right pane.



5. Select the **database is read-only** check box.

The change takes effect immediately.

Before importing or restoring the database, ensure that the databases affected by the operation are *not* in read-only mode.

To disable read-only mode, open the database up in the Directory Server Console again and uncheck the **database is read-only** check box.

2.2.2.1.2. Making a Database Read-Only from the Command Line

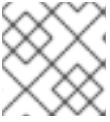
To manually place a database into read-only mode:

1. Run **ldapmodify**.

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

2. Change the read-only attribute to **on**

```
dn: cn=database_name,cn=ldb database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-readonly
nsslapd-readonly: on
```

**NOTE**

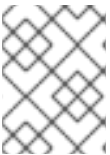
By default, the name of the database created at installation time is **userRoot**.

2.2.2.1.3. Placing the Entire Directory Server in Read-Only Mode

If the Directory Server maintains more than one database and all databases need to be placed in read-only mode, this can be done in a single operation.

**WARNING**

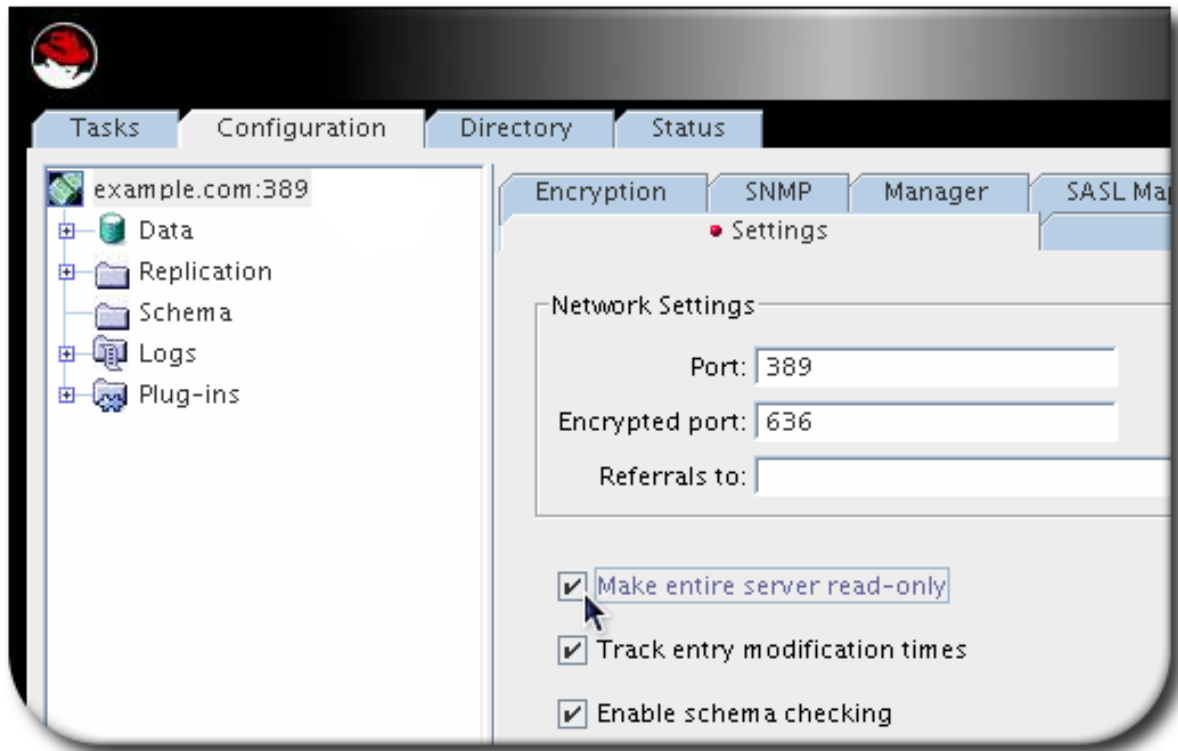
This operation also makes the Directory Server configuration read-only; therefore, you cannot update the server configuration, enable or disable plug-ins, or even restart the Directory Server while it is in read-only mode. Once read-only mode is enabled, it *cannot* be undone from the Console; you must modify the configuration files.

**NOTE**

If Directory Server contains replicas, *do not* use read-only mode because it will disable replication.

To put the Directory Server in read-only mode:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab, and then select the top entry in the navigation tree in the left pane.
2. Select the **Settings** tab in the right pane.

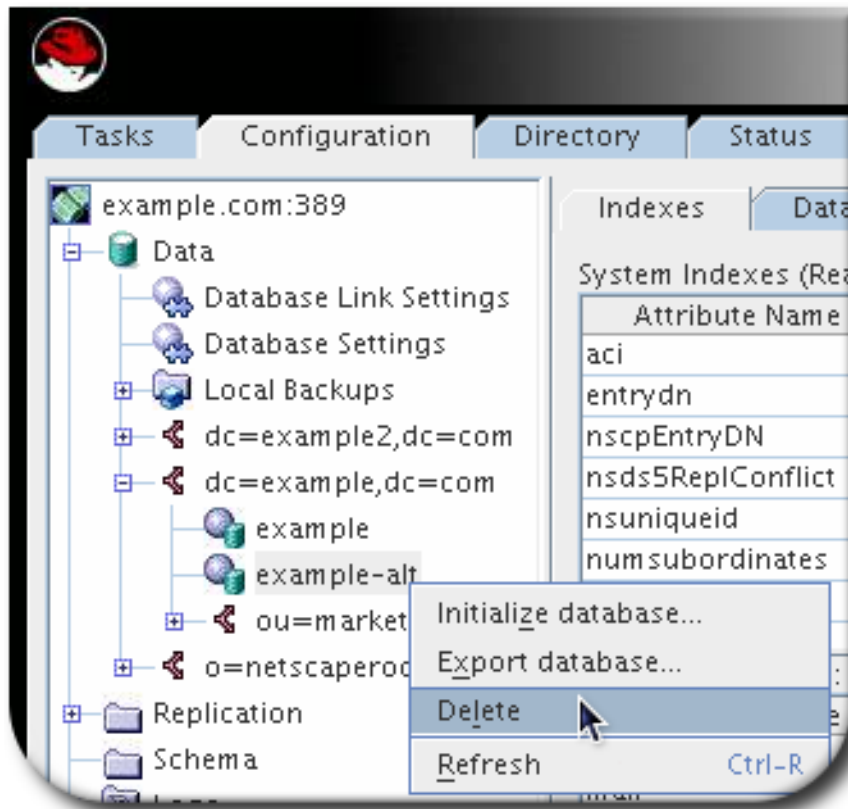


3. Select the **Make Entire Server Read-Only** check box.
4. Click **Save**, and then restart the server.

2.2.2.2. Deleting a Database

Deleting a database deletes the configuration information and entries for that database only, not the physical database itself.

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand the **Data** folder, and then select the suffix.
3. Select the database to delete.
4. Right-click the database and select **Delete** from the pop-up menu.



5. Confirm that the database should be deleted in the **Delete Database** dialog box.

2.2.2.3. Changing the Transaction Log Directory

The transaction log enables Directory Server to recover the database, after an instance shut down unexpectedly. In certain situations, administrators want to change the path to the transaction logs. For example, to store them on a different physical disk than the Directory Server database.



NOTE

To achieve higher performance, mount a faster disk to the directory that contains the transaction logs, instead of changing the location. For details, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Performance Tuning Guide](#).

To change the location of the transaction log directory:

1. Stop the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance_name
```

2. Create a new location for the transaction logs. For example:

```
# mkdir -p /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
```

3. Set permissions to enable only Directory Server to access the directory:

```
# chown dirsrv:dirsrv /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
# chmod 770 /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
```

- Remove all **__db.*** files from the previous transaction log directory. For example:

```
# rm /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/db/__db.*
```

- Move all **log.*** files from the previous to the new transaction log directory. For example:

```
# mv /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/db/log.* \
    /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
```

- If SELinux is running in **enforcing** mode, set the **dirsrv_var_lib_t** context on the directory:

```
# semanage fcontext -a -t dirsrv_var_lib_t /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
# restorecon -Rv /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
```

- Edit the **/etc/dirsrv/slapd-*instance_name*/dse.ldif** file, and update the **nsslapd-db-logdirectory** parameter under the **cn=config,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry. For example:

```
dn: cn=config,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config
...
nsslapd-db-logdirectory: /srv/dirsrv/instance_name/db/
```

- Start the instance:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance_name
```

2.3. CREATING AND MAINTAINING DATABASE LINKS

Chaining means that a server contacts other servers on behalf of a client application and then returns the combined results. Chaining is implemented through a *database link*, which points to data stored remotely. When a client application requests data from a database link, the database link retrieves the data from the remote database and returns it to the client.

- [Section 2.3.1, “Creating a New Database Link”](#)
- [Section 2.3.2, “Configuring the Chaining Policy”](#)
- [Section 2.3.3, “Maintaining Database Links”](#)
- [Section 2.3.4, “Configuring Database Link Defaults”](#)
- [Section 2.3.5, “Deleting Database Links”](#)
- [Section 2.3.6, “Database Links and Access Control Evaluation”](#)

For more general information about chaining, see the chapter “Designing the Directory Topology,” in the *Red Hat Directory Server Deployment Guide*. [Section 20.8, “Monitoring Database Link Activity”](#) covers how to monitor database link activity.

2.3.1. Creating a New Database Link

The basic database link configuration requires four piece of information:

- *Suffix information.* A suffix is created in the directory tree that is managed by the database link, not a regular database. This suffix corresponds to the suffix on the remote server that contains the data.
- *Bind credentials.* When the database link binds to a remote server, it impersonates a user, and this specifies the DN and the credentials for each database link to use to bind with remote servers.
- *LDAP URL.* This supplies the LDAP URL of the remote server to which the database link connects. The URL consists of the protocol (ldap or ldaps), the host name or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) for the server, and the port.
- *List of failover servers.* This supplies a list of alternative servers for the database link to contact in the event of a failure. This configuration item is optional.



NOTE

If secure binds are required for simple password authentication ([Section 19.11.1, “Requiring Secure Binds”](#)), then any chaining operations will fail unless they occur over a secure connection. Using a secure connection (TLS and Start TLS connections or SASL authentication) is recommended, anyway.

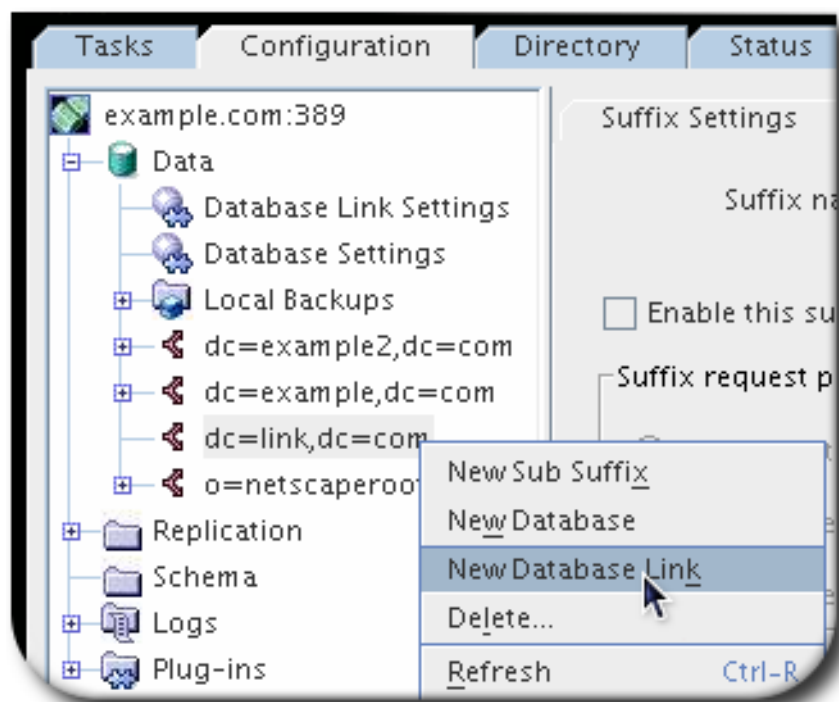
2.3.1.1. Creating a New Database Link Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Create a new suffix as described in [Section 2.1.1, “Creating Suffixes”](#).

Deselect the **Create associated database automatically** check box. It is simpler to configure a database link on a suffix without a database associated with it because having both a database and database link requires custom distribution functions to distribute directory data.



3. In the left pane, right-click the new suffix, and select **New Database Link** from the pop-up menu.



4. Fill in the database link name. The name can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), and underscores (_). No other characters, like spaces, are allowed.
5. Set the radio button for the appropriate method for authentication.

Create New Database Link

New Database Link Info

Database Suffix: dc=example, dc=com

Database link name: Example-DB-Link

Authentication mechanism:

- Server TLS/SSL Certificate (requires TLS/SSL server set up)
- SASL/GSSAPI (requires server Kerberos keytab)
- SASL/DIGEST-MD5 (SASL user id and password)
- Simple (Bind DN/Password)

Bind DN: cn=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com

Password:

Remote Server(s) Information

Use LDAP (no encryption)

Use TLS/SSL (TLS/SSL encryption with LDAPS)

Use StartTLS (TLS/SSL encryption with LDAP)

Remote server: server.example.com Remote server port: 389

Failover Server(s): Port: 389 [Add]

[Delete]

LDAP URL: ldap://server.example.com:389/

[OK] [Cancel] [Help]

There are four authentication methods:

- *Simple* means that the server connects over the standard port with no encryption. The only required information is the bind DN and password for the user as whom the server connects to the remote server.
- *Server TLS/SSL Certificate* uses the local server's TLS certificate to authenticate to the remote server. A certificate must be installed on the local server for certificate-based authentication, and the remote server must have certificate mapping configured so that it can map the subject DN in the local server's certificate to the corresponding user entry.

Configuring TLS and certificate mapping is described in [Section 9.4, "Enabling TLS"](#).



NOTE

When the database link and remote server are configured to communicate using TLS, this does not mean that the client application making the operation request must also communicate using TLS. The client can bind using a normal port.

- *SASL/DIGEST-MD5* requires only the bind DN and password to authenticate.
- *SASL/GSSAPI* requires the local server to have a Kerberos keytab (as in [Section 9.10.2.2](#),

"About the KDC Server and Keytabs"), and the remote server to have a SASL mapping to map the local server's principal to the real user entry (as in [Section 9.9.3.1, "Configuring SASL Identity Mapping from the Console"](#)).

6. In the **Remote Server Information** section, select the connection type for the local server to use to connect to the remote server. There are three options:
 - *Use LDAP*. This sets a standard, unencrypted connection.
 - *Use TLS/SSL*. This uses a secure connection over the server's secure LDAPS port, such as **636**. This setting is required to use TLS/TLS.

When using TLS, make sure that the remote server's port number is set to its secure port.

- *Use Start TLS*. This uses Start TLS to establish a secure connection over the server's standard port.



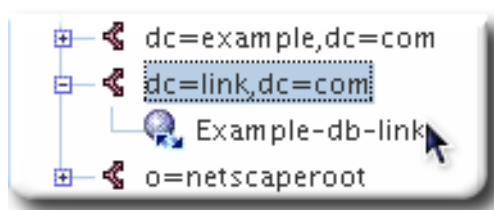
NOTE

If secure binds are required for simple password authentication ([Section 19.11.1, "Requiring Secure Binds"](#)), then any chaining operations will fail unless they occur over a secure connection. Using a secure connection (TLS and Start TLS connections or SASL authentication) is recommended, anyway.

7. In the **Remote Server Information** section, fill in the name (host name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address) and port number for the remote server.

For any failover servers, fill in the host name and port number, and click the **Add** button. A failover server is a backup server, so that if the primary remote server fails, the database link contacts the first server in the failover servers list and cycles through the list until a server is accessed.

The new database link is listed under the suffix, in place of the database.



NOTE

The Console provides a checklist of information that needs to be present on the *remote* server for the database link to bind successfully. To view this checklist, click the new database link, and click the **Authentication** tab. The checklist is in the **Remote server checklist** box.

2.3.1.2. Creating a Database Link from the Command Line

1. Use the **ldapmodify** command-line utility to create a new database link. The new instance must be located in the **cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry.

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

- Specify the configuration information for the database link:

```
dn: cn=examplelink,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsBackendInstance
nsslapd-suffix: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com suffix being chained
nsfarmserverurl: ldap://people.example.com:389/ LDAP URL to remote server
nsMultiplexorBindDN: cn=proxy admin,cn=config bind DN
nsMultiplexorCredentials: secret bind password
cn: examplelink
```



NOTE

If secure binds are required for simple password authentication ([Section 19.11.1, “Requiring Secure Binds”](#)), then any chaining operations will fail unless they occur over a secure connection. Using a secure connection (TLS and Start TLS connections or SASL authentication) is recommended, anyway.

Default configuration attributes are contained in the **cn=default instance config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry. These configuration attributes apply to all database links at creation time. Changes to the default configuration only affect new database links. The default configuration attributes on existing database links cannot be changed.

Each database link contains its own specific configuration information, which is stored with the database link entry itself, **cn=database_link, cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config**. For more information about configuration attributes, see the *Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference*.

- [Section 2.3.1.2.1, “Providing Suffix Information”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.2, “Providing Bind Credentials”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.3, “Providing an LDAP URL”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.4, “Providing a List of Failover Servers”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.5, “Using Different Bind Mechanisms”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.6, “Summary of Database Link Configuration Attributes”](#)
- [Section 2.3.1.2.7, “Database Link Configuration Example”](#)

2.3.1.2.1. Providing Suffix Information

Use the **nsslapd-suffix** attribute to define the suffix managed by the database link. For example, for the database link to point to the people information for a remote site of the company, enter the following suffix information:

```
nsslapd-suffix: l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

The suffix information is stored in the **cn=database_link, cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry.

**NOTE**

After creating the database link, any alterations to the ***nsslapd-nsslapd-suffix*** attribute are applied only after the server containing the database link is restarted.

2.3.1.2.2. Providing Bind Credentials

For a request from a client application to be chained to a remote server, special bind credentials can be supplied for the client application. This gives the remote server the proxied authorization rights needed to chain operations. Without bind credentials, the database link binds to the remote server as **anonymous**.

Providing bind credentials involves the following steps:

1. On the remote server:

- Create an administrative user for the database link.

For information on adding entries, see [Chapter 3, Managing Directory Entries](#).

- Provide proxy access rights for the administrative user created in step 1 on the subtree chained to by the database link.

For more information on configuring ACIs, see [Chapter 18, Managing Access Control](#)

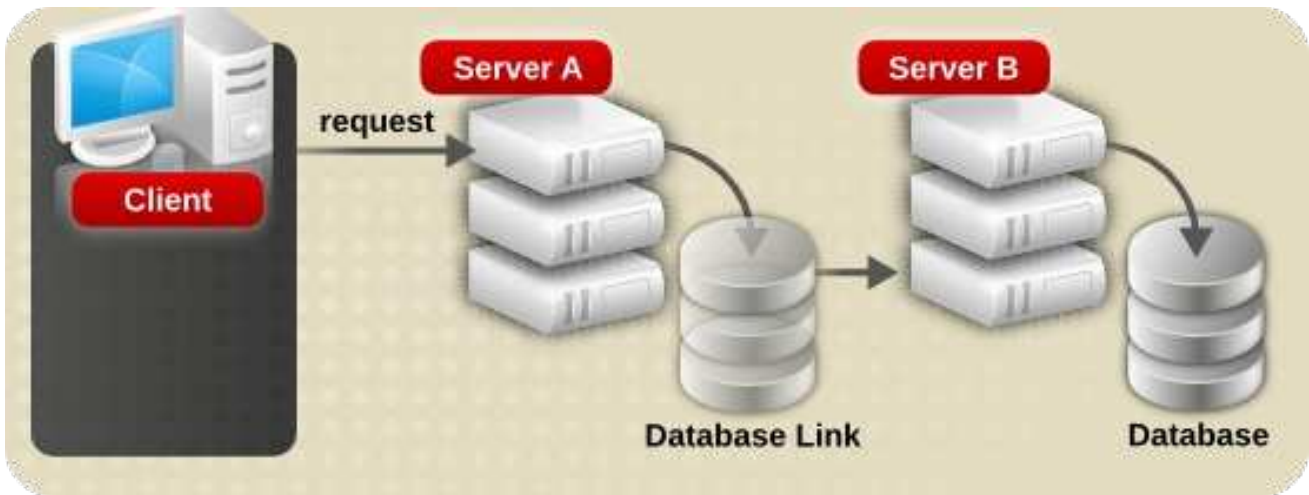
2. On the server containing the database link, use **ldapmodify** to provide a user DN for the database link in the ***nsMultiplexorBindDN*** attribute of the ***cn=database_link,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config*** entry.

**WARNING**

The ***nsMultiplexorBindDN*** cannot be that of the Directory Manager.

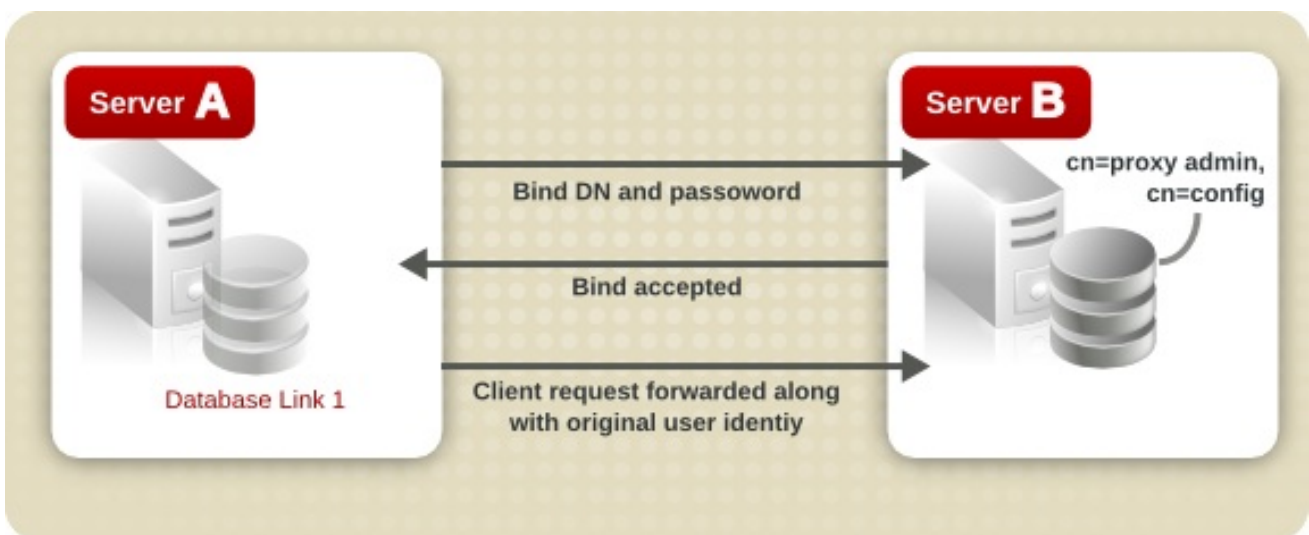
Use **ldapmodify** to provide a user password for the database link in the ***nsMultiplexorCredentials*** attribute of the ***cn=database_link,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config*** entry.

For example, a client application sends a request to Server A. Server A contains a database link that chains the request to a database on Server B.



The database link on Server A binds to Server B using a special user as defined in the ***nsMultiplexorBindDN*** attribute and a user password as defined in the ***nsMultiplexorCredentials*** attribute. In this example, Server A uses the following bind credentials:

```
nsMultiplexorBindDN: cn=proxy admin,cn=config
nsMultiplexorCredentials: secret
```



Server B must contain a user entry corresponding to the ***nsMultiplexorBindDN***, and set the proxy authentication rights for this user. To set the proxy authorization correctly, set the proxy ACI as any other ACI.



WARNING

Carefully examine access controls when enabling chaining to avoid giving access to restricted areas of the directory. For example, if a default proxy ACI is created on a branch, the users that connect using the database link will be able to see all entries below the branch. There may be cases when not all of the subtrees should be viewed by a user. To avoid a security hole, create an additional ACI to restrict access to the subtree.

For more information on ACIs, see [Chapter 18, *Managing Access Control*](#).



NOTE

When a database link is used by a client application to create or modify entries, the attributes **creatorsName** and **modifiersName** do not reflect the real creator or modifier of the entries. These attributes contain the name of the administrative user granted proxied authorization rights on the remote data server.

2.3.1.2.3. Providing an LDAP URL

On the server containing the database link, identify the remote server that the database link connects with using an *LDAP URL*. Unlike the standard LDAP URL format, the URL of the remote server does not specify a suffix. It takes the form **ldap://server:port**, where the *server* can be a host name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address.

The URL of the remote server using the **nsFarmServerURL** attribute is set in the **cn=database_link, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config** entry of the configuration file.

```
nsFarmServerURL: ldap://example.com:389/
```



NOTE

Do not forget to use the trailing slash (/) at the end of the URL.

For the database link to connect to the remote server using LDAP over TLS, the LDAP URL of the remote server uses the protocol LDAPS instead of LDAP in the URL and points to the secure port of the server. For example:

```
nsFarmServerURL: ldaps://africa.example.com:636/
```



NOTE

TLS has to be enabled on the local Directory Server and the remote Directory Server to be chained over TLS. For more information on enabling TLS, see [Section 9.4, "Enabling TLS"](#).

When the database link and remote server are configured to communicate using TLS, this does not mean that the client application making the operation request must also communicate using TLS. The client can bind using a normal port.

2.3.1.2.4. Providing a List of Failover Servers

There can be additional LDAP URLs for servers included to use in the case of failure. Add alternate servers to the **nsFarmServerURL** attribute, separated by spaces.

```
nsFarmServerURL: ldap://example.com us.example.com:389 africa.example.com:1000/
```

In this sample LDAP URL, the database link first contacts the server **example.com** on the standard port to service an operation. If it does not respond, the database link then contacts the server **us.example.com** on port **389**. If this server fails, it then contacts **africa.example.com** on port **1000**.

2.3.1.2.5. Using Different Bind Mechanisms

The local server can connect to the remote server using several different connection types and authentication mechanisms.

There are three ways that the local server can connect to the remote server:

- Over the standard LDAP port
- Over a dedicated LDAPS port
- Using Start TLS, which is a secure connection over a standard port



NOTE

If secure binds are required for simple password authentication ([Section 19.11.1, “Requiring Secure Binds”](#)), then any chaining operations will fail unless they occur over a secure connection. Using a secure connection (TLS and Start TLS connections or SASL authentication) is recommended, anyway.

Ultimately, there are two connection settings. The TLS option signifies that both of the servers are configured to run and accept connections over TLS, but there is no separate configuration attribute for enforcing TLS.

The connection type is identified in the ***nsUseStartTLS*** attribute. When this is **on**, then the server initiates a Start TLS connect over the standard port. If this is **off**, then the server either uses the LDAP port or the LDAPS port, depending on what is configured for the remote server in the ***nsFarmServerURL*** attribute.

For example, to use Start TLS:

```
nsUseStartTLS: on
```

For example, to use a standard connection or TLS connection:

```
nsUseStartTLS: off
```

There are four different methods which the local server can use to authenticate to the farm server.

- *empty*. If there is no bind mechanism set, then the server performs simple authentication and requires the ***nsMultiplexorBindDN*** and ***nsMultiplexorCredentials*** attributes to give the bind information.
- *EXTERNAL*. This uses an TLS certificate to authenticate the farm server to the remote server. Either the farm server URL must be set to the secure URL (***ldaps***) or the ***nsUseStartTLS*** attribute must be set to **on**.

Additionally, the remote server must be configured to map the farm server's certificate to its bind identity, as described in the *certmap.conf* section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

- *DIGEST-MD5*. This uses SASL authentication with DIGEST-MD5 encryption. As with simple authentication, this requires the ***nsMultiplexorBindDN*** and ***nsMultiplexorCredentials*** attributes to give the bind information.

- *GSSAPI*. This uses Kerberos-based authentication over SASL.

The farm server must be configured with a Kerberos keytab, and the remote server must have a defined SASL mapping for the farm server's bind identity. Setting up Kerberos keytabs and SASL mappings is described in [Section 9.9, "Setting up SASL Identity Mapping"](#).



NOTE

SASL connections can be established over standard connections or TLS connections.

For example:

```
nsBindMechanism: EXTERNAL
```



NOTE

If SASL is used, then the local server must also be configured to chain the SASL and password policy components. Add the components for the database link configuration, as described in [Section 2.3.2, "Configuring the Chaining Policy"](#). For example:

```
ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsActiveChainingComponents
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=password policy,cn=components,cn=config
-
add: nsActiveChainingComponents
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=sasl,cn=components,cn=config
^D
```

2.3.1.2.6. Summary of Database Link Configuration Attributes

The following table lists the attributes available for configuring a database link. Some of these attributes were discussed in the earlier sections. All instance attributes are defined in the **cn=database_link,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry.

Values defined for a specific database link take precedence over the global attribute value.

Table 2.1. Database Link Configuration Attributes

Attributes	Value
nsTransmittedControls [+]	Gives the OID of LDAP controls forwarded by the database link to the remote data server.
nsslapd-suffix	The suffix managed by the database link. Any changes to this attribute after the entry has been created take effect only after the server containing the database link is restarted.

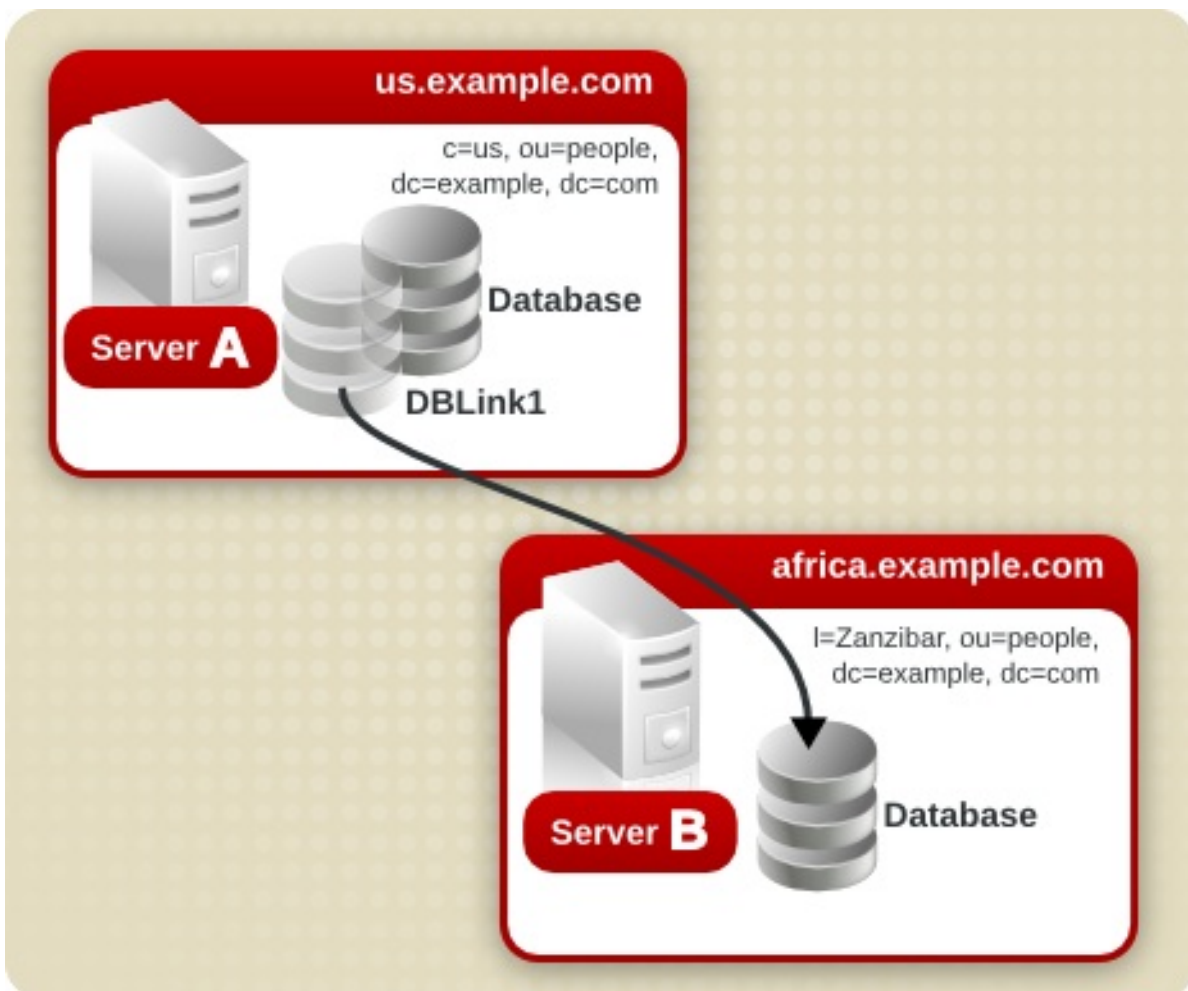
Attributes	Value
nsslapd-timelimit	Default search time limit for the database link, given in seconds. The default value is 3600 seconds.
nsslapd-sizelimit	Default size limit for the database link, given in number of entries. The default value is 2000 entries.
nsFarmServerURL	Gives the LDAP URL of the remote server (or farm server) that contains the data. This attribute can contain optional servers for failover, separated by spaces. If using cascading chaining, this URL can point to another database link.
nsUseStartTLS	Sets whether to use Start TLS to establish a secure connection over a standard port. The default is off , which is used for both simple (standard) connections and TLS connections.
nsBindMechanism	Sets the authentication method to use to authenticate (bind) to the remote server. If you set an empty value, simple bind is used (LDAP_SASL_SIMPLE).
nsMultiplexorBindDN	DN of the administrative entry used to communicate with the remote server. The term multiplexor in the name of the attribute means the server which contains the database link and communicates with the remote server. This bind DN cannot be the Directory Manager. If this attribute is not specified, the database link binds as anonymous .
nsMultiplexorCredentials	Password for the administrative user, given in plain text. If no password is provided, it means that users can bind as anonymous . The password is encrypted in the configuration file.
nsCheckLocalACI	Reserved for advanced use only. Controls whether ACIs are evaluated on the database link as well as the remote data server. Takes the values on or off . Changes to this attribute occur only after the server has been restarted. The default value is off .
nsProxiedAuthorization	Reserved for advanced use only. Disables proxied authorization. A value of off means proxied authorization is disabled. The default value is on .
nsActiveChainingComponents [+]	Lists the components using chaining. A component is any functional unit in the server. The value of this attribute in the database link instance overrides the value in the global configuration attribute. To disable chaining on a particular database instance, use the value none . The default policy is not to allow chaining. For more information, see Section 2.3.2.1, "Chaining Component Operations" .
nsReferralOnScopedSearch	Controls whether referrals are returned by scoped searches. This attribute is for optimizing the directory because returning referrals in response to scoped searches is more efficient. Takes the values on or off . The default value is off .

Attributes	Value
nsHopLimit	Maximum number of times a request can be forwarded from one database link to another. The default value is 10 .
<p>[+] Can be both a global and instance attribute. This global configuration attribute is located in the cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config entry. The global attributes are dynamic, meaning any changes made to them automatically take effect on all instances of the database link within the directory.</p>	

For further details, see the parameter descriptions in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

2.3.1.2.7. Database Link Configuration Example

Suppose a server within the **us.example.com** domain contains the subtree **I=Walla Walla,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** on a database and that operation requests for the **I=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** subtree should be chained to a different server in the **africa.example.com** domain.



1. Run **ldapmodify** to add a database link to Server A:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

2. Specify the configuration information for the database link:

```
dn: cn=DBLink1,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsBackendInstance
nsslapd-suffix: c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsfarmserverurl: ldap://africa.example.com:389/
nsMultiplexorBindDN: cn=proxy admin,cn=config
nsMultiplexorCredentials: secret
cn: DBLink1
```

```
dn: cn="c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com",cn=mapping tree,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: backend
nsslapd-backend: DBLink1
nsslapd-parent-suffix: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
cn: c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

In the first entry, the **nsslapd-suffix** attribute contains the suffix on Server B to which to chain from Server A. The **nsFarmServerURL** attribute contains the LDAP URL of Server B.

The second entry creates a new suffix, allowing the server to route requests made to the new database link. The **cn** attribute contains the same suffix specified in the **nsslapd-suffix** attribute of the database link. The **nsslapd-backend** attribute contains the name of the database link. The **nsslapd-parent-suffix** attribute specifies the parent of this new suffix, **ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**.

3. Create an administrative user on Server B, as follows:

```
dn: cn=proxy admin,cn=config
objectclass: person
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
cn: proxy admin
sn: proxy admin
userPassword: secret
description: Entry for use by database links
```



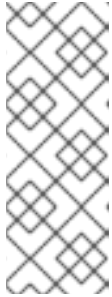
WARNING

Do not use the Directory Manager user as the proxy administrative user on the remote server. This creates a security hole.

4. Add the following proxy authorization ACL to the **l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry on Server B:

```
aci: (targetattr = "**")(version 3.0; acl "Proxied authorization
for database links"; allow (proxy) userdn = "ldap:///cn=proxy
admin,cn=config");
```

This ACI gives the proxy admin user read-only access to the data contained on the remote server within the **l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** subtree only.



NOTE

When a user binds to a database link, the user's identity is sent to the remote server. Access controls are always evaluated on the remote server. For the user to modify or write data successfully to the remote server, set up the correct access controls on the remote server. For more information about how access controls are evaluated in the context of chained operations, see [Section 2.3.6, "Database Links and Access Control Evaluation"](#).

2.3.2. Configuring the Chaining Policy

These procedures describe configuring how Directory Server chains requests made by client applications to Directory Servers that contain database links. This chaining policy applies to all database links created on Directory Server.

2.3.2.1. Chaining Component Operations

A component is any functional unit in the server that uses internal operations. For example, plug-ins are considered to be components, as are functions in the front-end. However, a plug-in may actually be comprised of multiple components (for example, the ACI plug-in).

Some components send internal LDAP requests to the server, expecting to access local data only. For such components, control the chaining policy so that the components can complete their operations successfully. One example is the certificate verification function. Chaining the LDAP request made by the function to check certificates implies that the remote server is trusted. If the remote server is not trusted, then there is a security problem.

By default, all internal operations are not chained and no components are allowed to chain, although this can be overridden.

Additionally, an ACI must be created on the remote server to allow the specified plug-in to perform its operations on the remote server. The ACI must exist in the *suffix* assigned to the database link.

The following lists the component names, the potential side-effects of allowing them to chain internal operations, and the permissions they need in the ACI on the remote server:

ACI plug-in

This plug-in implements access control. Operations used to retrieve and update ACI attributes are not chained because it is not safe to mix local and remote ACI attributes. However, requests used to retrieve user entries may be chained by setting the chaining components attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=ACI Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Resource limit component

This component sets server limits depending on the user bind DN. Resource limits can be applied on remote users if the resource limitation component is allowed to chain. To chain resource limit component operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=resource limits,cn=components,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Certificate-based authentication checking component

This component is used when the external bind method is used. It retrieves the user certificate from the database on the remote server. Allowing this component to chain means certificate-based authentication can work with a database link. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=certificate-based authentication,cn=components,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Password policy component

This component is used to allow SASL binds to the remote server. Some forms of SASL authentication require authenticating with a user name and password. Enabling the password policy allows the server to verify and implement the specific authentication method requested and to apply the appropriate password policies. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=password policy,cn=components,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

SASL component

This component is used to allow SASL binds to the remote server. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=password policy,cn=components,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Referential Integrity plug-in

This plug-in ensures that updates made to attributes containing DNs are propagated to all entries that contain pointers to the attribute. For example, when an entry that is a member of a group is deleted, the entry is automatically removed from the group. Using this plug-in with chaining helps simplify the management of static groups when the group members are remote to the static group definition. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=referential integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Attribute Uniqueness plug-in

This plug-in checks that all the values for a specified attribute are unique (no duplicates). If this plug-in is chained, it confirms that attribute values are unique even on attributes changed through a database link. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=attribute uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare

Roles component

This component chains the roles and roles assignments for the entries in a database. Chaining this component maintains the roles even on chained databases. To chain this component's operations, add the chaining component attribute:

```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=roles,cn=components,cn=config
```

Permissions: Read, search, and compare



NOTE

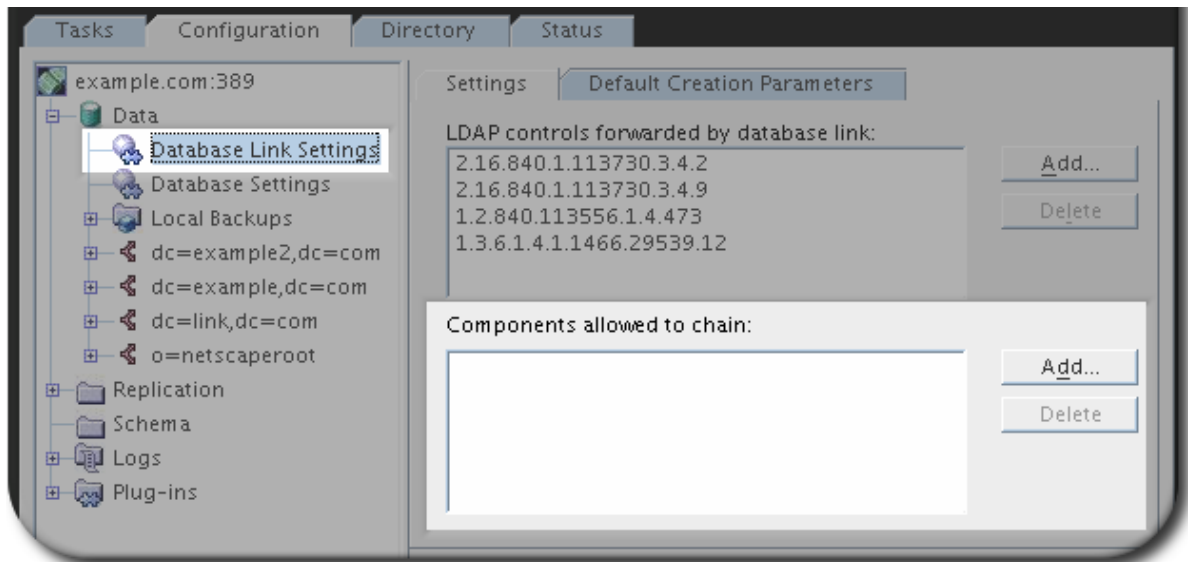
The following components cannot be chained:

- Roles plug-in
- Password policy component
- Replication plug-ins
- Referential Integrity plug-in

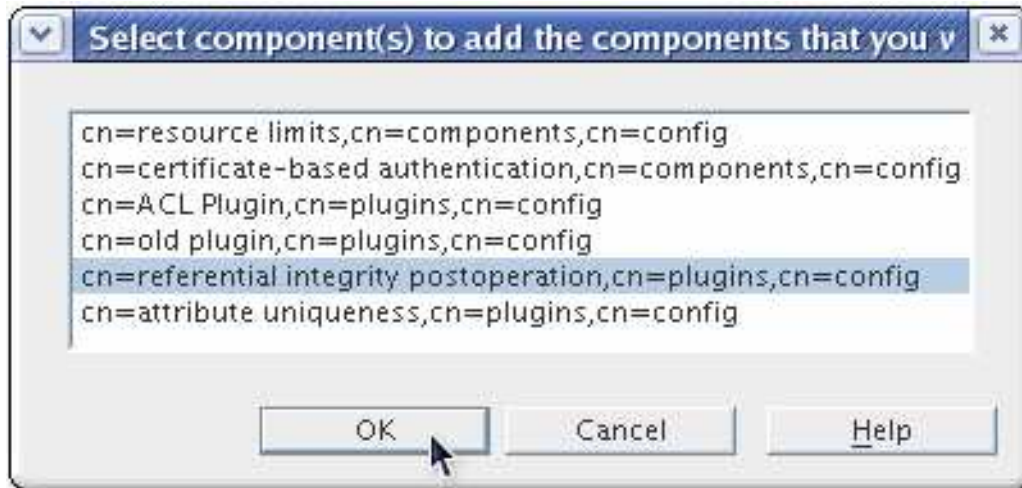
When enabling the Referential Integrity plug-in on servers issuing chaining requests, be sure to analyze performance, resource, and time needs as well as integrity needs. Integrity checks can be time-consuming and draining on memory and CPU. For further information on the limitations surrounding ACIs and chaining, see [Section 18.5, "Limitations of ACIs"](#).

2.3.2.1.1. Chaining Component Operations Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand **Data** in the left pane, and click **Database Link Settings**.
3. Select the **Settings** tab in the right window.



4. Click the **Add** button in the **Components allowed to chain** section.
5. Select the component to chain from the list, and click **OK**.



6. Restart the server in order for the change to take effect.

After allowing the component to chain, create an ACI in the suffix on the remote server to which the operation will be chained. For example, this creates an ACI for the Referential Integrity plug-in:

```
aci: (targetattr "*" )(target="ldap:///ou=customers,l=us,dc=example,dc=com")
(version 3.0; acl "RefInt Access for chaining"; allow
(read,write,search,compare) userdn = "ldap:///cn=referential integrity
postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config";)
```

2.3.2.1.2. Chaining Component Operations from the Command Line

1. Specify components to include in chaining using the ***nsActiveChainingComponents*** attribute in the **cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry of the configuration file.

For example, to allow the referential integrity component to chain operations, add the following to the database link configuration file:


```
nsActiveChainingComponents: cn=referential integrity
postoperation,cn=components,cn=config
```

See [Section 2.3.2.1, "Chaining Component Operations"](#) for a list of the components which can be chained.

- Restart the server for the change to take effect.

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

- Create an ACL in the suffix on the remote server to which the operation will be chained. For example, this creates an ACL for the Referential Integrity plug-in:

```
aci: (targetattr "*" )(target="ldap:///ou=customers,l=us,dc=example,dc=com")
(version 3.0; acl "RefInt Access for chaining"; allow
(read,write,search,compare) userdn = "ldap:///cn=referential
integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config");)
```

2.3.2.2. Chaining LDAP Controls

It is possible to *not* chain operation requests made by LDAP controls. By default, requests made by the following controls are forwarded to the remote server by the database link:

- Virtual List View (VLV)*. This control provides lists of parts of entries rather than returning all entry information.
- Server-side sorting*. This control sorts entries according to their attribute values, usually using a specific matching rule.
- Dereferencing*. This control tracks back over references in entry attributes in a search and pulls specified attribute information from the referenced entry and returns it with the rest of the search results.
- Managed DSA*. This controls returns smart referrals as entries, rather than following the referral, so the smart referral itself can be changed or deleted.
- Loop detection*. This control keeps track of the number of times the server chains with another server. When the count reaches the configured number, a loop is detected, and the client application is notified. For more information about using this control, see [Section 2.4.4, "Detecting Loops"](#).

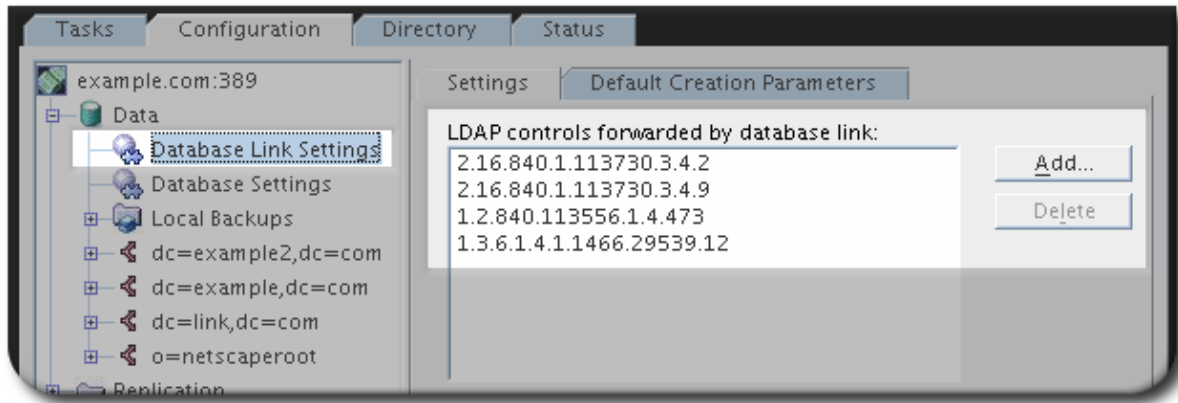


NOTE

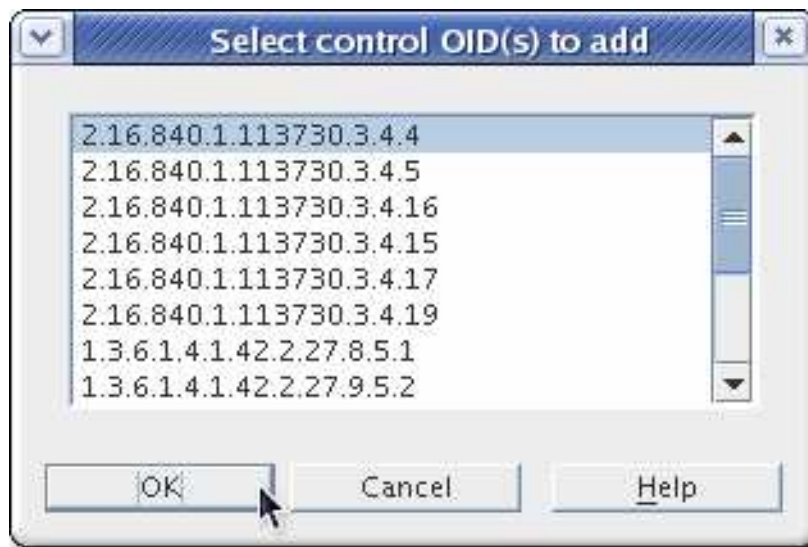
Server-side sorting and VLV controls are supported only when a client application request is made to a single database. Database links cannot support these controls when a client application makes a request to multiple databases.

2.3.2.2.1. Chaining LDAP Controls Using the Console

- In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
- Expand the **Data** folder in the left pane, and click **Database Link Settings**.
- Select the **Settings** tab in the right window.



4. Click the **Add** button in the **LDAP Controls forwarded by the database link** section to add an LDAP control to the list.
5. Select the OID of a control to add to the list, and click **OK**.



2.3.2.2.2. Chaining LDAP Controls from the Command Line

To chain controls, alter the controls that the database link forwards by changing the ***nsTransmittedControls*** attribute of the ***cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config*** entry. For example, to forward the virtual list view control, add the following to the database link entry in the configuration file:

```
nsTransmittedControls: 2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.9
```

In addition, if clients of the Directory Server create their own controls and their operations should be chained to remote servers, add the OID of the custom control to the ***nsTransmittedControls*** attribute.

The LDAP controls which can be chained and their OIDs are listed in the following table:

Table 2.2. LDAP Controls and Their OIDs

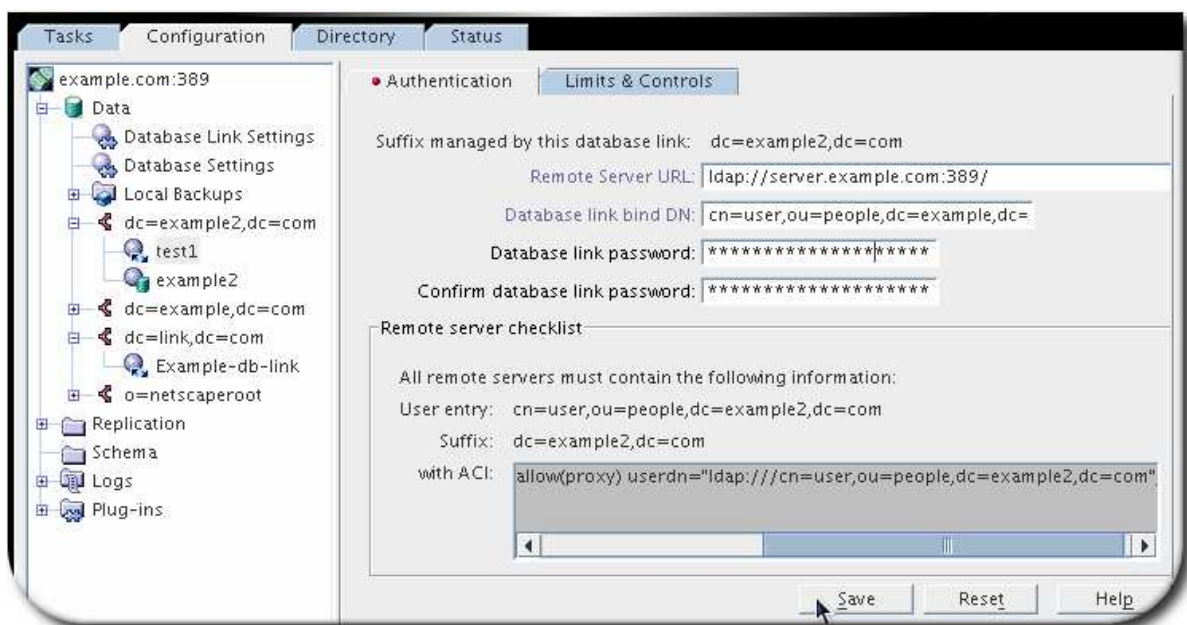
Control Name	OID
Virtual list view (VLV)	2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.9

Control Name	OID
Server-side sorting	1.2.840.113556.1.4.473
Managed DSA	2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.2
Loop detection	1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12
Dereferencing searches	1.3.6.1.4.1.4203.666.5.16

2.3.3. Maintaining Database Links

All of the information for the database link for the connection to the remote server.

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. In the left pane, expand the **Data** folder, and select the database link under the suffix.
3. In the right navigation pane, click the **Authentication** tab.



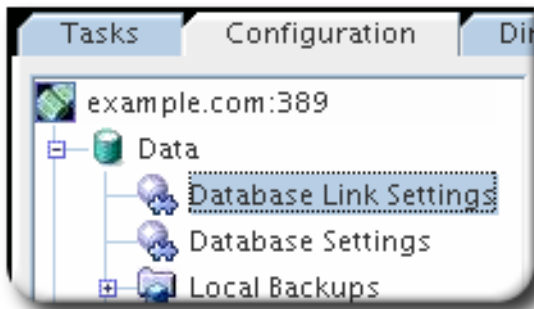
4. Change the connection information.
 - The LDAP URL for the remote server.[]
 - The bind DN and password used by the database link to bind to the remote server.

2.3.4. Configuring Database Link Defaults

Configuring the default settings for database links defines the settings used for cascading chaining (the number of hops allowed for a client request), the connection rules for the remote server, and how the server responds to client requests.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab.

- Expand the **Data** folder in the left pane, and click **Database Link Settings**. Open the **Default Creation Parameters** tab.



- Fill in the new configuration parameters.

Control Client Return

Return referral on scoped search

Size limit: entry(s)

Time limit: second(s)

Cascading Chaining

Check local ACI

Maximum hops:

Connection Management

Maximum TCP connection(s): Maximum LDAP connection(s):

Bind timeout: Maximum bind retries:

Maximum binds per connection: Maximum operations per connection:

Timeout before abandon (sec): Connection life (sec):



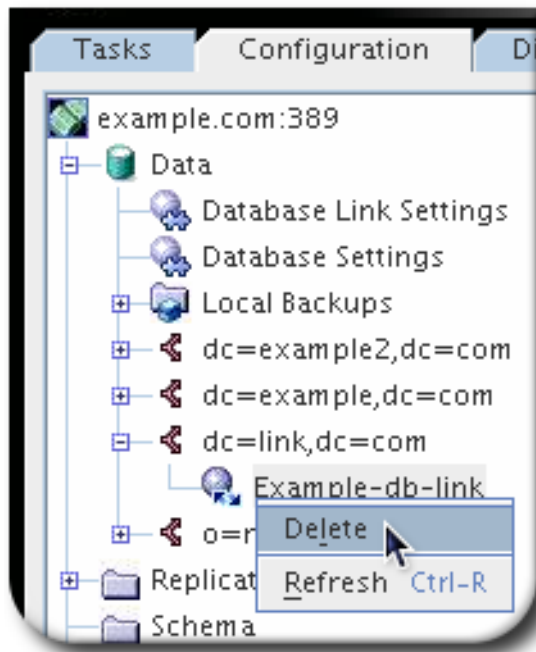
NOTE

Changes made to the default settings of a database link are not applied retroactively. Only the database links created after changes are made to the default settings will reflect the changes.

2.3.5. Deleting Database Links

To delete a database link, right-click the database link, and select **Delete** from the pop-up menu. Confirm the delete when prompted.

- In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
- Under **Data** in the left navigation pane, open the suffix and select the database link to delete.
- Right-click the database link, and select **Delete** from the menu.



2.3.6. Database Links and Access Control Evaluation

When a user binds to a server containing a database link, the database link sends the user's identity to the remote server. Access controls are always evaluated on the remote server. Every LDAP operation evaluated on the remote server uses the original identity of the client application passed using the proxied authorization control. Operations succeed on the remote server only if the user has the correct access controls on the subtree contained on the remote server. This requires adding the usual access controls to the remote server with a few restrictions:

- Not all types of access control can be used.

For example, role-based or filter-based ACIs need access to the user entry. Because the data are accessed through database links, only the data in the proxy control can be verified. Consider designing the directory in a way that ensures the user entry is located in the same database as the user's data.

- All access controls based on the IP address or DNS domain of the client may not work since the original domain of the client is lost during chaining. The remote server views the client application as being at the same IP address and in the same DNS domain as the database link.



NOTE

Directory Server supports both IPv4 and IPv6 IP addresses.

The following restrictions apply to the ACIs used with database links:

- ACIs must be located with any groups they use. If the groups are dynamic, all users in the group must be located with the ACI and the group. If the group is static, it links to remote users.
- ACIs must be located with any role definitions they use and with any users intended to have those roles.
- ACIs that link to values of a user's entry (for example, **userattr** subject rules) will work if the user is remote.

Though access controls are always evaluated on the remote server, they can also be evaluated on both the server containing the database link and the remote server. This poses several limitations:

- During access control evaluation, contents of user entries are not necessarily available (for example, if the access control is evaluated on the server containing the database link and the entry is located on a remote server).

For performance reasons, clients cannot do remote inquiries and evaluate access controls.

- The database link does not necessarily have access to the entries being modified by the client application.

When performing a modify operation, the database link does not have access to the full entry stored on the remote server. If performing a delete operation, the database link is only aware of the entry's DN. If an access control specifies a particular attribute, then a delete operation will fail when being conducted through a database link.



NOTE

By default, access controls set on the server containing the database link are not evaluated. To override this default, use the ***nsCheckLocalACI*** attribute in the ***cn=database_link, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config*** entry. However, evaluating access controls on the server containing the database link is not recommended except with cascading chaining.

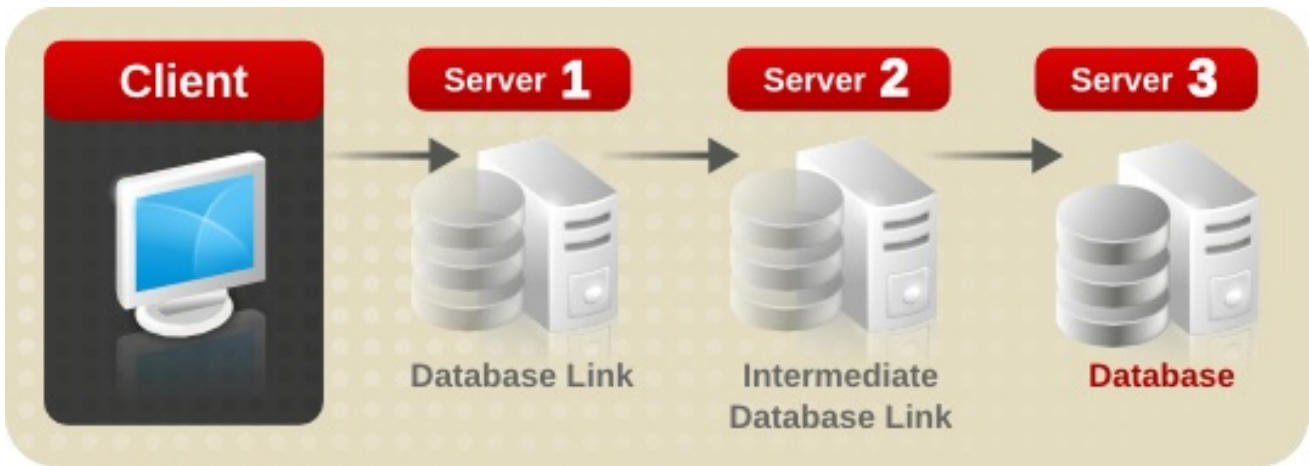
2.4. CONFIGURING CASCADING CHAINING

The database link can be configured to point to another database link, creating a cascading chaining operation. A cascading chain occurs any time more than one hop is required to access all of the data in a directory tree.

- [Section 2.4.1, "Overview of Cascading Chaining"](#)
- [Section 2.4.2, "Configuring Cascading Chaining Using the Console"](#)
- [Section 2.4.3, "Configuring Cascading Chaining from the Command Line"](#)
- [Section 2.4.4, "Detecting Loops"](#)
- [Section 2.4.5, "Summary of Cascading Chaining Configuration Attributes"](#)
- [Section 2.4.6, "Cascading Chaining Configuration Example"](#)

2.4.1. Overview of Cascading Chaining

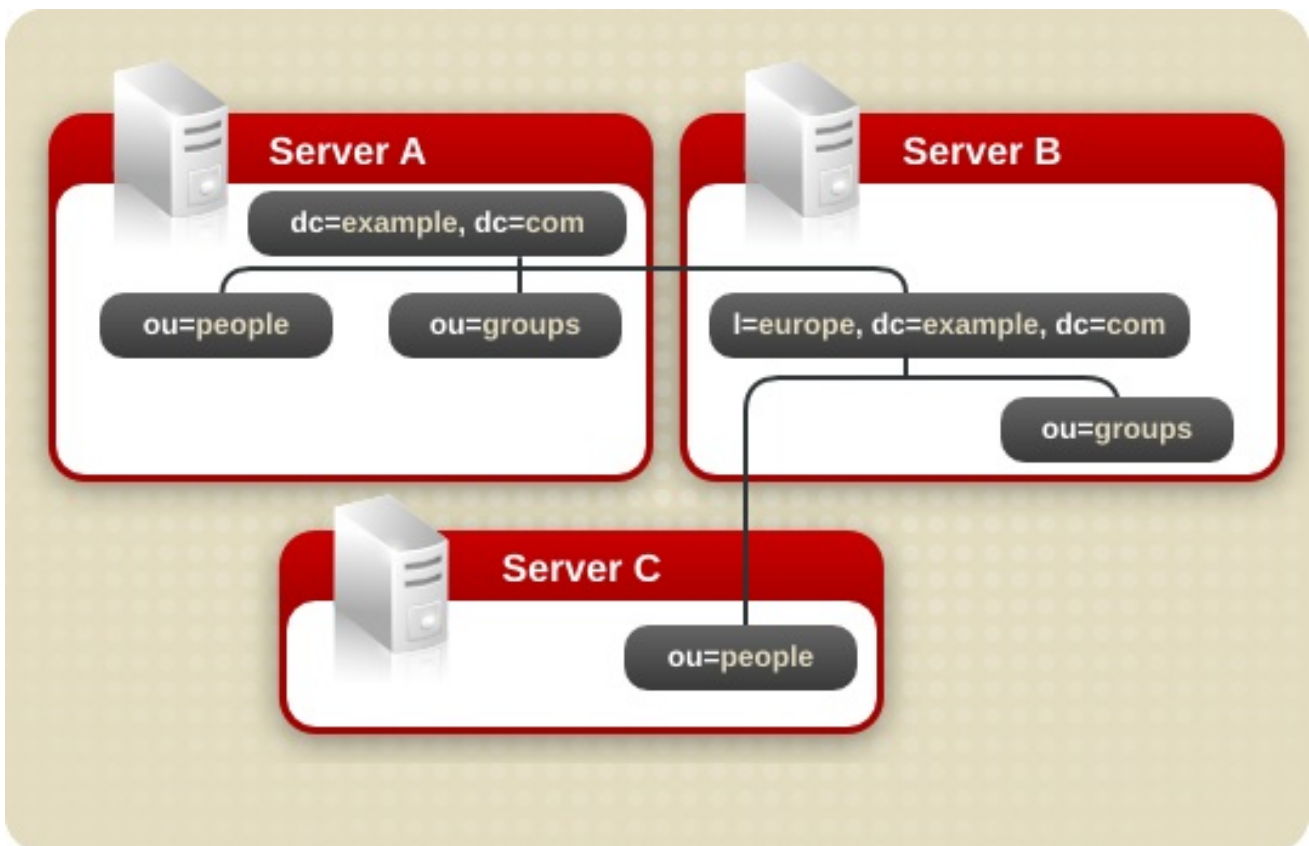
Cascading chaining occurs when more than one hop is required for the directory to process a client application's request.



The client application sends a modify request to Server 1. Server one contains a database link that forwards the operation to Server 2, which contains another database link. The database link on Server 2 forwards the operations to server three, which contains the data the clients wants to modify in a database. Two hops are required to access the piece of data the client want to modify.

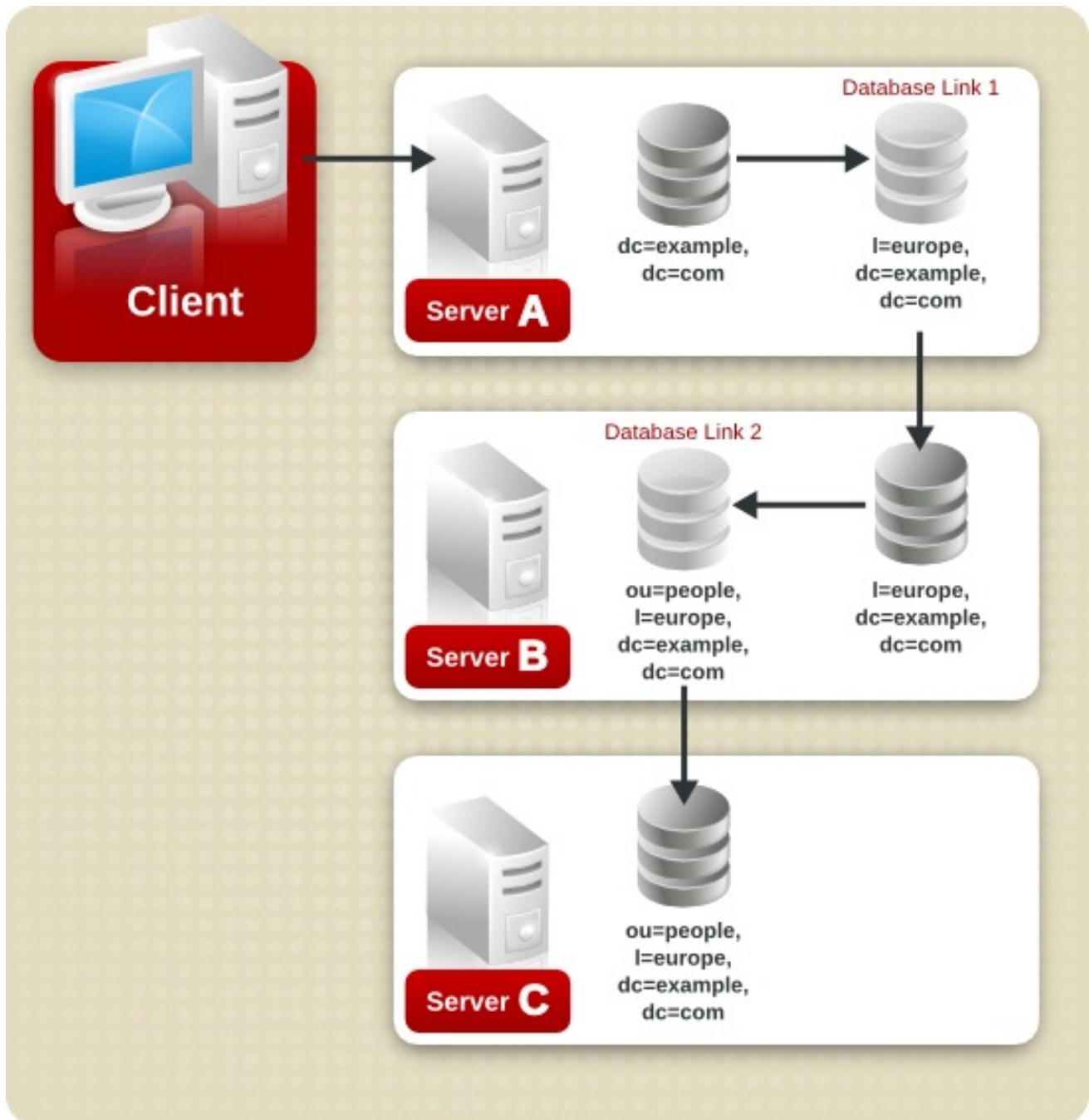
During a normal operation request, a client binds to the server, and then any ACIs applying to that client are evaluated. With cascading chaining, the client bind request is evaluated on Server 1, but the ACIs applying to the client are evaluated only after the request has been chained to the destination server, in the above example Server 2.

For example, on Server A, a directory tree is split:



The root suffix **dc=example,dc=com** and the **ou=people** and **ou=groups** sub suffixes are stored on Server A. The **l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** and **ou=groups** suffixes are stored in on Server B, and the **ou=people** branch of the **l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** suffix is stored on Server C.

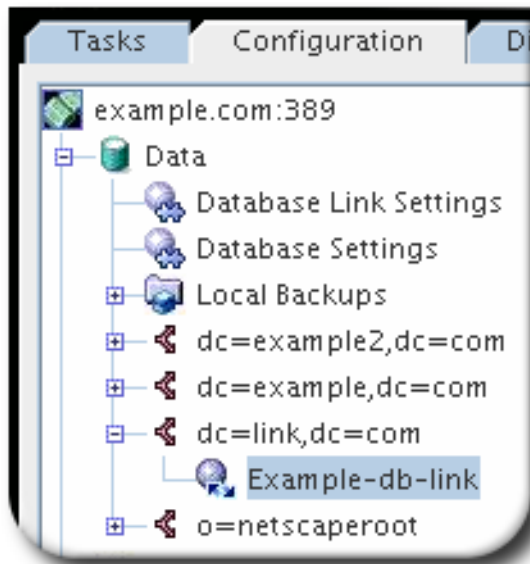
With cascading configured on servers A, B, and C, a client request targeted at the **ou=people,l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** entry would be routed by the directory as follows:



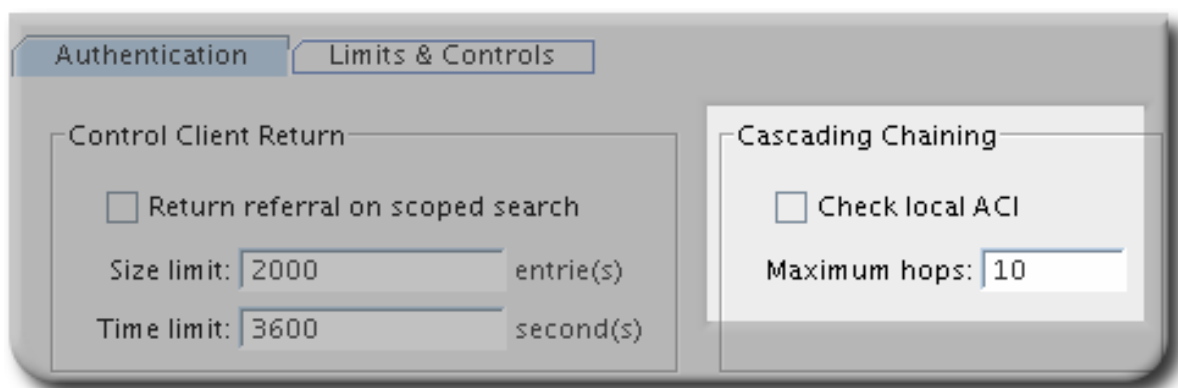
First, the client binds to Server A and chains to Server B using Database Link 1. Then Server B chains to the target database on Server C using Database Link 2 to access the data in the **ou=people,l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** branch. Because at least two hops are required for the directory to service the client request, this is considered a cascading chain.

2.4.2. Configuring Cascading Chaining Using the Console

1. Select the **Configuration** tab. Expand the **Data** folder in the left pane, and select the suffix, then the database link.



2. Click the **Limits and Controls** tab in the right navigation pane.
3. Select the **Check local ACI** check box to enable the evaluation of local ACIs on the intermediate database links involved in the cascading chain. Selecting this check box may require adding the appropriate local ACIs to the database link.



4. Enter the maximum number of times a database link can point to another database link in the **Maximum hops** field.

By default, the maximum is ten hops. After ten hops, a loop is detected by the server, and an error is returned to the client application.

2.4.3. Configuring Cascading Chaining from the Command Line

To configure a cascade of database links through the command line:

1. Point one database link to the URL of the server containing the intermediate database link.

To create a cascading chain, the **nsFarmServerURL** attribute of one database link must contain the URL of the server containing another database link. Suppose the database link on the server called **example1.com** points to a database link on the server called **africa.example.com**. For example, the **cn=database_link, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config** entry of the database link on Server 1 would contain the following:

```
nsFarmServerURL: ldap://africa.example.com:389/
```

2. Configure the intermediate database link or links (in the example, Server 2) to transmit the Proxy Authorization Control.

By default, a database link does not transmit the Proxy Authorization Control. However, when one database link contacts another, this control is used to transmit information needed by the final destination server. The intermediate database link needs to transmit this control. To configure the database link to transmit the proxy authorization control, add the following to the **cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry of the intermediate database link:

```
nsTransmittedControls: 2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.12
```

The OID value represents the Proxy Authorization Control. For more information about chaining LDAP controls, see [Section 2.3.2.2, "Chaining LDAP Controls"](#).

3. Create a proxy administrative user ACI on all intermediate database links.

The ACI must exist on the server that contains the intermediate database link that checks the rights of the first database link before translating the request to another server. For example, if Server 2 does not check the credentials of Server 1, then anyone could bind as **anonymous** and pass a proxy authorization control allowing them more administrative privileges than appropriate. The proxy ACI prevents this security breach.

1. Create a database, if one does not already exist, on the server containing the intermediate database link. This database will contain the admin user entry and the ACI. For information about creating a database, see [Section 2.2.1, "Creating Databases"](#).
2. Create an entry that corresponds to the administrative user in the database.
3. Create an ACI for the administrative user that targets the appropriate suffix. This ensures the administrator has access only to the suffix of the database link. For example:

```
aci: (targetattr = "**")(version 3.0; acl "Proxied authorization for database links";
allow (proxy) userdn = "ldap:///cn=proxy admin,cn=config");
```

This ACI is like the ACI created on the remote server when configuring simple chaining.



WARNING

Carefully examine access controls when enabling chaining to avoid giving access to restricted areas of the directory. For example, if a default proxy ACI is created on a branch, the users that connect through the database link will be able to see all entries below the branch. There may be cases when not all of the subtrees should be viewed by a user. To avoid a security hole, create an additional ACI to restrict access to the subtree.

4. Enable local ACI evaluation on all intermediate database links.

To confirm that the proxy administrative ACI is used, enable evaluation of local ACIs on all intermediate database links involved in chaining. Add the following attribute to the

cn=database_link, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config entry of each intermediate database link:

```
nsCheckLocalACI: on
```

Setting this attribute to **on** in the **cn=default instance config, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config** entry means that all new database link instances will have the **nsCheckLocalACI** attribute set to **on** in their **cn=database_link, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config** entry.

5. Create client ACIs on all intermediate database links and the final destination database.

Because local ACI evaluation is enabled, the appropriate client application ACIs must be created on all intermediate database links, as well as the final destination database. To do this on the intermediate database links, first create a database that contains a suffix that represents a root suffix of the final destination suffix.

For example, if a client request made to the **c=africa, ou=people, dc=example, dc=com** suffix is chained to a remote server, all intermediate database links need to contain a database associated with the **dc=example, dc=com** suffix.

Add any client ACIs to this superior suffix entry. For example:

```
aci: (targetattr = "")(version 3.0; acl "Client authentication for database link users";
    allow (all) userdn = "ldap:///uid=* ,cn=config");
```

This ACI allows client applications that have a **uid** in the **cn=config** entry of Server 1 to perform any type of operation on the data below the **ou=people, dc=example, dc=com** suffix on server three.

2.4.4. Detecting Loops

An LDAP control included with Directory Server prevents loops. When first attempting to chain, the server sets this control to be the maximum number of hops, or chaining connections, allowed. Each subsequent server decrements the count. If a server receives a count of **0**, it determines that a loop has been detected and notifies the client application.

The number of hops allowed is defined using the **nsHopLimit** attribute. If not specified, the default value is **10**.

To use the control, add the following OID to the **nsTransmittedControl** attribute in the **cn=config, cn=chaining database, cn=plugins, cn=config** entry:

```
nsTransmittedControl: 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12
```

If the control is not present in the configuration file of each database link, loop detection will not be implemented.

2.4.5. Summary of Cascading Chaining Configuration Attributes

The following describes the attributes used to configure intermediate database links in a cascading chain:

nsFarmServerURL

URL of the server containing the next database link in the cascading chain.

nsTransmittedControls

Enter the following OIDs to the database links involved in the cascading chain:

```
nsTransmittedControls: 2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.12  
nsTransmittedControls: 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12
```

aci

This attribute must contain the following ACI:

```
aci: (targetattr = "**")(version 3.0; acl "Proxied  
authorization for database links";  
allow (proxy) userdn = "ldap:///cn=proxy admin,cn=config");
```

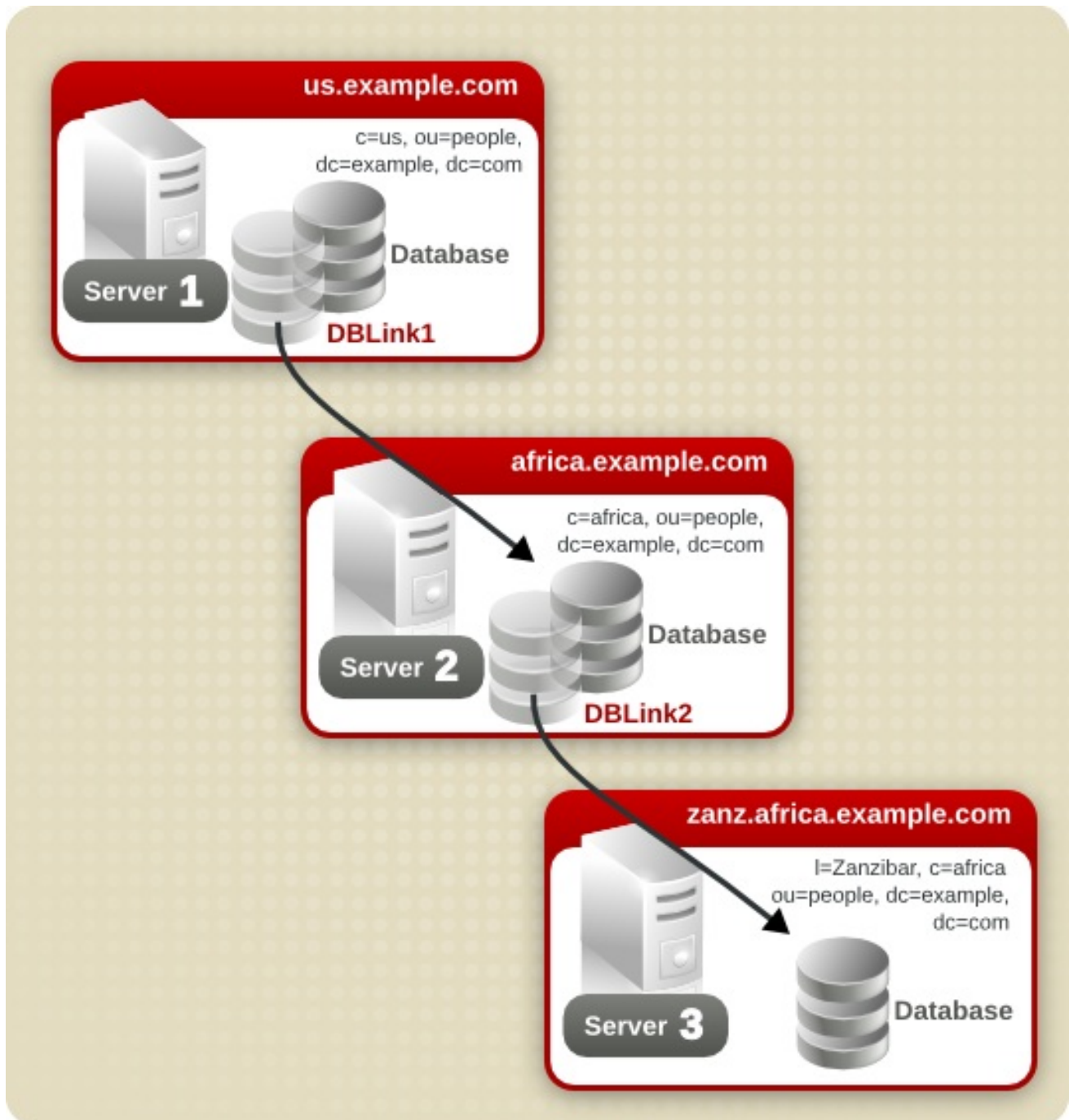
nsCheckLocalACI

To enable evaluation of local ACIs on all database links involved in chaining, turn local ACI evaluation on, as follows:

```
nsCheckLocalACI: on
```

2.4.6. Cascading Chaining Configuration Example

To create a cascading chain involving three servers as in the diagram below, the chaining components must be configured on all three servers.



- [Section 2.4.6.1, "Configuring Server One"](#)
- [Section 2.4.6.2, "Configuring Server Two"](#)
- [Section 2.4.6.3, "Configuring Server Three"](#)

2.4.6.1. Configuring Server One

1. Run **ldapmodify** and specify the configuration information for the database link, DBLink1, on Server 1:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: cn=DBLink1,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: top
```

```

objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsBackendInstance
nsslapd-suffix: c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsfarmserverurl: ldap://africa.example.com:389/
nsMultiplexorBindDN: cn=server1 proxy admin,cn=config
nsMultiplexorCredentials: secret
cn: DBLink1
nsCheckLocalACI:off

dn: cn="c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com",cn=mapping tree,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: backend
nsslapd-backend: DBLink1
nsslapd-parent-suffix: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
cn: c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com

```

The first section creates the entry associated with **DBLink1**. The second section creates a new suffix, allowing the server to direct requests made to the database link to the correct server. The **nsCheckLocalACI** attribute does not need to be configured to check local ACIs, as this is only required on the database link, **DBLink2**, on Server 2.

2. To implement loop detection, to specify the OID of the loop detection control in the **nsTransmittedControl** attribute stored in **cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry on Server 1.

```

dn: cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsTransmittedControl
nsTransmittedControl: 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12

```

As the **nsTransmittedControl** attribute is usually configured by default with the loop detection control OID **1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12** value, it is wise to check beforehand whether it already exists. If it does exist, this step is not necessary.

2.4.6.2. Configuring Server Two

1. Create a proxy administrative user on Server 2. This administrative user will be used to allow Server 1 to bind and authenticate to Server 2. It is useful to choose a proxy administrative user name which is specific to Server 1, as it is the proxy administrative user which will allow server *one* to bind to Server 2. Create the proxy administrative user, as follows:

```

dn: cn=server1 proxy admin,cn=config
objectclass: person
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
cn: server1 proxy admin
sn: server1 proxy admin
userPassword: secret
description: Entry for use by database links

```

**WARNING**

Do not use the Directory Manager or Administrator ID user as the proxy administrative user on the remote server. This creates a security hole.

2. Configure the database link, **DBLink2**, on Server 2:

```
dn: cn=DBLink2,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsBackendInstance
nsslapd-suffix: l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsfarmserverurl: ldap://zanz.africa.example.com:389/
nsMultiplexorBindDN: cn=server2 proxy admin,cn=config
nsMultiplexorCredentials: secret
cn: DBLink2
nsCheckLocalACI:on
```

```
dn: cn="l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com",cn=mapping tree,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: backend
nsslapd-backend: DBLink2
nsslapd-parent-suffix: c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
cn: l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

Since database link **DBLink2** is the intermediate database link in the cascading chaining configuration, set the ***nsCheckLocalACI*** attribute to **on** to allow the server to check whether it should allow the client and proxy administrative user access to the database link.

3. The database link on Server 2 must be configured to transmit the proxy authorization control and the loop detection control. To implement the proxy authorization control and the loop detection control, specify both corresponding OIDs. Add the following information to the **cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry on Server 2:

```
dn: cn=config,cn=chaining database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsTransmittedControl
nsTransmittedControl: 2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.12
nsTransmittedControl: 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12
```

nsTransmittedControl: 2.16.840.1.113730.3.4.12 is the OID for the proxy authorization control. **nsTransmittedControl: 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.29539.12** is the or the loop detection control.

Check beforehand whether the loop detection control is already configured, and adapt the above command accordingly.

4. Configure the ACIs. On Server 2, ensure that a suffix exists above the **l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** suffix, so that the following actions are possible:
 - Add the database link suffix
 - Add a local proxy authorization ACI to allow Server 1 to connect using the proxy authorization administrative user created on Server 2
 - Add a local client ACI so the client operation succeeds on Server 2, and it can be forwarded to server three. This local ACI is needed because local ACI checking is turned on for the **DBLink2** database link.

Both ACIs will be placed on the database that contains the **c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** suffix.



NOTE

To create these ACIs, the database corresponding to the **c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** suffix must already exist to hold the entry. This database needs to be associated with a suffix above the suffix specified in the *nsslapd-suffix* attribute of each database link. That is, the suffix on the final destination server should be a sub suffix of the suffix specified on the intermediate server.

1. Add the local proxy authorization ACI to the **c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
aci:(targetattr="*)(target="l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com")
(version 3.0; aci "Proxied authorization for database links"; allow (proxy)
userdn = "ldap:///cn=server1 proxy admin,cn=config");
```

2. Then add the local client ACI that will allow the client operation to succeed on Server 2, given that ACI checking is turned on. This ACI is the same as the ACI created on the destination server to provide access to the **l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** branch. All users within **c=us,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** may need to have update access to the entries in **l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** on server three. Create the following ACI on Server 2 on the **c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** suffix to allow this:

```
aci:(targetattr="*)(target="l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com")
(version 3.0; aci "Client authorization for database links"; allow (all)
userdn = "ldap:///uid=*,c=us,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com");
```

This ACI allows clients that have a UID in **c=us,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** on Server 1 to perform any type of operation on the **l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** suffix tree on server three. If there are users on Server 2 under a different suffix that will require additional rights on server three, it may be necessary to add additional client ACIs on Server 2.

2.4.6.3. Configuring Server Three

1. Create an administrative user on server three for Server 2 to use for proxy authorization:


```
dn: cn=server2 proxy admin,cn=config
objectclass: person
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
cn: server2 proxy admin
sn: server2 proxy admin
userPassword: secret
description: Entry for use by database links
```

2. Then add the same local proxy authorization ACI to server three as on Server 2. Add the following proxy authorization ACI to the **l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
aci: (targetattr = "**")(version 3.0; acl "Proxied authorization
for database links"; allow (proxy) userdn = "ldap:///cn=server2
proxy admin,cn=config");
```

This ACI gives the Server 2 proxy admin read-only access to the data contained on the remote server, server three, within the **l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** subtree only.

3. Create a local client ACI on the **l=Zanzibar,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** subtree that corresponds to the original client application. Use the same ACI as the one created for the client on Server 2:

```
aci: (targetattr = "**")(target="l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com")
(version 3.0; acl "Client authentication for database link users"; allow (all)
userdn = "ldap:///uid=*,c=us,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com");
```

The cascading chaining configuration is now set up. This cascading configuration allows a user to bind to Server 1 and modify information in the **l=Zanzibar,c=africa,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** branch on server three. Depending on your security needs, it may be necessary to provide more detailed access control.

2.5. USING REFERRALS

Referrals tell client applications which server to contact for a specific piece of information. This redirection occurs when a client application requests a directory entry that does not exist on the local server or when a database has been taken off-line for maintenance. This section contains the following information about referrals:

- [Section 2.5.1, "Starting the Server in Referral Mode"](#)
- [Section 2.5.2, "Setting Default Referrals"](#)
- [Section 2.5.3, "Creating Smart Referrals"](#)
- [Section 2.5.4, "Creating Suffix Referrals"](#)

For conceptual information on how to use referrals in the directory, see the *Red Hat Directory Server Deployment Guide*.

2.5.1. Starting the Server in Referral Mode

Referrals are used to redirect client applications to another server while the current server is unavailable or when the client requests information that is not held on the current server. For example, starting

Directory Server in referral mode while there are configuration changes being made to the Directory Server will refer all clients to another supplier while that server is unavailable. Starting the Directory Server in referral mode is done with the **refer** command.

Run **nsslapd** with the **refer** option.

```
# ns-slapd refer -D /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name [-p port] -r referral_url
```

- `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name` is the directory where the Directory Server configuration files are. This is the default location on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.
- `port` is the optional port number of the Directory Server to start in referral mode.
- `referral_url` is the referral returned to clients. The format of an LDAP URL is covered in [Appendix C, LDAP URLs](#).

2.5.2. Setting Default Referrals

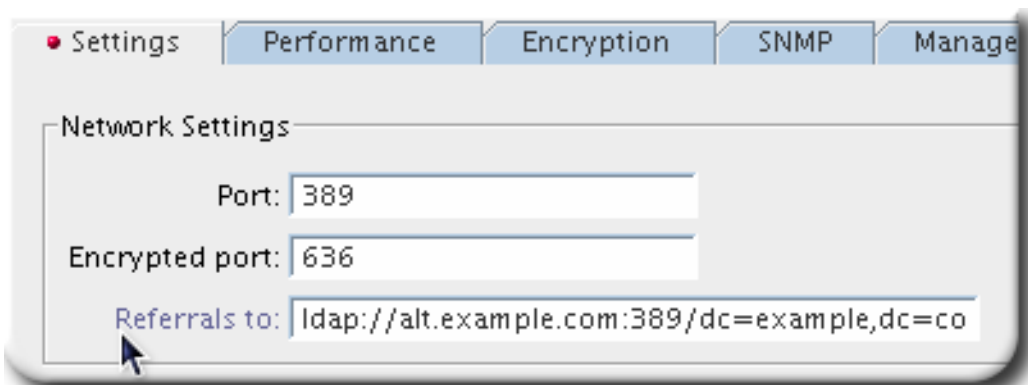
Default referrals are returned to client applications that submit operations on a DN not contained within any of the suffixes maintained by the directory. The following procedure describes setting a default referral for the directory using the console and the command-line utilities.

2.5.2.1. Setting a Default Referral Using the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Select the top entry in the navigation tree in the left pane.



3. Select the **Settings** tab in the right pane.
4. Enter an LDAP URL for the referral.



Enter multiple referral URLs separated by spaces and in quotes:

```
"ldap://dir1.example.com:389/dc=example,dc=com" "ldap://dir2.example.com/"
```

For more information about LDAP URLs, see [Appendix C, LDAP URLs](#).

2.5.2.2. Setting a Default Referral from the Command Line

ldapmodify can add a default referral to the **cn=config** entry in the directory's configuration file. For example, to add a new default referral from one Directory Server, **dir1.example.com**, to a server named **dir2.example.com**, add a new line to the **cn=config** entry.

1. Run the **ldapmodify** utility and add the default referral to the **dir2.example.com** server:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-referral
nsslapd-referral: ldap://dir2.example.com/
```

After adding the default referral to the **cn=config** entry of the directory, the directory will return the default referral in response to requests made by client applications. The Directory Server does not need to be restarted.

2.5.3. Creating Smart Referrals

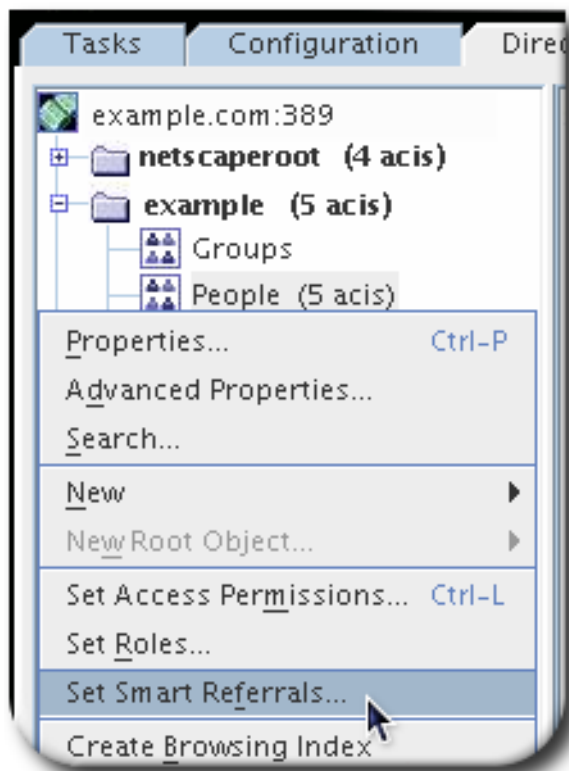
Smart referrals map a directory entry or directory tree to a specific LDAP URL. Using smart referrals, client applications can be referred to a specific server or a specific entry on a specific server.

For example, a client application requests the directory entry **uid=jdoe,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**. A smart referral is returned to the client that points to the entry **cn=john doe,o=people,l=europe,dc=example,dc=com** on the server **directory.europe.example.com**.

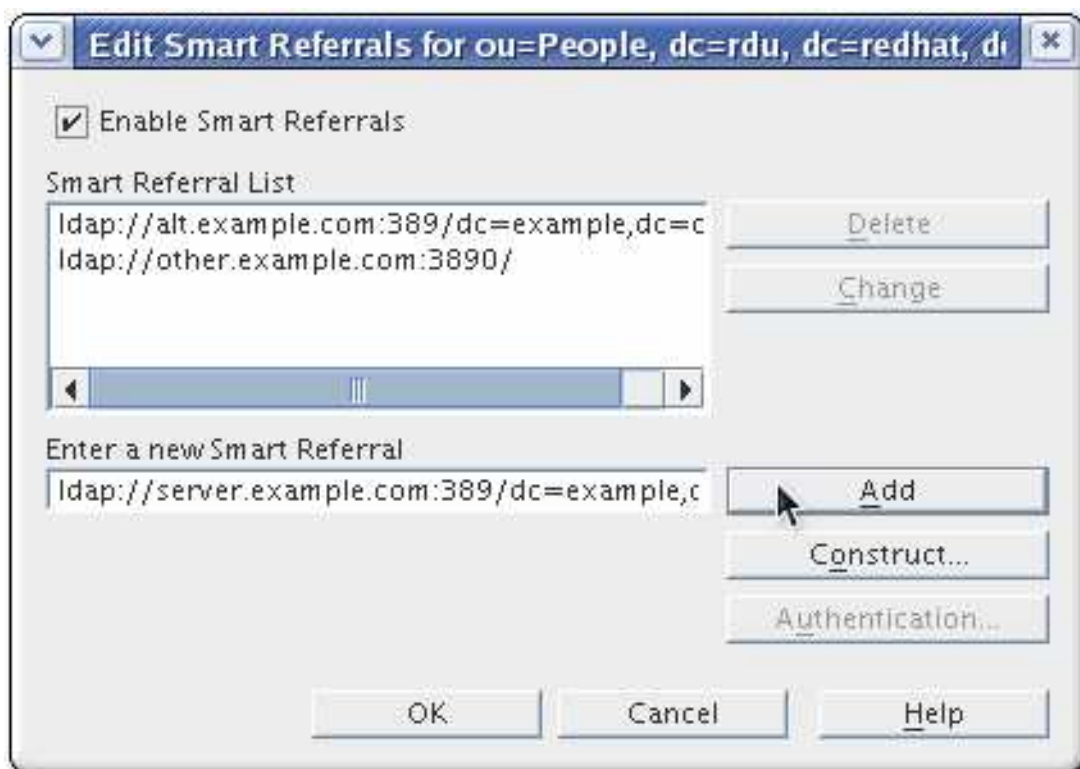
The way the directory uses smart referrals conforms to the standard specified in RFC 2251 section 4.1.11. The RFC can be downloaded at <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2251.txt>.

2.5.3.1. Creating Smart Referrals Using the Directory Server Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse through the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the entry for which to add the referral.
3. Right-click the entry, and select **Set Smart Referrals**.



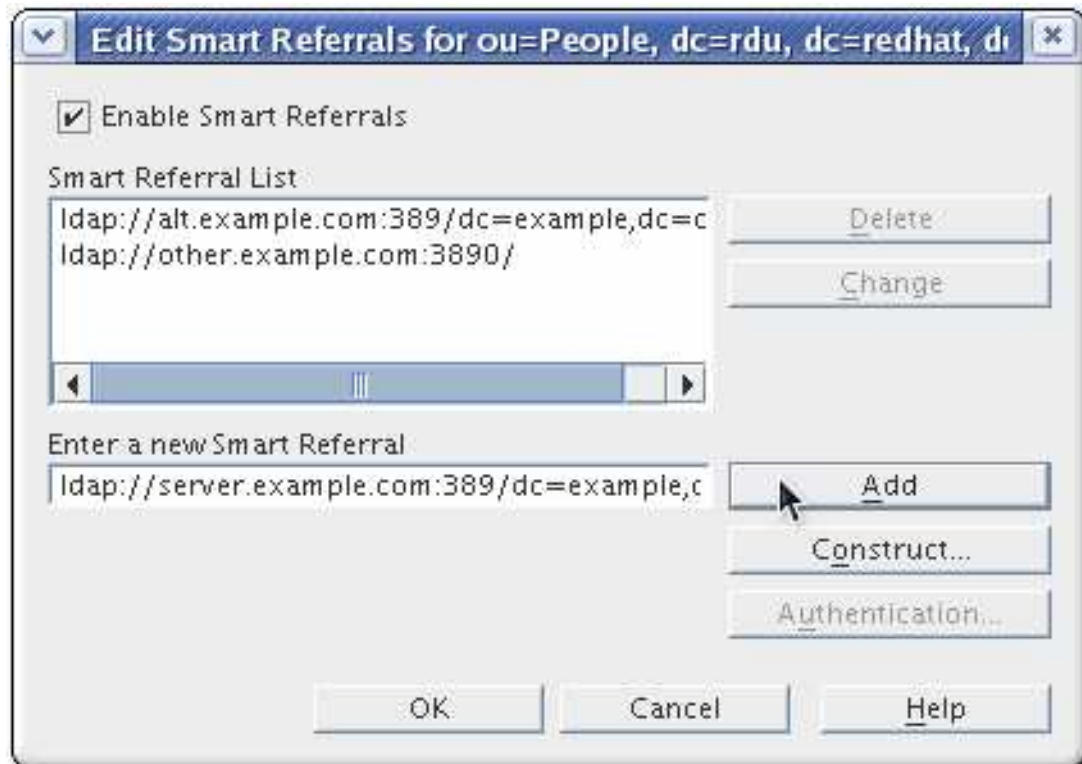
4. Select the **Enable Smart Referral** check box. (Unchecking the option removes all smart referrals from the entry and deletes the **referral** object class from the entry.)



5. In the **Enter a new Smart Referral** field, enter a referral in the LDAP URL format, and then click **Add**. The LDAP URL must be in the following format:

```
ldap://server:port[optional_dn]
```

server can be the host name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address for the server. *optional_dn* is the explicit DN for the server to return to the requesting client application.

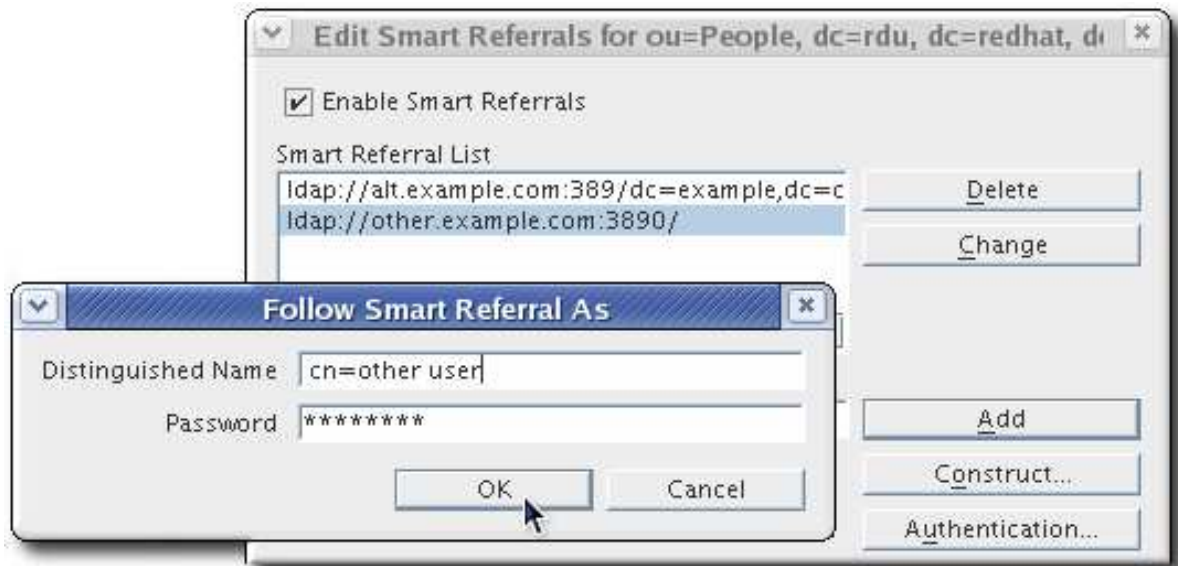


Construct opens a wizard to direct the process of adding a referral.

The **Smart Referral List** lists the referrals currently in place for the selected entry. The entire list of referrals is returned to client applications in response to a request with the **Return Referrals for All Operations** or **Return Referrals for Update Operations** options in the **Suffix Settings** tab, which is available under the **Configuration** tab.

To modify the list, click **Edit** to edit the selected referral or **Delete** to delete the selected referral.

- To set the referral to use different authentication credentials, click **Authentication**, and specify the appropriate DN and password. This authentication remains valid only until the Console is closed; then it is reset to the same authentication used to log into the Console.



2.5.3.2. Creating Smart Referrals from the Command Line

Use the **ldapmodify** command-line utility to create smart referrals from the command line.

To create a smart referral, create the relevant directory entry, and add the **referral** object class. This object class allows a single attribute, **ref**. The **ref** attribute must contain an LDAP URL.

For example, add the following to return a smart referral for an existing entry, **uid=jdoe**:

```
dn: uid=jdoe,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: referral
ref: ldap://directory.europe.example.com/cn=john%20doe,ou=people,l=europe,dc=example,dc=com
```



NOTE

Any information after a space in an LDAP URL is ignored by the server. For this reason, use **%20** instead of spaces in any LDAP URL used as a referral.

To add the entry **uid=jdoe,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** with a referral to **directory.europe.example.com**, include the following in the LDIF file before importing:

```
dn: uid=jdoe,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: person
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
objectclass: referral
cn: john doe
sn: doe
uid: jdoe
ref: ldap://directory.europe.example.com/cn=john%20doe,ou=people,l=europe,dc=example,dc=com
```

Use the **-M** option with **ldapmodify** when there is already a referral in the DN path. For more information on smart referrals, see the *Red Hat Directory Server Deployment Guide*.

2.5.4. Creating Suffix Referrals

The following procedure describes creating a referral in a *suffix*. This means that the suffix processes operations using a referral rather than a database or database link.



WARNING

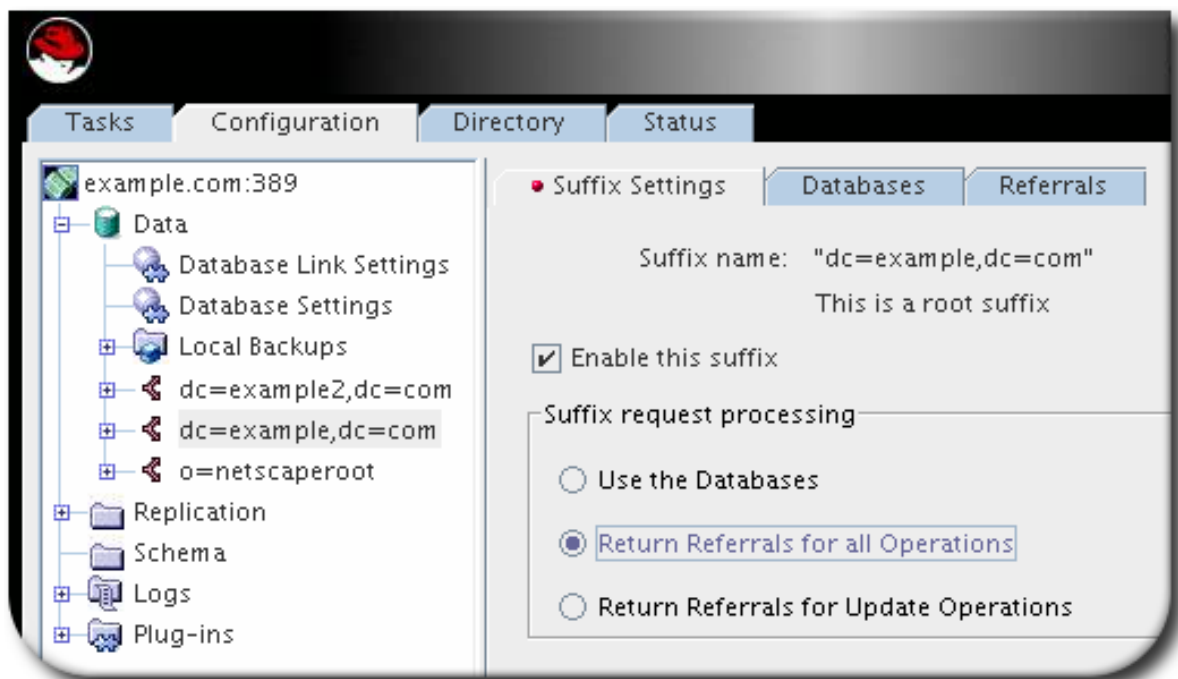
When a suffix is configured to return referrals, the ACIs contained by the database associated with the suffix are ignored.

2.5.4.1. Creating Suffix Referrals Using the Console

Referrals can be used to point a client application temporarily to a different server. For example, adding a referral to a suffix so that the suffix points to a different server allows the database associated with the suffix is taken off-line for maintenance without affecting the users of the Directory Server database.

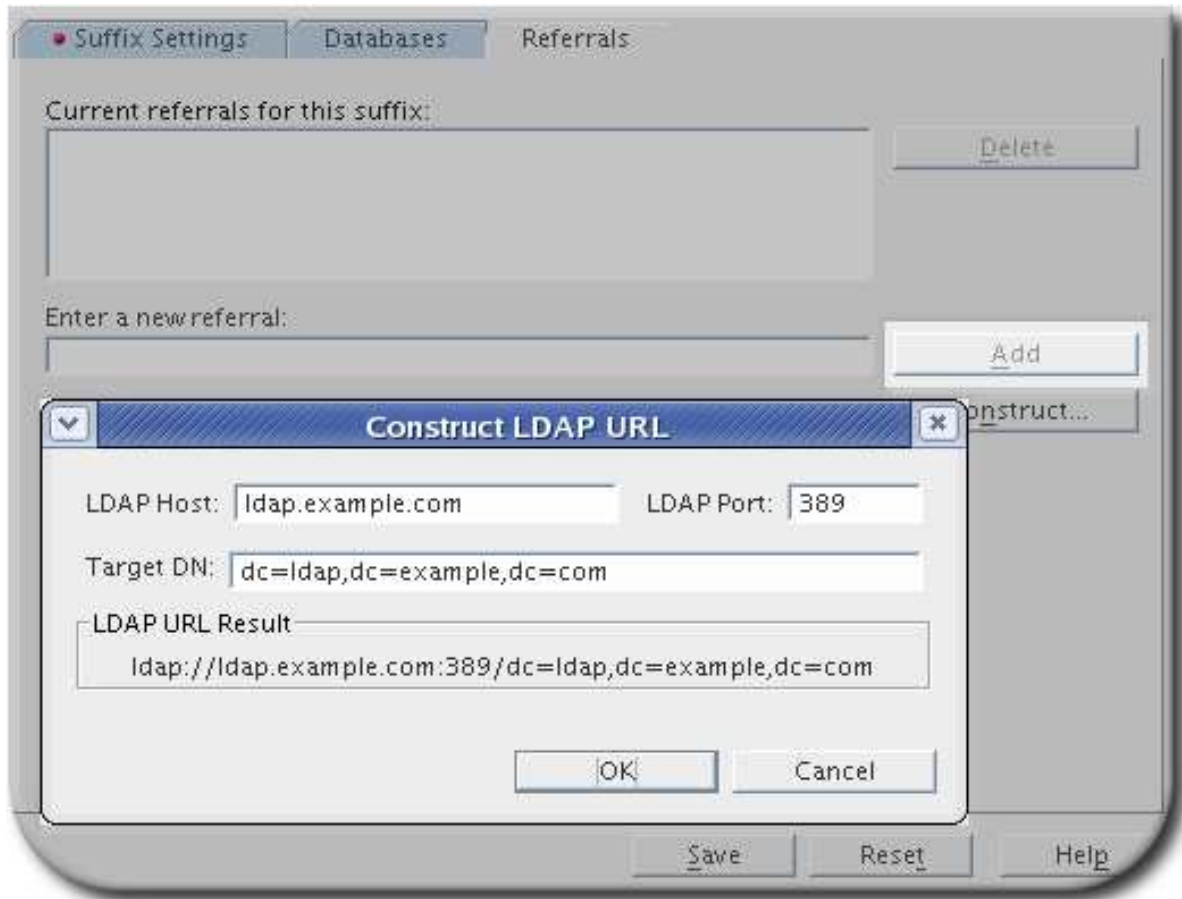
To set referrals in a suffix:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Under **Data** in the left pane, select the suffix for which to add a referral.
3. Click the **Suffix Settings** tab, and select the **Return Referrals for ... Operations** radio button.



Selecting **Return Referrals for Update Operations** means that the directory redirects only update and write requests to a read-only database. For example, there may be a local copy of directory data, and that data should be available for searches but not for updates, so it is replicated across several servers. Enabling referrals for that Directory Server only for update requests means that when a client asks to update an entry, the client is referred to the server that owns the data, where the modification request can proceed.

- Click the **Referrals** tab. Enter an LDAP URL in the [1] in the **Enter a new referral** field, or click **Construct** to create an LDAP URL.



- Click **Add** to add the referral to the list.

You can enter multiple referrals. The directory returns the entire list of referrals in response to requests from client applications.

2.5.4.2. Creating Suffix Referrals from the Command Line

Add a suffix referral to the root or sub suffix entry in the directory configuration file under the **cn=mapping tree,cn=config** branch.

Run **ldapmodify** and add a suffix referral to the **ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** root suffix:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=ou=people,dc=example,dc=com,cn=mapping tree,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: nsMappingTree
nsslapd-state: referral
nsslapd-referral: ldap://zanzibar.com/
```

The **nsslapd-state** attribute is set to **referral**, meaning that a referral is returned for requests made to this suffix. The **nsslapd-referral** attribute contains the LDAP URL of the referral returned by the suffix, in this case a referral to the **zanzibar.com** server.

The ***nsslapd-state*** attribute can also be set to **referral on update**. This means that the database is used for all operations except update requests. When a client application makes an update request to a suffix set to **referral on update**, the client receives a referral.

For more information about the suffix configuration attributes, see [Section 2.1.1.3, “Creating Root and Sub Suffixes using the Command Line”](#).

[1] Unlike the standard LDAP URL format, the URL of the remote server does not specify a suffix. It has the form **ldap://server:port/**, where *server* can be the host name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address.

[1] [Appendix C, LDAP URLs](#) has more information about the structure of LDAP URLs.

CHAPTER 3. MANAGING DIRECTORY ENTRIES

This chapter discusses how to use the Directory Server Console and the **ldapmodify** and **ldapdelete** command-line utilities to modify the contents of your directory.

Entries stored in Active Directory can be added to the Directory Server through Windows Sync; see [Chapter 16, Synchronizing Red Hat Directory Server with Microsoft Active Directory](#) for more information on adding or modifying synchronized entries through Windows User Sync.

3.1. MANAGING ENTRIES USING THE COMMAND LINE

To perform LDAP operations using the command line, install the `openldap-clients` package. The utilities installed by this package enable you to:

- Add new entries
- Add new attributes to existing entries
- Update existing entries and attributes
- Delete entries and attributes from entries
- Perform bulk operations

To install the `openldap-clients` package:

```
# yum install openldap-clients
```



NOTE

To perform LDAP operations, you need the appropriate permissions. For details about access control, see [Chapter 18, Managing Access Control](#).

3.1.1. Providing Input to the `ldapadd`, `ldapmodify`, and `ldapdelete` Utilities

When you add, update, or delete entries or attributes in your directory, you can either use the interactive mode of the utilities to enter LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) statements or pass an LDIF file to them.

For further details about LDIF, see [Section B.1, "About the LDIF File Format"](#).

3.1.1.1. Providing Input Using the Interactive Mode

In the interactive mode, the **ldapadd**, **ldapmodify**, and **ldapdelete** utilities read the input from the command line. To exit the interactive mode, press the **Ctrl+D** (**^D**) key combination to send the End Of File (EOF) escape sequence.

In interactive mode, the utility sends the statements to the LDAP server when you press **Enter** twice or when you send the EOF sequence.

Use the interactive mode:

- To enter LDIF statements without creating a file:

Example 3.1. Using the `ldapmodify` Interactive Mode to Enter LDIF Statements

The following example starts `ldapmodify` in interactive mode, deletes the `telephoneNumber` attribute, and adds the manager attribute with the `cn=manager_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com` value to the `uid=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com` entry. Press **Ctrl+D** after the last statement to exit the interactive mode.

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
delete: telephoneNumber
-
add: manager
manager: cn=manager_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
^D
```

- To redirect LDIF statements, outputted by another command, to Directory Server:

Example 3.2. Using the `ldapmodify` Interactive Mode with Redirected Content

The following example redirects the output of the `command_that_outputs_LDIF` command to `ldapmodify`. The interactive mode exits automatically after the redirected command exits.

```
# command_that_outputs_LDIF | ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" \
-W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

3.1.1.2. Providing Input Using an LDIF File

In the interactive mode, the `ldapadd`, `ldapmodify`, and `ldapdelete` utilities read the LDIF statements from a file. Use this mode to send a larger number of LDIF statements to Directory Server.

Example 3.3. Passing a File with LDIF Statements to `ldapmodify`

1. Create a file with the LDIF statements. For example, create the `~/example.ldif` file with the following statements:

```
dn: uid=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
delete: telephoneNumber
-
add: manager
manager: cn=manager_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

This example deletes the `telephoneNumber` attribute and to adds the manager attribute with the `cn=manager_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com` value to the `uid=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com` entry

2. Pass the file to the `ldapmodify` command using the `-f file_name` option:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x \
-f ~/example.ldif
```

3.1.2. The Continuous Operation Mode

If you send multiple LDIF statements to Directory Server and one operation fails, the process stops. However, entries processed before the error occurred were successfully added, modified, or deleted.

To ignore errors and continue processing further LDIF statements in a batch, pass the **-c** option to **ldapadd** and **ldapmodify**. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -c -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

3.1.3. Adding an Entry

To add a new entry to the directory, use the **ldapadd** or **ldapmodify** utility. Note that **ldapadd** is a symbolic link to **/bin/ldapmodify**. Therefore, **ldapadd** performs the same operation as **ldapmodify -a**.



NOTE

You can only add a new directory entry, if the parent entry already exists. For example, you cannot add the **cn=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry, if the **ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** parent entry does not exist.

3.1.3.1. Adding an Entry Using ldapadd

To use the **ldapadd** utility to add, for example, the **cn=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** user entry:

```
# ldapadd -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
uid: user
givenName: given_name
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: inetorgperson
sn: surname
cn: user
```



NOTE

Running **ldapadd** automatically performs a **changetype: add** operation. Therefore, you do not need to specify **changetype: add** in the LDIF statement.

For further details on the parameters used in the command, see the `ldapadd(1)` man page.

3.1.3.2. Adding an Entry Using ldapmodify

To use the **ldapmodify** utility to add, for example, the **cn=user,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com** user entry:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
uid: user
givenName: given_name
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: inetorgperson
sn: surname
cn: user
```



NOTE

When passing the **-a** option to the **ldapmodify** command, the utility automatically performs a **changetype: add** operation. Therefore, you do not need to specify **changetype: add** in the LDIF statement.

For further details on the parameters used in the command, see the `ldapmodify(1)` man page.

3.1.3.3. Creating a Root Entry

To create the root entry of a database suffix, such as **dc=example,dc=com**, bind as the **cn=Directory Manager** user and add the entry.

The DN corresponds to the DN of the root or sub-suffix of the database.

For example, to add the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: domain
dc: example
```



NOTE

You can add root objects only if you have one database per suffix. If you create a suffix that is stored in several databases, you must use the **ldif2db** utility with the **-n back_end** option to set the database that will hold the new entries. For details, see [Section 6.1.4, “Importing from the Command Line”](#).

3.1.4. Updating a Directory Entry

When you modify a directory entry, use the **changetype: modify** statement. Depending on the change operation, you can add, change, or delete attributes from the entry.

Use the **ldapmodify** utility to send the LDIF statements to Directory Server. For example, in interactive mode:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

For further details on the parameters used in **ldapmodify** commands, see the `ldapmodify(1)` man page.

3.1.4.1. Adding Attributes to an Entry

To add an attribute to an entry, use the **add** operation.

For example, to add the **telephoneNumber** attribute with the **555-1234567** value to the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: telephoneNumber
telephoneNumber: 555-1234567
```

If an attribute is multi-valued, you can specify the attribute name multiple times to add all the values in a single operation. For example, to add two **telephoneNumber** attributes at once to the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: telephoneNumber
telephoneNumber: 555-1234567
telephoneNumber: 555-7654321
```

3.1.4.2. Updating an Attribute's Value

The procedure for updating an attribute's value depends on if the attribute is single-valued or multi-valued.

Updating a Single-value Attribute

When updating a single-value attribute, use the **replace** operation to override the existing value. The following command updates the **manager** attribute of the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
replace: manager
manager: uid=manager_name,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

Updating a Specific Value of a Multi-value Attribute

To update a specific value of a multi-value attribute, you must first delete the entry you want to replace, and then add the new value. The following command updates only the **telephoneNumber** attribute that is currently set to **555-1234567** in the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
delete: telephoneNumber
telephoneNumber: 555-1234567
-
add: telephoneNumber
telephoneNumber: 555-9876543
```

3.1.4.3. Deleting Attributes from an Entry

To delete an attribute from an entry, use the **delete** operation.

Deleting an Attribute

For example, to delete the *manager* attribute from the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
delete: manager
```



NOTE

If the attribute contains multiple values, this operation deletes all of them.

Deleting a Specific Value of a Multi-value Attribute

If you want to delete a specific value from a multi-value attribute, list the attribute and its value in the LDIF statement. For example, to delete only the *telephoneNumber* attribute that is set to **555-1234567** from the **uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
delete: telephoneNumber
telephoneNumber: 555-1234567
```

3.1.5. Deleting an Entry

Deleting an entry removes the entry from the directory.



NOTE

You can only delete entries that have no child entries. For example, you cannot delete the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry, if the **uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry still exists.

3.1.5.1. Deleting an Entry Using `ldapdelete`

The **ldapdelete** utility enables you to delete one or multiple entries. For example, to delete the **uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapdelete -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x \
"uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

To delete multiple entries in one operation, append them to the command. For example:

```
# ldapdelete -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x \
"uid=user1,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com" \
"uid=user2,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

For further details on the parameters used, see the `ldapdelete(1)` man page.

3.1.5.2. Deleting an Entry Using **ldapmodify**

To delete an entry using the **ldapmodify** utility, use the **changetype: delete** operation. For example, to delete the **uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,dc=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: delete
```

3.1.6. Renaming and Moving an Entry

Use the **ldapmodify** utility to send the LDIF statements to Directory Server when you rename an entry. For example, in interactive mode:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

For further details on the parameters used in **ldapmodify** commands, see the `ldapmodify(1)` man page.



NOTE

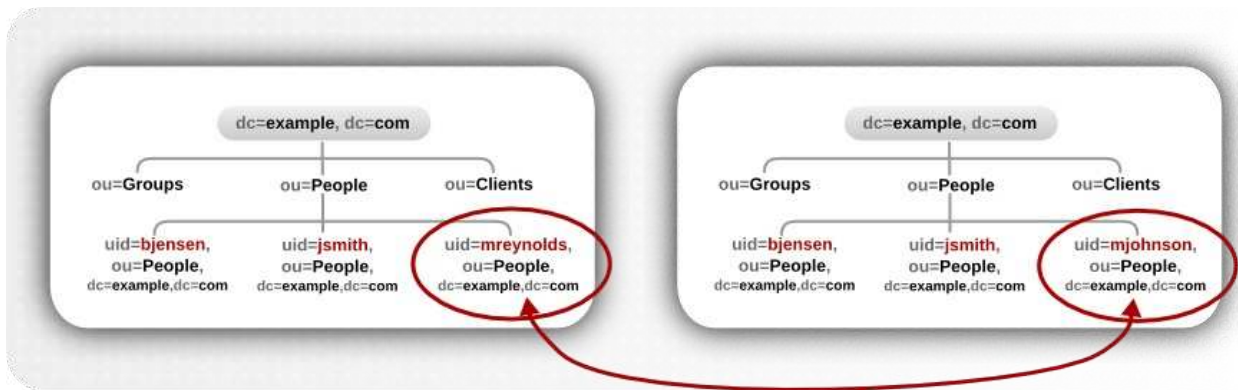
Use the **moddn** Access Control List (ACL) to grant permissions to move entries. For details, see [Section 18.11.2.1, "Targeting Source and Destination DN's"](#).

3.1.6.1. Types of Rename Operations

The following rename operations exist:

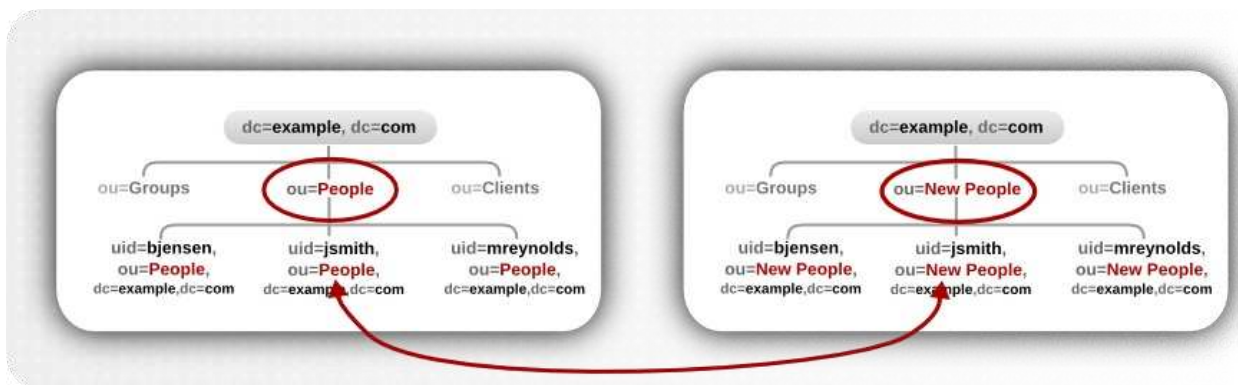
Renaming an Entry

If you rename an entry, the **modrdn** operation changes the Relative Distinguished Name (RDN) of the entry:



Renaming a Subentry

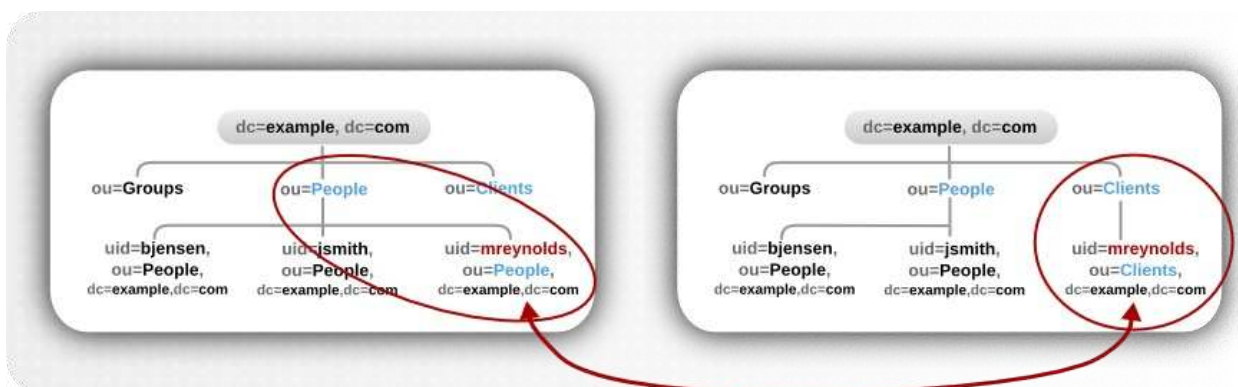
For subtree entries, the **modrdn** operation renames the subtree and also the DN components of child entries:



Note that for large subtrees, this process can take a lot of time and resources.

Moving an Entry to a New Parent

A similar action to renaming a subtree is moving an entry from one subtree to another. This is an expanded type of the **modrdn** operation, which simultaneously renames the entry and sets a **newSuperior** attribute which moves the entry from one parent to another:



3.1.6.2. Considerations for Renaming Entries

Keep the following in mind when performing rename operations:

- You cannot rename the root suffix.
- Subtree rename operations have minimal effect on replication. Replication agreements are

applied to an entire database, not a subtree within the database. Therefore, a subtree rename operation does not require reconfiguring a replication agreement. All name changes after a subtree rename operation are replicated as normal.

- Renaming a subtree might require any synchronization agreements to be reconfigured. Synchronization agreements are set at the suffix or subtree level. Therefore, renaming a subtree might break synchronization.
- Renaming a subtree requires that any subtree-level Access Control Instructions (ACI) set for the subtree be reconfigured manually, as well as any entry-level ACIs set for child entries of the subtree.
- Trying to change the component of a subtree, such as moving from **ou** to **dc**, might fail with a schema violation. For example, the **organizationalUnit** object class requires the **ou** attribute. If that attribute is removed as part of renaming the subtree, the operation fails.
- If you move a group, the **MemberOf** plug-in automatically updates the **memberOf** attributes. However, if you move a subtree that contain groups, you must manually create a task in the **cn=memberof task** entry or use the **fixup-memberof.pl** to update the related **memberOf** attributes.

For details about cleaning up **memberOf** attribute references, see [Section 8.1.4.7, "Synchronizing memberOf Values"](#).

3.1.6.3. The **deleteOldRDN** Parameter

When you rename an entry, the **deleteOldRDN** parameter controls whether the old RDN will be deleted or retained.

deleteOldRDN: 0

The existing RDN is retained as a value in the new entry. The resulting entry contains two **cn** attributes: one with the old and one with the new common name (CN).

For example, the following attributes belong to a group that was renamed from **cn=old_group,dc=example,dc=com** to **cn=new_group,dc=example,dc=com** with the **deleteOldRDN: 0** parameter set.

```
dn: cn=new_group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupOfUniqueNames
cn: old_group
cn: new_group
```

deleteOldRDN: 1

Directory Server deletes the old entry and creates a new entry using the new RDN. The new entry only contains the **cn** attribute of the new entry.

For example, the following group was renamed to **cn=new_group,dc=example,dc=com** with the **deleteOldRDN: 1** parameter set:

```
dn: cn=new_group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupofuniqueNames
cn: new_group
```

3.1.6.4. Renaming an Entry or Subtree

To rename an entry or subtree, use the **changetype: modrdn** operation and set the new RDN in the **newrdn** attribute.

For example, to rename the **cn=old_group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com** entry to **cn=new_group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=old_group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modrdn
newrdn: cn=new_group
deleteOldRDN: 1
```

For details about the **deleteOldRDN**, see [Section 3.1.6.3, "The **deleteOldRDN** Parameter"](#).

3.1.6.5. Moving an Entry to a New Parent

To move an entry to a new parent, use the **changetype: modrdn** operation and set the following to attributes:

newrdn

Sets the RDN of the moved entry. You must set this entry, even if the RDN remains the same.

newSuperior

Sets the DN of the new parent entry.

For example, to move the **uid=user** entry from **ou=Engineering,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** to **ou=Marketing,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: uid=user,ou=Engineering,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modrdn
newrdn: uid=user
newSuperior= ou=Marketing,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
deleteOldRDN: 1
```

For details about the **deleteOldRDN**, see [Section 3.1.6.3, "The **deleteOldRDN** Parameter"](#).

3.1.7. Using Special Characters

When using the command line, enclose characters that have a special meaning to the command-line interpreter, such as space (), asterisk (*), or backslash (\), with quotation marks. Depending on the command-line interpreter, use single or double quotation marks.

For example, to authenticate as the **cn=Directory Manager** user, enclose the user's DN in quotation marks:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

Additionally, if a DN contains a comma in a component, escape it using a backslash. For example, to authenticate as the **uid=user,ou=People,dc=example.com Chicago, IL** user:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=uid=user,ou=People,dc=example.com Chicago\, IL" \
-W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

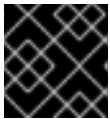
3.1.8. Using Binary Attributes

Certain attributes support binary values, such as the *jpegPhoto* attribute. When you add or update such an attribute, the utility reads the value for the attribute from a file. To add or update such an attribute, you can use the **ldapmodify** utility.

For example, to add the *jpegPhoto* attribute to the **uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry, and read the value for the attribute from the `/home/user_name/photo.jpg` file, enter:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: jpegPhoto
jpegPhoto:< file:///home/user_name/photo.jpg
```



IMPORTANT

Note that there is no space between `:` and `<`.

3.1.9. Updating an Entry in an Internationalized Directory

To use attribute values with languages other than English, associate the attribute's value with a language tag.

When using **ldapmodify** to update an attribute that has a language tag set, you must match the value and language tag exactly or the operation will fail.

For example, to modify an attribute value that has the **lang-fr** language tag set, include the tag in the **modify** operation:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x

dn: uid=user,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
replace: homePostalAddress;lang-fr
homePostalAddress;lang-fr: 34 rue de Seine
```

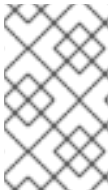
3.2. MANAGING ENTRIES USING THE DIRECTORY CONSOLE

You can use the **Directory** tab and the **Property Editor** on the Directory Server Console to add, modify, or delete entries individually.

To add several entries simultaneously, use the command-line utilities described in [Section 3.1, "Managing Entries Using the Command Line"](#).

- [Section 3.2.1, "Creating a Root Entry"](#)

- [Section 3.2.2, “Creating Directory Entries”](#)
- [Section 3.2.3, “Modifying Directory Entries”](#)
- [Section 3.2.4, “Deleting Directory Entries”](#)



NOTE

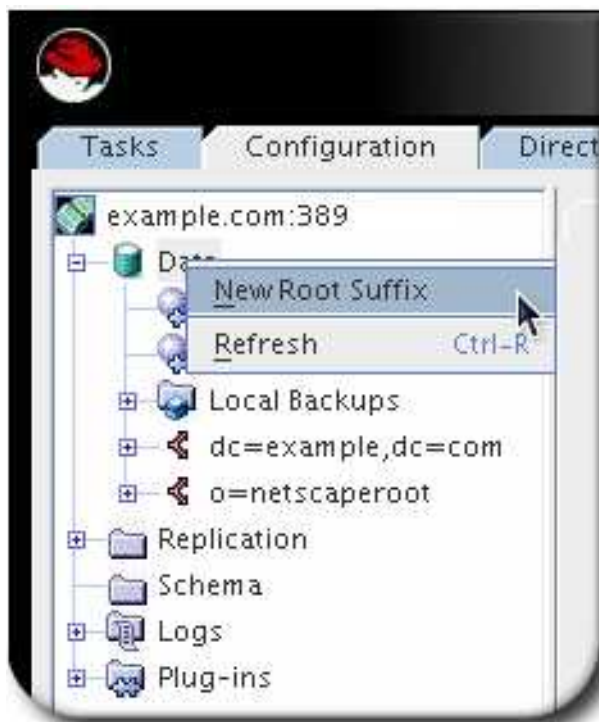
You cannot modify your directory unless the appropriate access control rules have been set. For information on creating access control rules for your directory, see [Chapter 18, *Managing Access Control*](#).

3.2.1. Creating a Root Entry

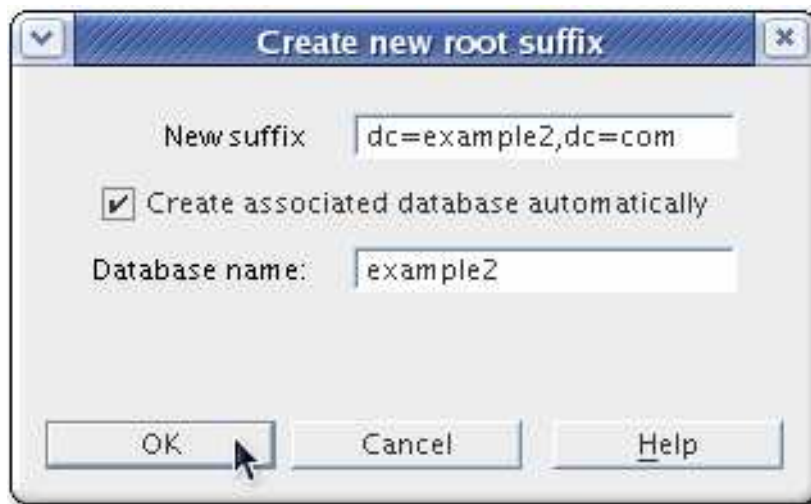
Each time a new database is created, it is associated with the suffix that will be stored in the database. The directory entry representing that suffix is not automatically created.

To create a root entry for a database:

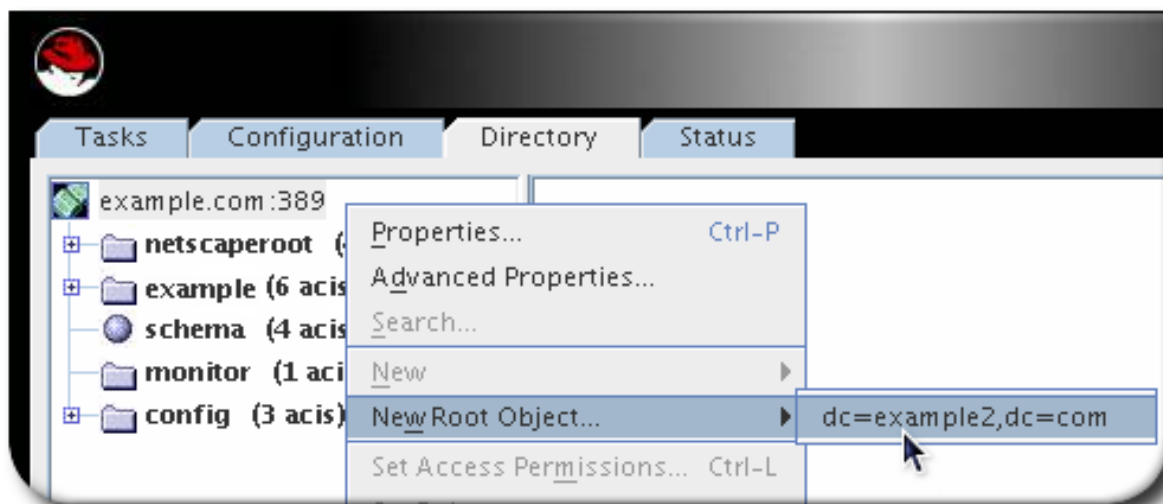
1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Right-click on the **Data** entry in the left menu, and select **New Root Suffix** from the menu.



3. Fill in the new suffix and database information.

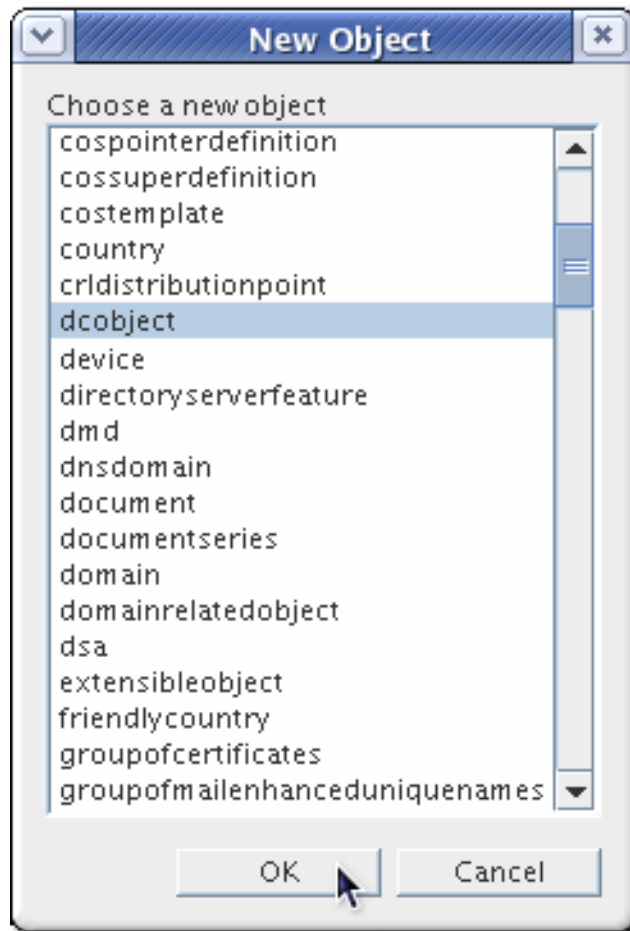


4. In the **Directory** tab, right-click the top object representing the Directory Server, and choose **New Root Object**.



The secondary menu under **New Root Object** displays the new suffixes without a corresponding directory entry. Choose the suffix corresponding to the entry to create.

5. In the **New Object** window, select the object class corresponding to the new entry.



The object class must contain the attribute used to name the suffix. For example, if the entry corresponds to the suffix **ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**, then choose the **organizationalUnit** object class or another object class that allows the **ou** attribute.

6. Click **OK** in the New Object window.

The **Property Editor** for the new entry opens. You can either accept the current values by clicking **OK** or modify the entry, as explained in [Section 3.2.3, "Modifying Directory Entries"](#).

3.2.2. Creating Directory Entries

Directory Server Console offers predefined templates, with preset forms, for new directory entries. [Table 3.1, "Entry Templates and Corresponding Object Classes"](#) shows what type of object class is used for each template.

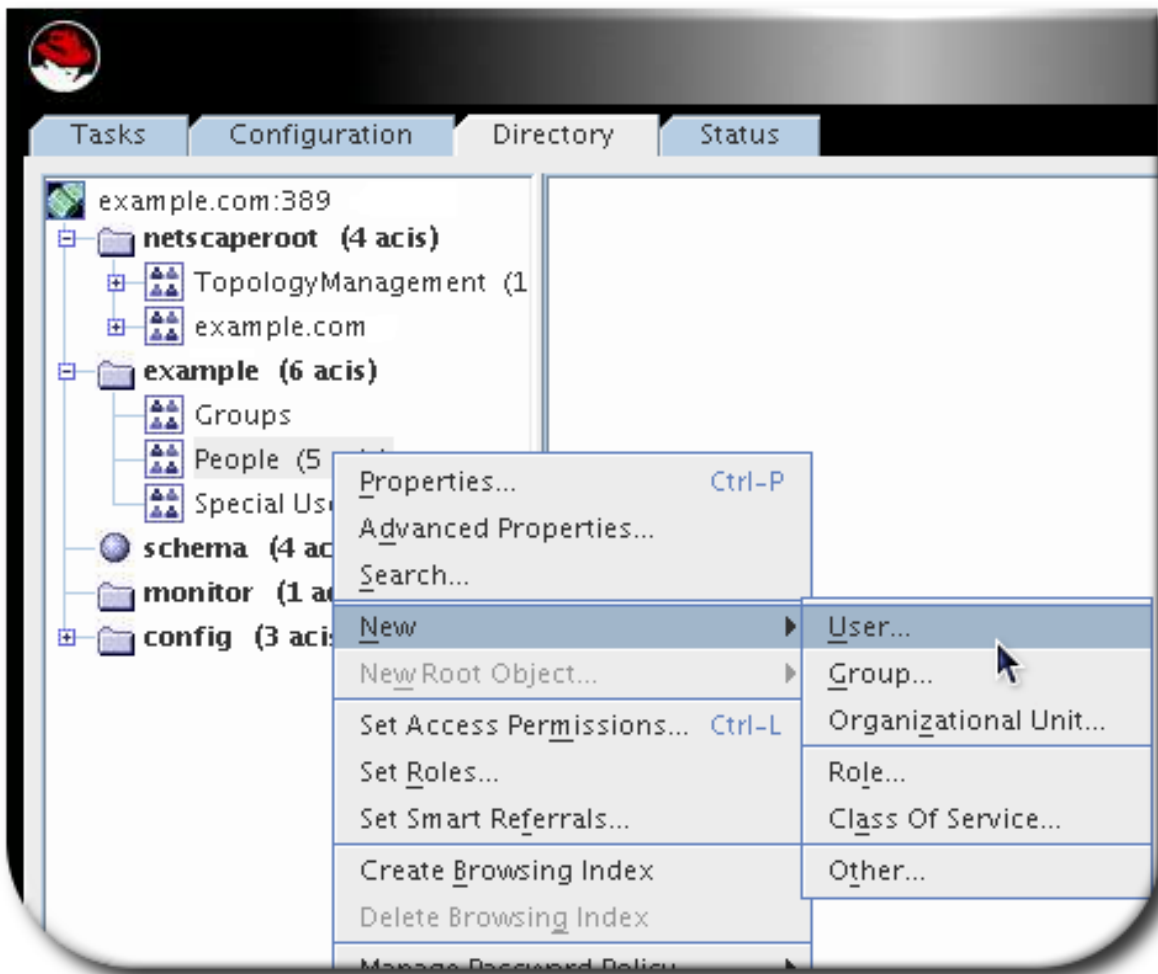
Table 3.1. Entry Templates and Corresponding Object Classes

Template	Object Class
User	inetOrgPerson
Group	groupOfUniqueNames
Organizational Unit	organizationalUnit
Role	nsRoleDefinition

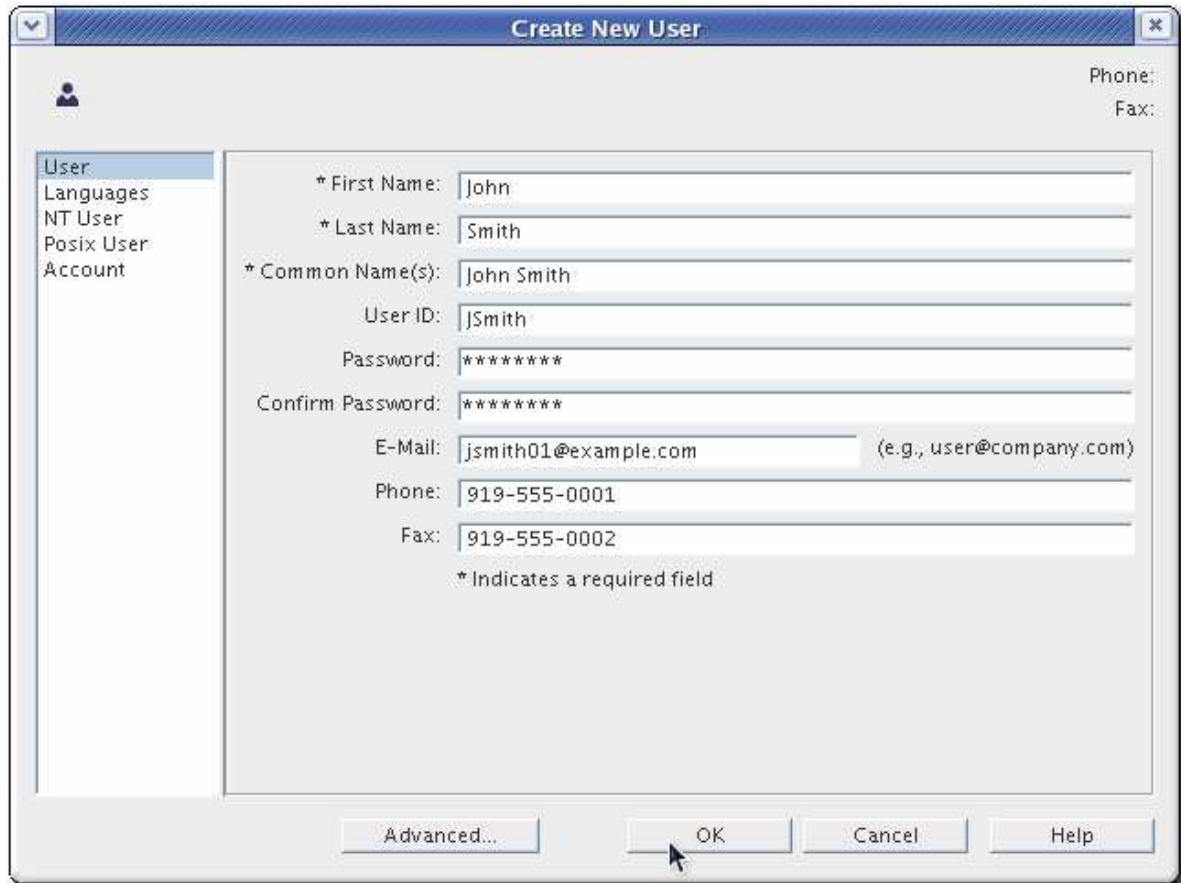
Template	Object Class
Class of Service	cosSuperDefinition

Another type, **Other** allows any kind of entry to be created by allowing users to select the specific object classes and attributes to apply.

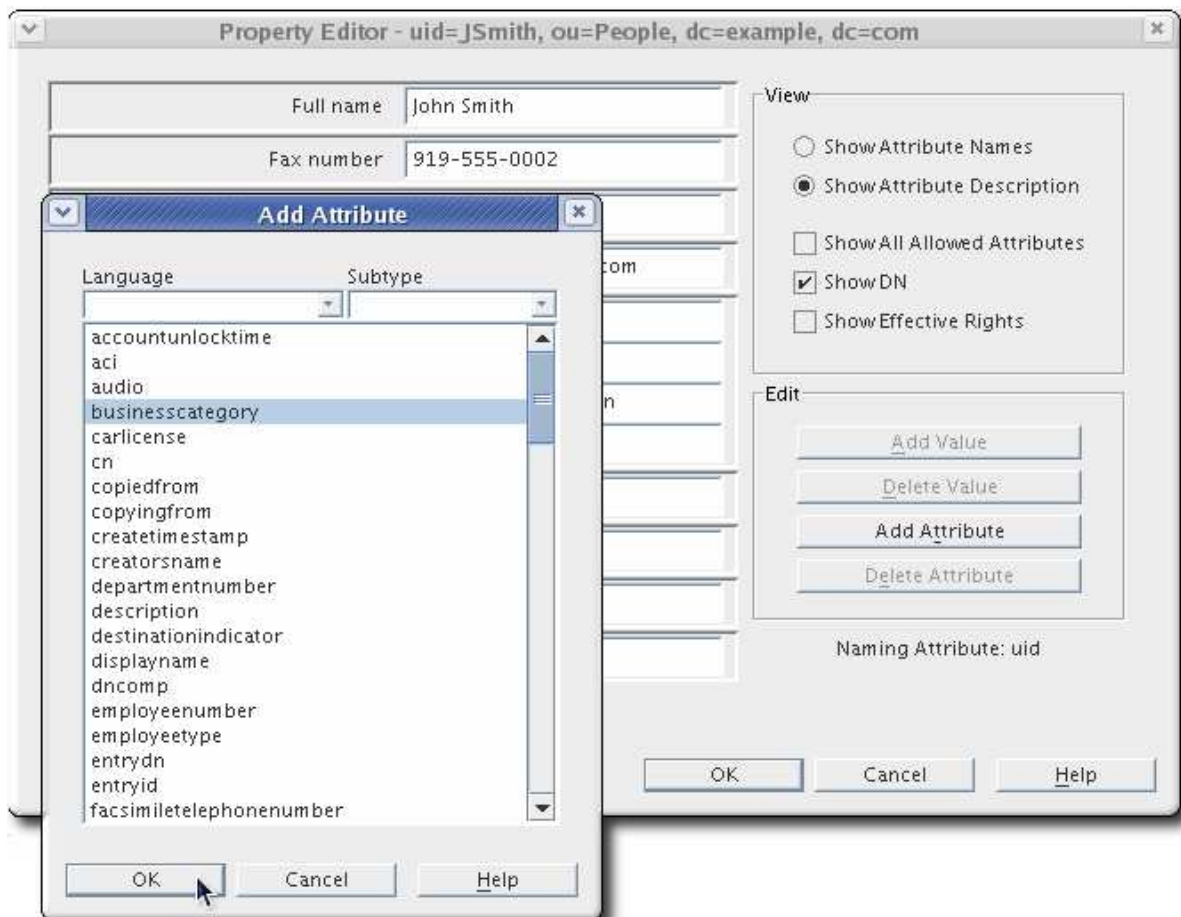
1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. In the left pane, right-click the main entry to add the new entry, and select the type of entry: **User**, **Group**, **Organizational Unit**, **Role**, **Class of Service**, or **Other**.



3. If the new entry type was **Other**, then a list of object classes opens. Select an object class from the list to define the new entry.
4. Supply a value for all the listed attributes. Required attributes are marked with an asterisk (*).

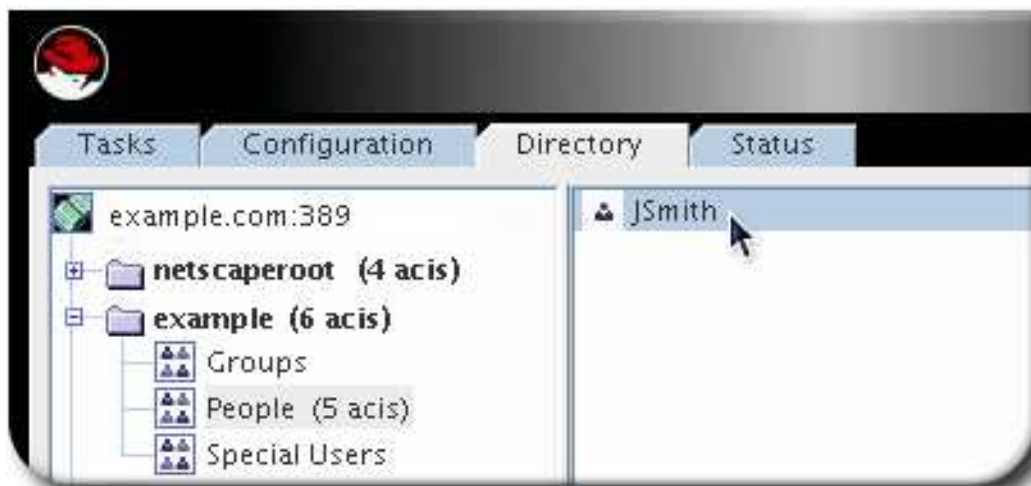


- To display the full list of attributes available for the object class (entry type), click the **Advanced** button.



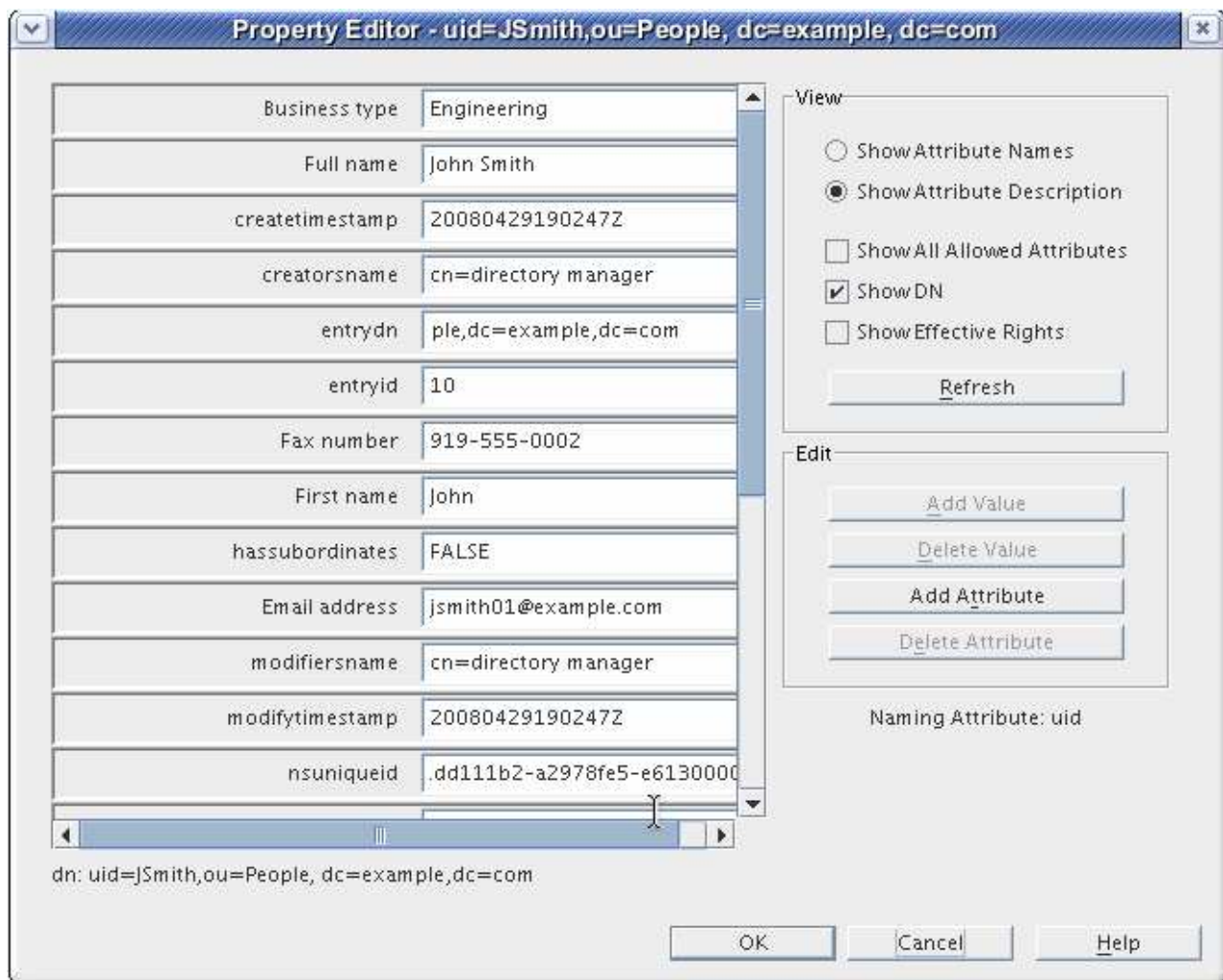
In the **Property Editor**, select any additional attributes, and fill in the attribute values.

- Click **OK** to save the entry. The new entry is listed in the right pane.



3.2.3. Modifying Directory Entries

Modifying directory entries in Directory Server Console uses a dialog window called the **Property Editor**. The **Property Editor** contains the list of object classes and attributes belonging to an entry and can be used to edit the object classes and attributes belonging to that entry by adding and removing object classes, attributes and attribute values, and attribute subtypes.



The **Property Editor** can be opened in several ways:

- From the **Directory** tab, by right-clicking an entry, and selecting **Advanced Properties** from the pop-up menu.
- From the **Directory** tab, by double-clicking an entry and clicking the **Advanced** button
- From the **Create...** new entry forms, by clicking the **Advanced** button
- From the **New Object** window, by clicking **OK**

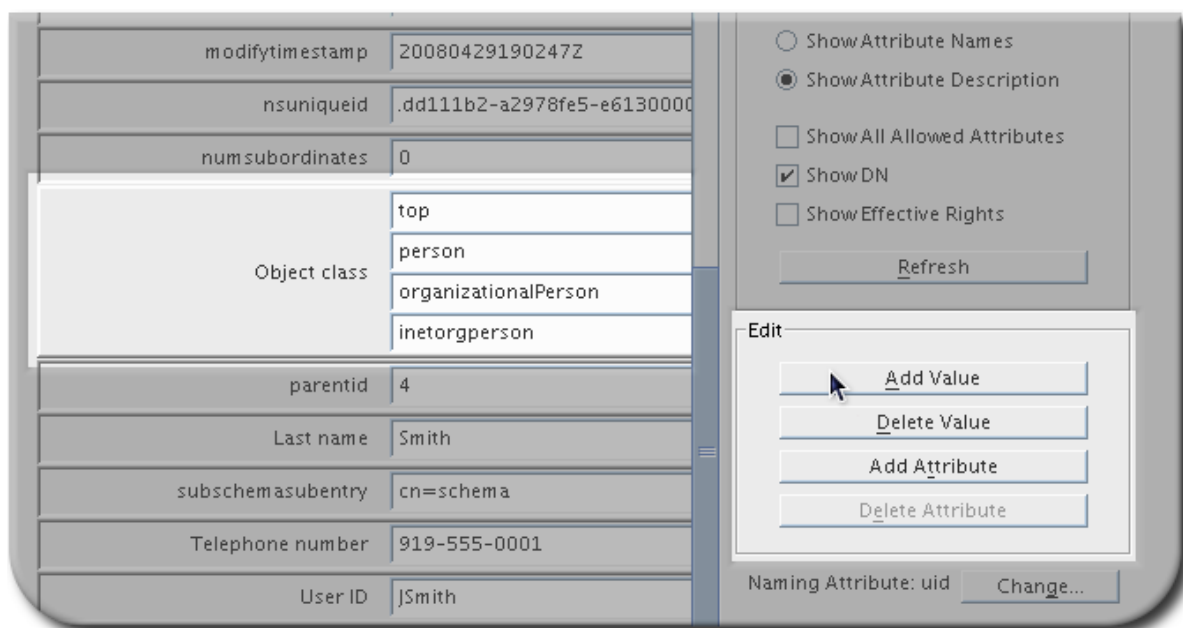
3.2.3.1. Adding or Removing an Object Class to an Entry

To add an object class to an entry:

1. In the **Directory** tab of the Directory Server Console, right-click the entry to modify, and select **Advanced** from the pop-up menu.

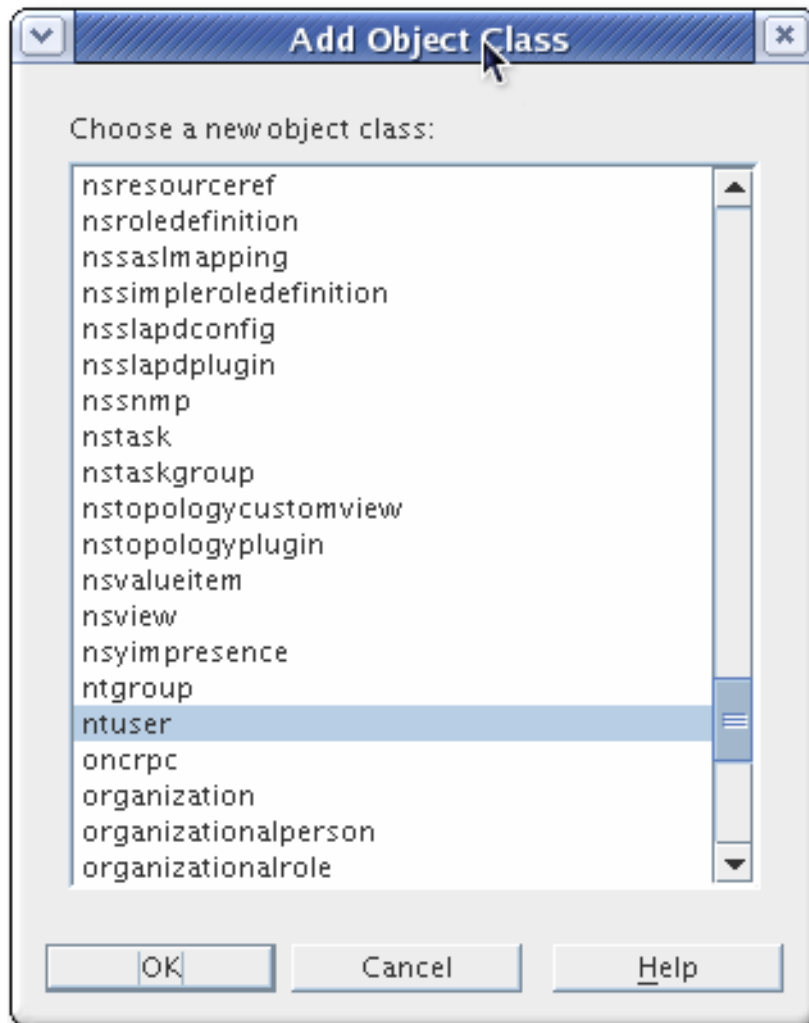


2. Select the object class field, and click **Add Value**.



The **Add Object Class** window opens. It shows a list of object classes that can be added to the entry.

3. Select the object class to add, and click **OK**.



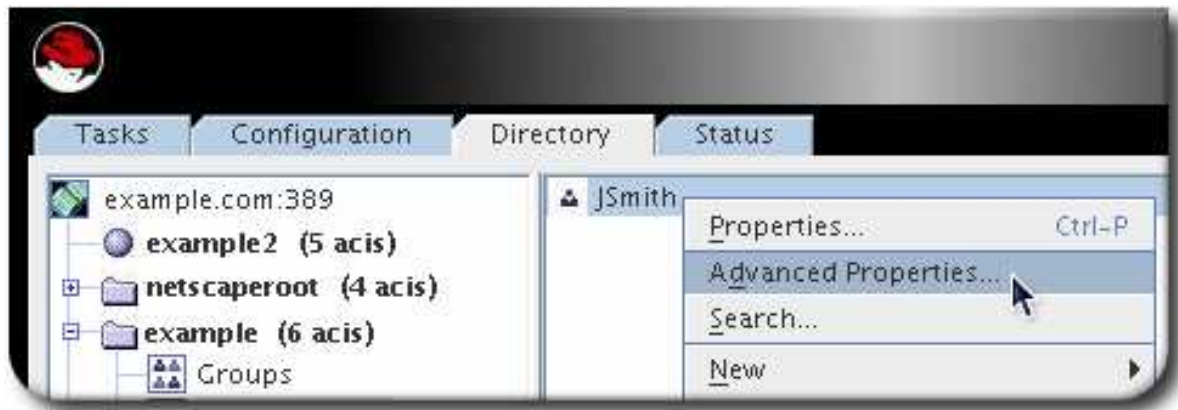
To remove an object class from an entry, click the text box for the object class to remove, and then click **Delete Value**.

3.2.3.2. Adding an Attribute to an Entry

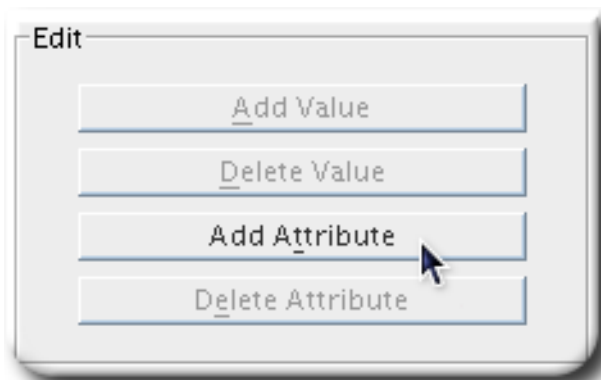
Before you can add an attribute to an entry, the entry must contain an object class that either requires or allows the attribute. See [Section 3.2.3.1, "Adding or Removing an Object Class to an Entry"](#) and [Chapter 12, *Managing the Directory Schema*](#) for more information.

To add an attribute to an entry:

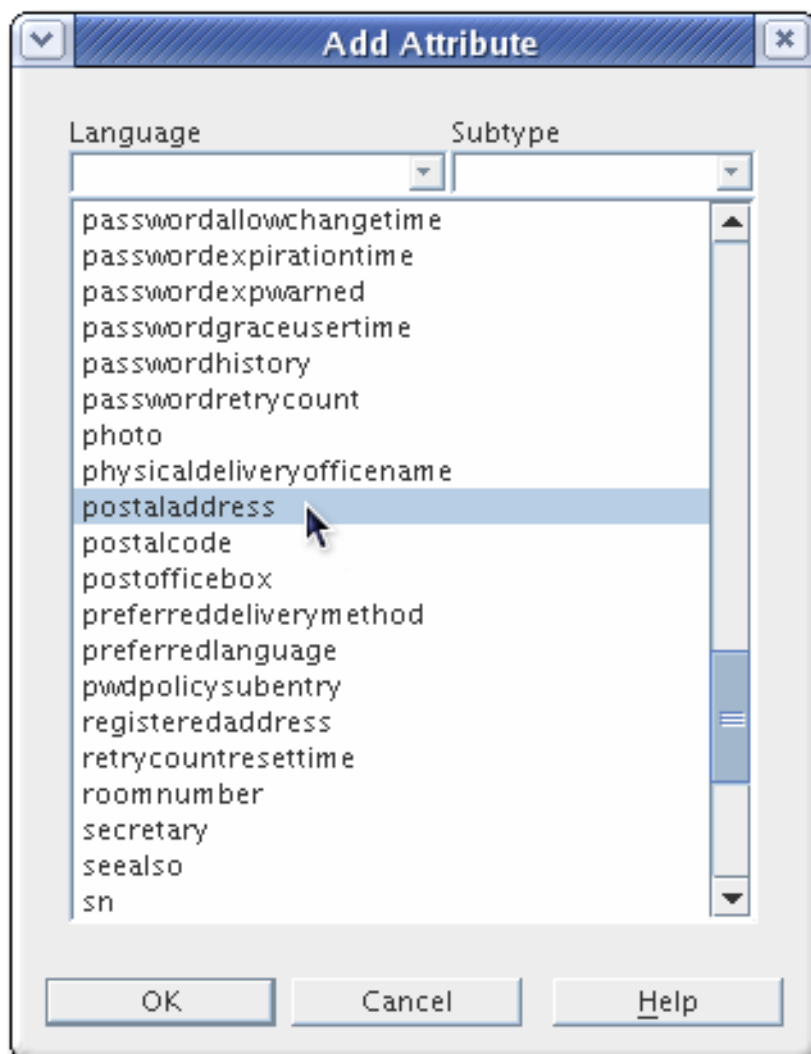
1. In the **Directory** tab of the Directory Server Console, right-click the entry to modify, and select **Advanced** from the pop-up menu.



2. Click **Add Attribute**.



3. Select the attribute to add from the list, and click **OK**.



NOTE

If the attribute you want to add is not listed, add the object class containing the attribute first, then add the attribute. See [Section 3.2.3.1, "Adding or Removing an Object Class to an Entry"](#) for instructions on adding an object class. If you do not know which object class contains the attribute you need, look up the attribute in the *Red Hat Directory Server 10 Configuration, Command, and File Reference*, which lists the object classes which use that attribute.

4. Type in the value for the new attribute in the field to the right of the attribute name.

Last name	Smith
Mailing address	
modifiersname	cn=directory manager

To remove the attribute and all its values from the entry, select **Delete Attribute** from the **Edit** menu.

3.2.3.3. Adding Very Large Attributes

The configuration attribute *nsslapd-maxbersize* sets the maximum size limit for LDAP requests. The default configuration of Directory Server sets this attribute at 2 megabytes. LDAP add or modify operations will fail when attempting to add very large attributes that result in a request that is larger than 2 megabytes. However, the limit is not applied to replication processes.

To add very large attributes, first change the setting for the *nsslapd-maxbersize* configuration attribute to a value larger than the largest LDAP request you will make.

When determining the value to set, consider *all* elements of the LDAP add and modify operations used to add the attributes, not just the single attribute. There are a number of different factors to consider, including the following:

- The size of each attribute name in the request
- The size of the values of each of the attributes in the request
- The size of the DN in the request
- Some overhead, usually 10 kilobytes

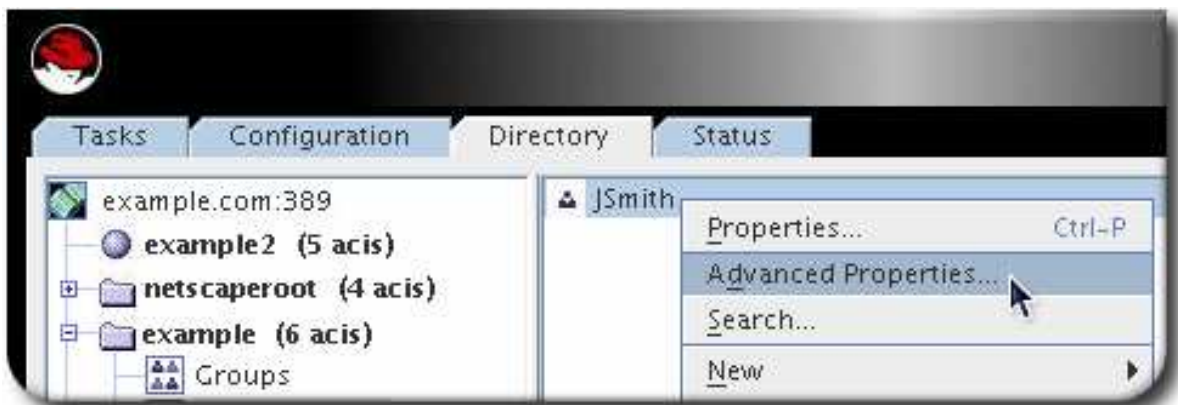
One common issue that requires increasing the *nsslapd-maxbersize* setting is using attributes which hold CRL values, such as *certificateRevocationList*, *authorityRevocationList*, and *deltaRevocationList*.

For further information about the *nsslapd-maxbersize* attribute, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

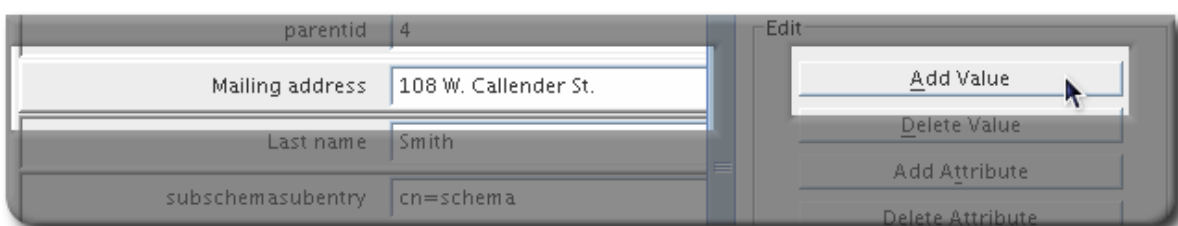
3.2.3.4. Adding Attribute Values

Multi-valued attributes allow multiple value for one attribute to be added to an entry.

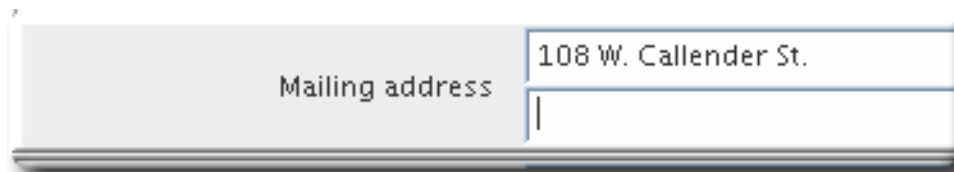
1. In the **Directory** tab of the Directory Server Console, right-click the entry to modify, and select **Advanced** from the pop-up menu.



2. Select the attribute to which to add a value, and then click **Add Value**.



3. Type in the new attribute value.



A screenshot of a user interface element. It features a light gray rectangular box with rounded corners. On the left side of this box, the text 'Mailing address' is displayed in a dark gray font. To the right of this text is a white rectangular text input field with a thin blue border. Inside this input field, the text '108 W. Callender St.' is entered. Below the input field, there is a thin horizontal line, and below that, a thin vertical line, suggesting a table-like structure or a list of values.

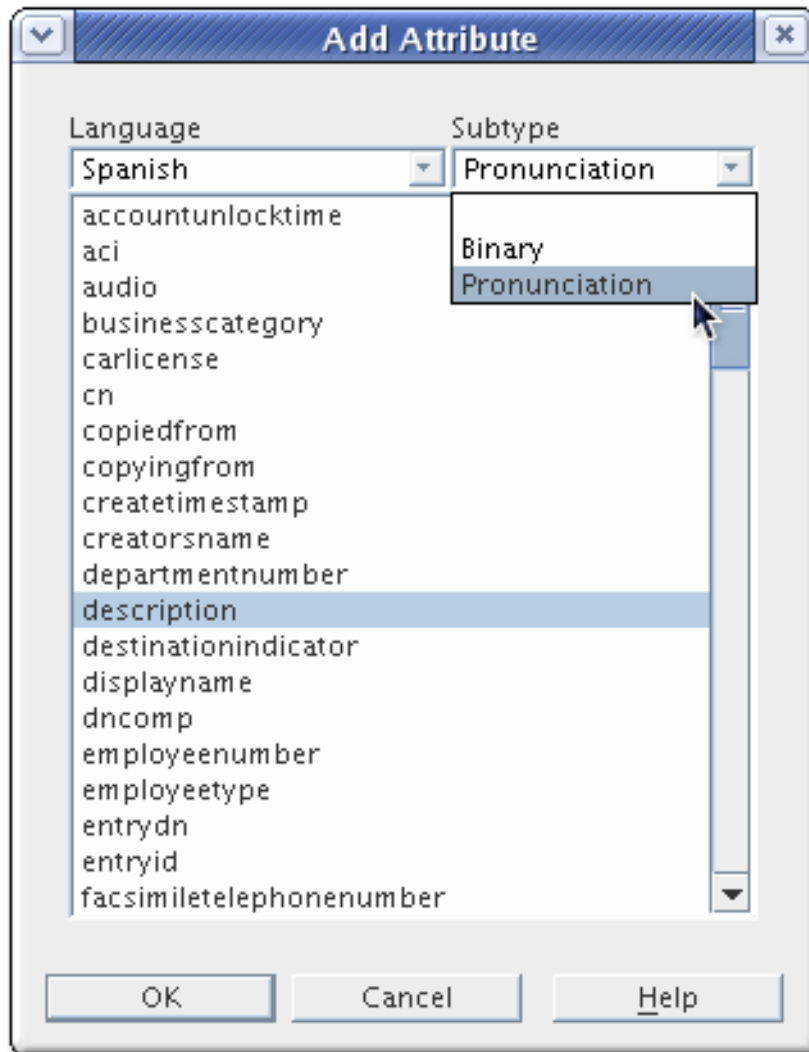
To remove an attribute value from an entry, click the text box of the attribute value to remove, and click **Delete Value**.

3.2.3.5. Adding an Attribute Subtype

A subtype allows the same entry value to be represented in different ways, such as providing a foreign-character set version. There are three different kinds of subtypes to attributes which can be added to an entry: language, binary, and pronunciation.

To add a subtype to an entry:

1. In the **Directory** tab of the Directory Server Console, right-click the entry to modify, and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
2. Click **Add Attribute**, and select the attribute to add from the list.
3. Add a language subtype by selecting a value from the **Language** drop-down list. Add either a binary or pronunciation subtype by selecting a value from the **Subtype** drop-down list.



Language Subtype

Sometimes a user's name can be more accurately represented in characters of a language other than the default language. For example, a user, Noriko, has a name in Japanese and prefers that her name be represented by Japanese characters when possible. You can select Japanese as a language subtype for the **givenname** attribute so that other users can search for her name in Japanese as well as English. For example:

```
givenname;lang-ja
```

To specify a language subtype for an attribute, add the subtype to the attribute name as follows:

```
attribute;lang-subtype:attribute value
```

attribute is the attribute being added to the entry and *subtype* is the two character abbreviation for the language. The supported language subtypes are listed in [Table D.1, "Supported Language Subtypes"](#).

Only one language subtype can be added per attribute *instance* in an entry. To assign multiple language subtypes, add another attribute instance to the entry, and then assign the new language subtype. For example, the following is illegal:

```
cn;lang-ja;lang-en-GB:value
```

Instead, use:

```
cn;lang-ja:ja-value  
cn;lang-en-GB:value
```

Binary Subtype

Assigning the binary subtype to an attribute indicates that the attribute value is binary, such as user certificates (**usercertificate;binary**).

Although you can store binary data within an attribute that does not contain the **binary** subtype (for example, **jpegphoto**), the **binary** subtype indicates to clients that multiple variants of the attribute type may exist.

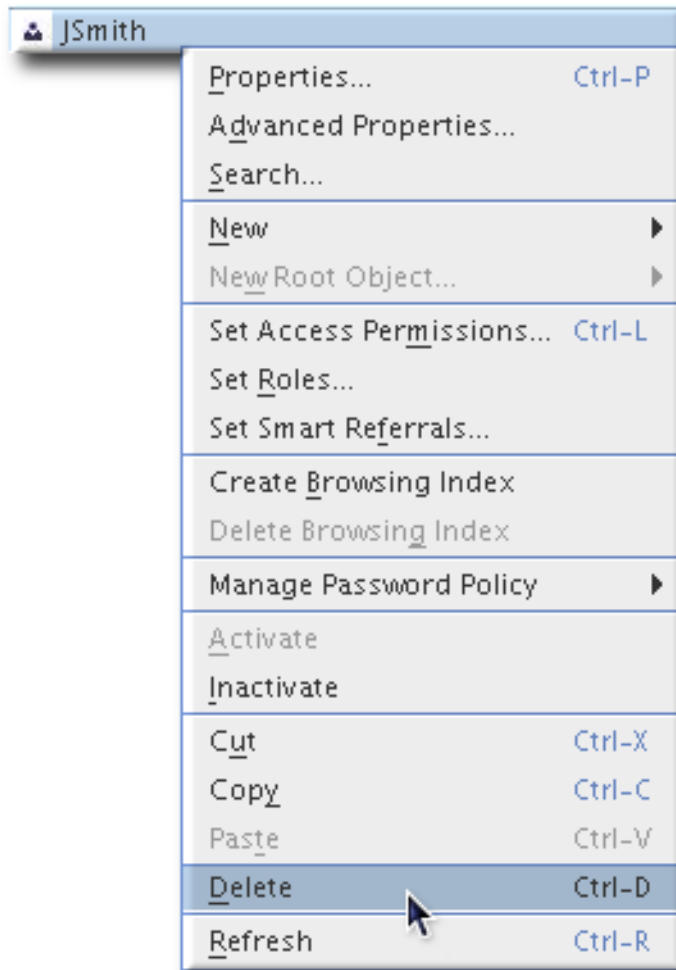
Pronunciation Subtype

Assigning the pronunciation subtype to an attribute indicates that the attribute value is a phonetic representation. The subtype is added to the attribute name as *attribute*;**phonetic**. This subtype is commonly used in combination with a language subtype for languages that have more than one alphabet, where one is a phonetic representation.

This subtype is useful with attributes that are expected to contain user names, such as **cn** or **givenname**. For example, **givenname;lang-ja;phonetic** indicates that the attribute value is the phonetic version of the user's Japanese name.

3.2.4. Deleting Directory Entries

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Right-click the entry to delete, and select **Delete** from the right-click menu.

**WARNING**

The server deletes the entry or entries immediately. There is no way to undo the delete operation.

CHAPTER 4. TRACKING MODIFICATIONS TO DIRECTORY ENTRIES

It can be useful to track when changes are made to entries. There are two aspects of entry modifications that the Directory Server tracks:

- Using change sequence numbers to track changes to the database. This is similar to change sequence numbers used in replication and synchronization. Every normal directory operation triggers a sequence number.
- Assigning creation and modification information. These attributes record the names of the user who created and most recently modified an entry, as well as the timestamps of when it was created and modified.



NOTE

The entry USN, modify time and name, and create time and name are all operational attributes and are not returned in a regular **ldapsearch**. For details on running a search for operational attributes, see [Section 14.5.7, “Searching for Operational Attributes”](#).

4.1. TRACKING MODIFICATIONS TO THE DATABASE THROUGH UPDATE SEQUENCE NUMBERS

The USN Plug-in provides a way for LDAP clients to know that something – anything – in the database has changed.

4.1.1. An Overview of the Entry Sequence Numbers

When the USN Plug-in is enabled, update sequence numbers (USNs) are sequential numbers that are assigned to an entry whenever a write operation is performed against the entry. (Write operations include add, modify, modrdn, and delete operations. Internal database operations, like export operations, are not counted in the update sequence.) A USN counter keeps track of the most recently assigned USN.

4.1.1.1. Local and Global USNs

The USN is evaluated globally, for the entire database, not for the single entry. The USN is similar to the change sequence number for replication and synchronization, in that it simply ticks upward to track any changes in the database or directory. However, the entry USN is maintained separately from the CSNs, and USNs are not replicated.

The entry shows the change number for the last modification to that entry in the **entryUSN** operational attribute. (For details on running a search for operational attributes, see [Section 14.5.7, “Searching for Operational Attributes”](#).)

Example 4.1. Example Entry USN

```
dn: uid=jsmith,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
mail: jsmith@example.com
uid: jsmith
givenName: John
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
```

```
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: inetorgperson
sn: Smith
cn: John Smith
userPassword: {SSHA}EfhKCI4iKI/ipZMsWIITQatz7v2lUnptxwZ/pw==
entryusn: 1122
```

The USN Plug-in has two modes, local mode and global mode:

- In local mode, each back end database has an instance of the USN Plug-in with a USN counter specific to that back end database. This is the default setting.
- In global mode, there is a global instance of the USN Plug-in with a global USN counter that applies to changes made to the entire directory.

When the USN Plug-in is set to local mode, results are limited to the local back end database. When the USN Plug-in is set to global mode, the returned results are for the entire directory.

The root DSE shows the most recent USN assigned to any entry in the database in the ***lastusn*** attribute. When the USN Plug-in is set to local mode, so each database has its own local USN counter, the ***lastUSN*** shows both the database which assigned the USN and the USN:

```
lastusn;database_name:USN
```

For example:

```
lastusn;example1: 2130
lastusn;example2: 2070
```

In global mode, when the database uses a shared USN counter, the ***lastUSN*** attribute shows the latest USN only:

```
lastusn: 4200
```

4.1.1.2. Importing USN Entries

When entries are imported, the USN Plug-in uses the ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** attribute to check if the entry has an assigned USN. If the value of ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** is numerical, the imported entry will use this numerical value as the entry's USN. If the value of ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** is not numerical, the USN Plug-in will use the value of the ***lastUSN*** attribute and increment it by one as the USN for the imported entry.

4.1.2. Configuring the USN Plug-in

The USN Plug-in must be enabled for USNs to be recorded on entries, as described in [Section 1.9.2.2, "Enabling Plug-ins in the Directory Server Console"](#). The plug-in can be enabled through the Directory Server Console or through the command line. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: cn=USN,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
```

```
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

Then restart the server to apply the changes.

4.1.3. Enabling Global USN

With the default settings, Directory Server uses unique update sequence numbers (USN) for each back end database. To enable unique USNs across all back end databases:

1. Enable the **USN** plug-in. See [Section 4.1.2, "Configuring the USN Plug-in"](#).
2. Set the ***nsslapd-entryusn-global*** parameter to **on**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-entryusn-global
nsslapd-entryusn-global: on
```

4.1.4. Cleaning up USN Tombstone Entries

The USN Plug-in moves entries to tombstone entries when the entry is deleted. If replication is enabled, then separate tombstone entries are kept by both the USN and Replication Plug-ins. Both tombstone entries are deleted by the replication process, but for server performance, it can be beneficial to delete the USN tombstones before converting a server to a replica or to free memory for the server.

The ***usn-tombstone-cleanup.pl*** command deletes USN tombstone entries for a specific database back end or specific suffix. Optionally, it can delete all of tombstone entries up to a certain USN. For example:

```
# /usr/lib64/dirsrv/instance/usn-tombstone-cleanup.pl -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w secret -s
"ou=people,dc=example,dc=com" -m 1100
```

Either the back end must be specified using the **-n** option or the suffix, using the **-s** option. If both are given, then the suffix in the **-s** option is used.

The options for ***usn-tombstone-cleanup.pl*** command are listed in [Table 4.1, "usn-tombstone-cleanup.pl Options"](#). More details for this tool are in the *Configuration, Command, and File Reference*.

Table 4.1. usn-tombstone-cleanup.pl Options

Option	Description
-D <i>rootdn</i>	Gives the user DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager. The default is the DN of the Directory Manager, which is read from the <i>nsslapd-root</i> attribute under cn=config .
-m <i>maximum_USN</i>	Sets the upper bound for entries to delete. All tombstone entries with an entryUSN value up to the specified maximum (inclusive) are deleted, but not past that USN value. If no maximum USN value is set, then all back end tombstone entries are deleted.
-n <i>backendInstance</i>	Gives the name of the database containing the entries to clean (delete).

Option	Description
<code>-s suffix</code>	Gives the name of the suffix containing the entries to clean (delete).
<code>-w password</code>	The password associated with the user DN.

4.2. TRACKING ENTRY MODIFICATIONS THROUGH OPERATIONAL ATTRIBUTES

Using the default settings, Directory Server tracks the following operational attributes for every entry:

- **creatorsName**: The distinguished name (DN) of the user who initially created the entry.
- **createTimestamp**: The times stamp in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) format when the entry was created.
- **modifiersName**: The distinguished name of the user who last modified the entry.
- **modifyTimestamp**: The time stamp in the GMT format for when the entry was last modified.

Note that operational attributes are not returned in default searches. You must explicitly request these attributes in queries. For details, see [Section 14.5.7, "Searching for Operational Attributes"](#).



IMPORTANT

Red Hat recommends not disabling tracking these operational attributes. If disabled, entries do not get a unique ID assigned in the **nsUniqueID** attribute and replication does not work.

4.2.1. Entries Modified or Created by a Database Link

When an entry is created or modified over a database link, the **creatorsName** and **modifiersName** attributes contain the name of the user who is granted proxy authorization rights on the remote server. In this case, the attributes do not display the original creator or latest modifier of the entry. However, the access logs show both the proxy user (**dn**) and the original user (**authzid**). For example:

```
[23/May/2011:18:13:56.145747965 +051800] conn=1175 op=0 BIND dn="cn=proxy
admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com" method=128 version=3
[23/May/2011:18:13:56.575439751 +051800] conn=1175 op=0 RESULT err=0 tag=97 nentries=0
etime=0 dn="cn=proxy admin,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com"
[23/May/2011:18:13:56.744359706 +051800] conn=1175 op=1 SRCH base="dc=example,dc=com"
scope=2 filter="(objectClass=*)" attrs=ALL
authzid="uid=user_name,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

For further details about proxy authorization, see [Section 2.3.1.2.2, "Providing Bind Credentials"](#).

4.2.2. How to Enable Tracking Of Modifications Using the Command Line

Modification tracking is enabled by default, and Red Hat recommends not disabling this feature. To re-enable tracking of entry modifications using the command line:

1. Set the **nsslapd-lastmod** to **on**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

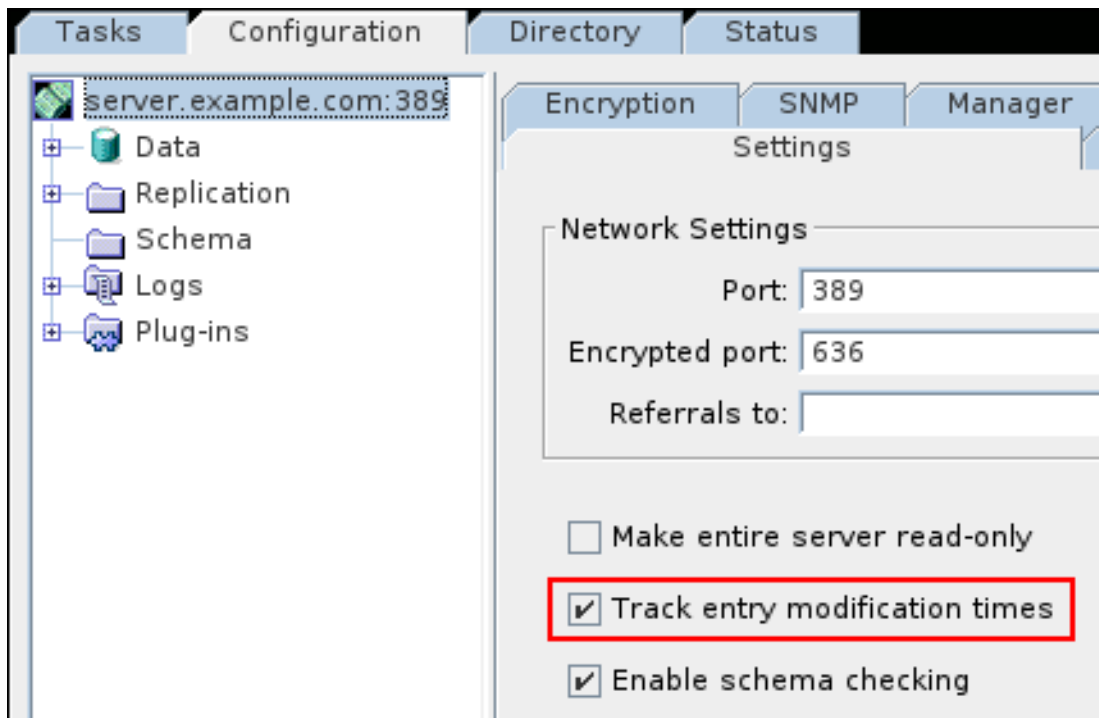
```
dn: cn=config
nsslapd-lastmod: on
```

2. Optionally, to regenerate the missing *nsUniqueId* attributes:
 - a. Export the database to an LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) file. See [Section 6.2.3, "Exporting a Database to LDIF Using the Command Line"](#).
 - b. Import the database from the LDIF file. See [Section 6.1.4, "Importing from the Command Line"](#).

4.2.3. How to Enable Tracking Of Modifications Using the Console

Modification tracking is enabled by default, and Red Hat recommends not disabling this feature. To re-enable tracking of entry modifications using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console. See [Section 1.3.1, "Opening the Directory Server Console"](#).
2. On the **Configuration** tab, select the server name.
3. On the **Settings** tab, select the **Track Entry Modification Times** check box.



4. Optionally, to regenerate the missing *nsUniqueId* attributes:
 - a. Export the database to an LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) file. See [Section 6.2.3, "Exporting a Database to LDIF Using the Command Line"](#).
 - b. Import the database from the LDIF file. See [Section 6.1.4, "Importing from the Command Line"](#).

4.3. TRACKING THE BIND DN FOR PLUG-IN INITIATED UPDATES

One change to an entry can trigger other, automatic changes across the directory tree. When a user is deleted, for example, that user is automatically removed from any groups it belonged to by the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in.

The initial action is shown in the entry as being performed by whatever user account is bound to the server, but all related updates (by default) are shown as being performed by the plug-in, with no information about which user initiated that update. For example, using the MemberOf Plug-in to update user entries with group membership, the update to the group account is shown as being performed by the bound user, while the edit to the user entry is shown as being performed by the MemberOf Plug-in:

```
dn: cn=my_group,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
modifiersname: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

```
dn: uid=bjensen,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
modifiersname: cn=memberOf plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

The **nsslapd-plugin-binddn-tracking** attribute allows the server to track which user originated an update operation, as well as the internal plug-in which actually performed it. The bound user is shown in the **modifiersname** and **creatorsname** operational attributes, while the plug-in which performed it is shown in the **internalModifiersname** and **internalCreatorsname** operational attributes. For example:

```
dn: uid=bjensen,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
modifiersname: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
internalModifiersname: cn=memberOf plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

The **nsslapd-plugin-binddn-tracking** attribute tracks and maintains the relationship between the bound user and any updates performed for that connection.



NOTE

The **internalModifiersname** and **internalCreatorsname** attributes always show a plug-in as the identity. This plug-in could be an additional plug-in, such as the MemberOf Plug-in. If the change is made by the core Directory Server, then the plug-in is the database plug-in, **cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config**.

The **nsslapd-plugin-binddn-tracking** attribute is disabled by default. To allow the server to track operations based on bind DN, enable that attribute using **ldapmodify**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-plugin-binddn-tracking
nsslapd-plugin-binddn-tracking: on
```

4.4. TRACKING PASSWORD CHANGE TIMES

Password change operations are normally treated as any other modification to an entry, so the update time is recorded in the **lastModified** operational attribute. However, there can be times when the time of the last password change needs to be recorded separately, to make it easier to update passwords in Active Directory synchronization or to connect with other LDAP clients.

The **passwordTrackUpdateTime** attribute within the password policy tells the server to record a

timestamp for the last time that the password was updated for an entry. The password change time itself is stored as an operational attribute on the user entry, ***pwdUpdateTime*** (which is separate from the ***modifyTimestamp*** or ***lastModified*** operational attributes).

The ***passwordTrackUpdateTime*** attribute can be set as part of the global password policy or on a subtree or user-level policy, depending on what clients need to access the password change time. Setting password policies is described in [Section 19.4, "Managing the Password Policy"](#).

CHAPTER 5. MAINTAINING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY

Referential Integrity is a database mechanism that ensures relationships between related entries are maintained. In the Directory Server, the Referential Integrity can be used to ensure that an update to one entry in the directory is correctly reflected in any other entries that reference to the updated entry.

For example, if a user's entry is removed from the directory and Referential Integrity is enabled, the server also removes the user from any groups of which the user is a member. If Referential Integrity is not enabled, the user remains a member of the group until manually removed by the administrator. This is an important feature if you are integrating the Directory Server with other products that rely on the directory for user and group management.

5.1. HOW REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY WORKS

When the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in is enabled, it performs integrity updates on specified attributes immediately after a delete or rename operation. By default, the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in is disabled.



NOTE

Enable the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in only on one supplier replica in a multi-master replication environment, because the operations generated by the plug-in will be replicated. If you enable the plug-in on multiple masters, the servers have to manage and reapply already performed operations.

When a user or group entry is deleted, updated, renamed, or moved within the directory, the operation is logged to the Referential Integrity log file. For the distinguished names (DN) in the log file, Directory Server searches and updates in intervals the attributes set in the plug-in configuration:

- For entries, marked in the log file as deleted, the corresponding attribute in the directory is deleted.
- For entries, marked in the log file as updated, the corresponding attribute in the directory is updated.
- For entries, marked in the log file as renamed or moved, the value of the corresponding attribute in the directory is renamed.

By default, when the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in is enabled, it performs integrity updates on the **member**, **uniquemember**, **owner**, and **seeAlso** attributes immediately after a delete or rename operation. However, the behavior of the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in can be configured to suit the needs of the directory in several different ways:

- Record Referential Integrity updates in the replication change log.
- Modify the update interval.
- Select the attributes to which to apply Referential Integrity.
- Disable Referential Integrity.

All attributes used in referential integrity *must* be indexed for presence and equality; not indexing those attributes results poor server performance for modify and delete operations.

```
nsIndexType: pres
nsIndexType: eq
nsIndexType: sub
```

See [Section 13.2, “Creating Standard Indexes”](#) for more information about checking and creating indexes.

5.2. USING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY WITH REPLICATION

There are certain limitations when using the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in in a replication environment:

- Never enable it on a dedicated consumer server (a server that contains only read-only replicas).
- Never enable it on a server that contains a combination of read-write and read-only replicas.
- It is possible to enable it on a supplier server that contains only read-write replicas.
- With multi-master replication, enable the plug-in on just one supplier.

If the replication environment satisfies the all of those condition, you can enable the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in.

1. Enable the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in as described in [Section 5.3, “Enabling and Disabling Referential Integrity”](#).
2. Configure the plug-in to record any integrity updates in the changelog.
3. Ensure that the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in is disabled on all consumer servers.



NOTE

Because the supplier server sends any changes made by the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** Integrity plug-in to consumer servers, it is unnecessary to run the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in on consumer servers.

5.3. ENABLING AND DISABLING REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY

5.3.1. Enabling and Disabling Referential Integrity from the Command Line

To enable or disable the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in, set the ***nsslapd-pluginEnabled*** parameter in the plug-in's configuration entry:

For example, to enable the plug-in:

1. Set the ***nsslapd-pluginEnabled*** parameter to **on**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

- Restart the instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

5.3.2. Enabling and Disabling Referential Integrity in the Console

To enable the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in, follow the procedure in [Section 1.9.2.2, "Enabling Plug-ins in the Directory Server Console"](#).

5.4. MODIFYING THE UPDATE INTERVAL

By default, the server performs Referential Integrity updates immediately after a **delete** or a **modrdn** operation. Depending on the amount of operations, this can cause a performance impact. To reduce the performance impact, you can increase the amount of time between updates.

Set the interval in seconds. Alternatively, you can set the following values:

- **0**: The check for referential integrity is performed immediately.
- **-1**: No check for referential integrity is performed.



IMPORTANT

If you set the update interval to **0**, you can only enable the plug-in on all masters in a multi-master replication environment if you also set their **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in's update interval to **0**. However, if you configure a positive value on one master, you must not enable the plug-in on any other master to prevent replication loops and directory inconsistencies.

If you want to enable the plug-in in a multi-master replication environment, Red Hat recommends setting the update interval to **0** and to enable the plug-in on all masters.

5.4.1. Modifying the Update Interval Using the Command Line

To set the update interval using the command line to, for example, to update immediately:

- Set the interval in seconds in the **referint-update-delay** parameter:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: cn=referential integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: referint-update-delay
referint-update-delay: 0
```

- Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

Referential Integrity can only be enabled on one master. If you set the interval to **0**, Directory Server cleans up references replicates these changes to all consumers immediately. If you set the interval to a value greater than **0**, and the master who has **Referential Integrity** enabled is offline, the references are not cleaned up before this master is up again.

5.4.2. Modifying the Update Interval using the Console

To set the update interval using the Console:

1. Open the **Property Editor** in the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in's configuration. For details, see [Section 1.9.3.2, "Configuring Plug-ins using the Console"](#).
2. Set the interval in seconds in the ***referint-update-delay*** parameter.
3. Restart the Directory Server instance. See [Section 1.4.2, "Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Console"](#).

5.5. MODIFYING THE ATTRIBUTE LIST

By default, the Referential Integrity plug-in is set up to check for and update the ***member***, ***uniquemember***, ***owner***, and ***seeAlso*** attributes. You can add or delete attributes to be updated using the command line or the Console.



NOTE

Attributes set in the **Referential Integrity** plug-in's parameter list, must have equality indexing on all databases. Otherwise, the plug-in scans every entry of the database for matching the deleted or modified DN. This can have a significant performance impact. For details about checking and creating indexes, see [Section 13.2, "Creating Standard Indexes"](#).

5.5.1. Modifying the Attribute List Using the Console

1. Open the **Property Editor** in the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in's configuration. For details, see [Section 1.9.3.2, "Configuring Plug-ins using the Console"](#).
2. Update the attributes in the ***referint-membership-attr*** attribute.

You can add additional values or delete existing ones using the **Add Value** and **Delete Value** buttons.

3. Restart the Directory Server instance. See [Section 1.4.2, "Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Console"](#).

5.5.2. Configuring the Attribute List from the Command Line

1. Update the attribute list:
 - To add an additional attribute that should be checked and updated by the plug-in:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: cn=referential integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config
add: referint-membership-attr
referint-membership-attr: attribute_name
```

- To delete an attribute that should no longer be checked and updated by the plug-in:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
```

```
dn: cn=referential integrity postoperation,cn=plugins,cn=config
delete: referint-membership-attr
referint-membership-attr: attribute_name
```

- Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

5.6. CONFIGURING SCOPE FOR THE REFERENTIAL INTEGRITY

If an entry is deleted, the references to it are deleted or modified to reflect the change. When this update is applied to all entries and all groups, it can impact performance and prevents flexibility of restricting the referential integrity to selected subtrees. Defining a *scope* addresses this problem.

For example, there may be one suffix, **dc=example,dc=com**, containing two subtrees: **ou=active users,dc=example,dc=com** and **ou=deleted users,dc=example,dc=com**. Entries in **deleted users** should not be handled for purposes of referential integrity.

The following three attributes can be used to define the scope in the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in configuration.

The **nsslapd-pluginEntryScope** attribute

This multi-value attribute controls the scope of the entry that is deleted or renamed. It defines the subtree in which the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in looks for the delete or rename operations of a user entry. If a user is deleted or renamed that does not exist under the defined subtree, the plug-in ignores the operation. The attribute allows you to specify to which branches of the database the plug-in should apply the operation.

```
nsslapd-pluginEntryScope: dn
```

The **nsslapd-pluginExcludeEntryScope** attribute

This attribute also controls the scope of the entry that is deleted or renamed. It defines the subtree in which the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in ignores any operations for deleting or renaming a user.

```
nsslapd-pluginExcludeEntryScope: dn
```

The **nsslapd-pluginContainerScope** attribute

This attribute controls the scope of groups in which references are updated. After a user is deleted, the **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in looks for the groups to which the user belongs and updates them accordingly. This attribute specifies which branch the plug-in searches for the groups to which the user belongs. The **Referential Integrity Postoperation** plug-in only updates groups that are under the specified container branch, and leaves all other groups not updated.

```
nsslapd-pluginContainerScope: dn
```

CHAPTER 6. POPULATING DIRECTORY DATABASES

Databases contain the directory data managed by the Red Hat Directory Server.

6.1. IMPORTING DATA

Directory Server can populate a database with data in one of two ways: by importing data (either through the Directory Server Console or using the import tools) or by initializing a database for replication.

[Table 6.1, “Import Method Comparison”](#) describes the differences between an import and initializing databases.

Table 6.1. Import Method Comparison

Action	Import	Initialize Database
Overwrites database	No	Yes
LDAP operations	Add, modify, delete	Add only
Performance	More time-consuming	Fast
Partition specialty	Works on all partitions	Local partitions only
Response to server failure	Best effort (all changes made up to the point of the failure remain)	Atomic (all changes are lost after a failure)
LDIF file location	Local to Console	Local to Console or local to server
Imports configuration information (cn=config)	Yes	No

6.1.1. Setting EntryUSN Initial Values During Import

Entry update sequence numbers (USNs) are not preserved when entries are exported from one server and imported into another. As [Section 4.1, “Tracking Modifications to the Database through Update Sequence Numbers”](#) explains, entry USNs are assigned for operations that happen on a local server, so it does not make sense to import those USNs onto another server.

However, it is possible to configure an initial entry USN value for entries when importing a database or initializing a database (such as when a replica is initialized for replication). This is done by setting the ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** attribute, which sets a starting USN for all imported entries.

There are two possible values for ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval***:

- An integer, which is the explicit start number used for every imported entry.
- *next*, which means that every imported entry uses whatever the highest entry USN value was on the server before the import operation, incremented by one.

If ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** is not set, then all entry USNs begin at zero.

For example, if the highest value on the server is 1000 before the import or initialization operation, and the ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** value is next, then every imported entry is assigned a USN of 1001:

```
# ldapsearch -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x "(cn=*)" entryusn

dn: dc=example,dc=com
entryusn: 1001
dn: ou=Accounting,dc=example,dc=com
entryusn: 1001
dn: ou=Product Development,dc=example,dc=com
entryusn: 1001
...
dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
entryusn: 1001
...
```

To set an initial value for entry USNs, simply add the ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** attribute to the server into which data are being imported or to the master server which will perform the initialization.

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x -D "cn=directory manager" -W -p 389 -h
server.example.com -x

dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval
nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval: next
```



NOTE

In multi-master replication, the ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** attribute is *not* replicated between servers. This means that the value must be set specifically on whichever supplier server is being used to initialize a replica.

For example, if Supplier1 has ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** set to *next* and is used to initialize a replica, then the entry USNs for imported entries have the highest value plus one. If Supplier2 does not have ***nsslapd-entryusn-import-initval*** set and is used to initialize a replica, then all entry USNs for imported entries begin at zero – even if Supplier1 and Supplier 2 have a multi-master replication agreement between them.

6.1.2. Importing a Database from the Console

When performing an import operation from the Directory Server Console, an ***ldapmodify*** operation is executed to append data, as well as to modify and delete entries. The operation is performed on all of the databases managed by the Directory Server and on remote databases to which the Directory Server has a configured database link.

Import operations can be run on a server instance that is local to the Directory Server Console or on a different host machine (a remote import operation).

You must be logged in as the Directory Manager in order to perform an import.

**NOTE**

The LDIF files used for import operations must use UTF-8 character set encoding. Import operations do not convert data from local character set encoding to UTF-8 character set encoding.

**WARNING**

All imported LDIF files must also contain the root suffix.

To import data from the Directory Server Console:

1. Select the **Tasks** tab. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, and select **Import Database**.



Alternatively, open the **Configuration** tab and select **Import** from the **Console** menu.

2. In the **Import Database** dialog box, enter the full path to the LDIF file to import in the **LDIF file** field, or click **Browse** to select the file to import.



If the Console is running on a machine remote to the directory, the field name appears as **LDIF file (on the machine running the Console)**. When browsing for a file, you are not browsing the current directory for the Directory Server host, but the filesystem of the machine running the Console.

When importing a database through a remote Console, *do not* use a relative path to the database. For remote imports, the operation fails with the error *Cannot write to file...* if a relative path is given for the file. Always use an absolute path for remote import operations.

3. In the **Options** box, select one or both of the following options:
 - *Add Only.* The LDIF file may contain modify and delete instructions in addition to the default add instructions. For the server to ignore operations other than add, select the **Add only** check box.
 - *Continue on Error.* Select the **Continue on error** check box for the server to continue with the import even if errors occur. For example, use this option to import an LDIF file that contains some entries that already exist in the database in addition to new ones. The server notes existing entries in the rejects file while adding all new entries.
4. In the **File for Rejects** field, enter the full path to the file in which the server is to record all entries it cannot import, or click **Browse** to select the file which will contain the rejects.

A reject is an entry which cannot be imported into the database; for example, the server cannot import an entry that already exists in the database or an entry that has no parent object. The Console will write the error message sent by the server to the rejects file.

Leaving this field blank means the server will not record rejected entries.

The server performs the import and also creates indexes.



NOTE

Trailing spaces are dropped during a remote Console import but are preserved during both local Console or **ldif2db** import operations.

6.1.3. Initializing a Database from the Console

The existing data in a database can be overwritten by initializing databases.

You must be logged in as the **Directory Manager** in order to initialize a database because an LDIF file that contains a root entry cannot be imported into a database except as the Directory Manager (root DN). Only the Directory Manager has access to the root entry, such as **dc=example,dc=com**.

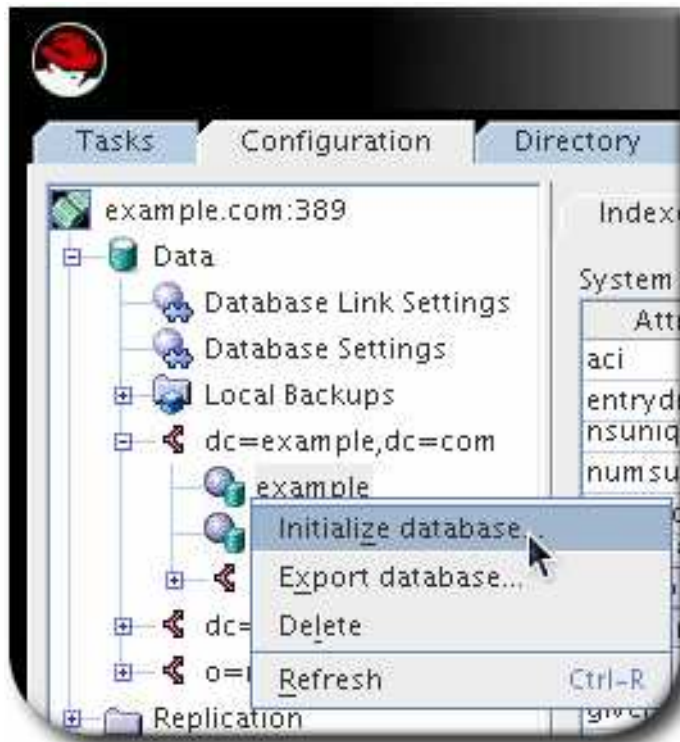


WARNING

When initializing databases from an LDIF file, be careful not to overwrite the **o=NetscapeRoot** suffix unless you are restoring data. Otherwise, initializing the database deletes information and may require re-installing the Directory Server.

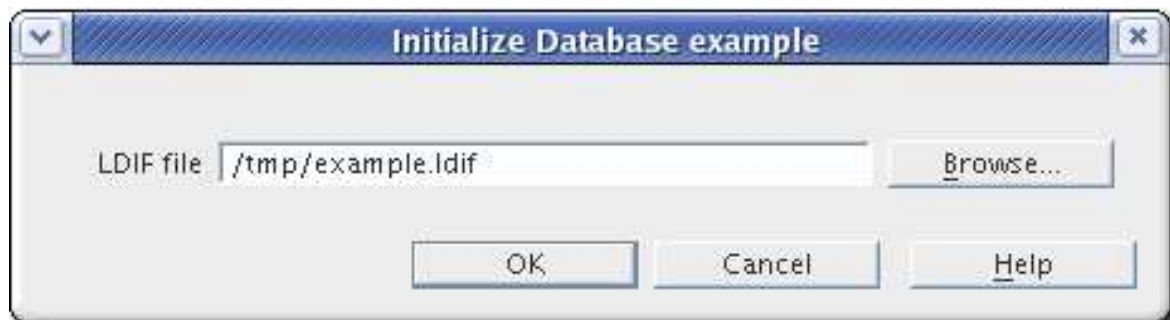
To initialize a database using the Directory Server Console:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand the **Data** tree in the left navigation pane. Expand the suffix of the database to initialize, then click the database itself.
3. Right-click the database, and select **Initialize Database**.



Alternatively, select **Initialize Database** from the **Object** menu.

- In the **LDIF file** field, enter the full path to the LDIF file to import, or click **Browse**.



- If the Console is running from a machine local to the file being imported, click **OK** and proceed with the import immediately. If the Console is running from a machine remote to the server containing the LDIF file, select one of the following options, then click **OK**:
 - From local machine.* Indicates that the LDIF file is located on the local machine.
 - From server machine.* Indicates that the LDIF file is located on a remote server.

The default LDIF directory is **`/var/lib/dirsrv/slapped-instance/ldif`**.

6.1.4. Importing from the Command Line

There are four methods for importing data through the command line:

- Using `ldif2db`.* This import method overwrites the contents of the database and requires the server to be stopped; see [Section 6.1.4.1, "Importing Using the `ldif2db` Command-Line Script"](#).
- Using `ldif2db.pl`.* This import method overwrites the contents of the database while the server is still running; see [Section 6.1.4.2, "Importing Using the `ldif2db.pl` Perl Script"](#).

- *Using `ldif2ldap`*. This method appends the LDIF file through LDAP. This method is useful to append data to all of the databases; see [Section 6.1.4.3, “Importing Using the `ldif2ldap` Command-Line Script”](#).
- *Creating a `cn=tasks` entry*. This method creates a temporary task entry which automatically launches an import operation. This is functionally like running `ldif2db`. See [Section 6.1.4.4, “Importing through the `cn=tasks` Entry”](#).



NOTE

The LDIF files used for import operations must use UTF-8 character set encoding. Import operations do not convert data from local character set encoding to UTF-8 character set encoding.



WARNING

All imported LDIF files must also contain the root suffix.



NOTE

To import a database that has been encrypted, use the **-E** option with the script. See [Section 10.7, “Exporting and Importing an Encrypted Database”](#) for more information.

6.1.4.1. Importing Using the `ldif2db` Command-Line Script

The `ldif2db` script overwrites the data in the specified database. Also, the script requires that the Directory Server be stopped when the import begins.

By default, the script first saves and then merges any existing **o=NetscapeRoot** configuration information with the **o=NetscapeRoot** configuration information in the files being imported.



WARNING

This script overwrites the data in the database.

To import an LDIF:

1. Stop the server:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance
```

2. Run the `ldif2db` command-line script:

```
# ldif2db -Z instance_name -n Database1 -i /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/ldif/demo.ldif -i
/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/ldif/demo2.ldif
```

For information about the parameters used in the example, see the description of the **ldif2db** script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).



WARNING

If the database specified in the **-n** option does not correspond with the suffix contained by the LDIF file, all of the data contained by the database is deleted, and the import fails. Make sure that the database name is not misspelled.

3. Start the server:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance
```

6.1.4.2. Importing Using the ldif2db.pl Perl Script

As with the **ldif2db** script, the **ldif2db.pl** script overwrites the data in the specified database. This script requires the server to be running in order to perform the import.



WARNING

This script overwrites the data in the database.

Run the **ldif2db.pl** script:

```
# ldif2db.pl -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w secret -i
/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/ldif/demo.ldif -n Database1
```

For information about the parameters used in the example, see the description of the **ldif2db.pl** script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).



NOTE

You do not need **root** privileges to run the script, but you must authenticate as the Directory Manager.

6.1.4.3. Importing Using the ldif2ldap Command-Line Script

The **ldif2ldap** script appends the LDIF file through LDAP. Using this script, data are imported to all directory databases at the same time. The server must be running in order to import using **ldif2ldap**.

To import LDIF using **ldif2ldap**:

```
[root@server ~]# ldif2ldap -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w secretpwd
/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/ldif/demo.ldif
```

The **ldif2ldap** script requires the DN of the administrative user, the password of the administrative user, and the absolute path and filename of the LDIF files to be imported.

For information about the parameters used in the example, see the description of the **ldif2ldap** script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.1.4.4. Importing through the **cn=tasks** Entry

The **cn=tasks,cn=config** entry in the Directory Server configuration is a container entry for temporary entries that the server uses to manage tasks. Several common directory tasks have container entries under **cn=tasks,cn=config**. Temporary task entries can be created under **cn=import,cn=tasks,cn=config** to initiate an import operation.

As with the **ldif2db** and **ldif2db.pl** scripts, an import operation in **cn=tasks** overwrites all of the information in the database.

This task entry requires three attributes:

- A unique name (**cn**)
- The filename of the LDIF file to import (**nsFilename**)
- The name of the database into which to import the file (**nsInstance**)

It is also possible to supply the DNs of suffixes to include or exclude from the import, analogous to the **-s** and **-x** options, respectively, for the **ldif2db** and **ldif2db.pl** scripts.

The entry is simply added using **ldapmodify**, as described in [Section 3.1.3.2, "Adding an Entry Using ldapmodify"](#). For example:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=example import,cn=import,cn=tasks,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: extensibleObject
cn: example import
nsFilename: /home/files/example.ldif
nsInstance: userRoot
nsIncludeSuffix: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
nsExcludeSuffix: ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
```

As soon as the task is completed, the entry is removed from the directory configuration.

For details about the attributes used in the example and other attributes you can set in this entry, see the **cn=import,cn=tasks,cn=config** entry description in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#)

6.2. EXPORTING DATA

LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) files are used to export database entries from the Directory Server databases. LDIF is a standard format described in RFC 2849, *The LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) - Technical Specification*.

Exporting data can be useful for the following:

- Backing up the data in the database.
- Copying data to another Directory Server.
- Exporting data to another application.
- Repopulating databases after a change to the directory topology.

For example, if a directory contains one database, and its contents are split into two databases, then the two new databases receive their data by exporting the contents of the old databases and importing it into the two new databases, as illustrated in [Figure 6.1, "Splitting a Database Contents into Two Databases"](#).



NOTE

The export operations do not export the configuration information (**cn=config**), schema information (**cn=schema**), or monitoring information (**cn=monitor**).

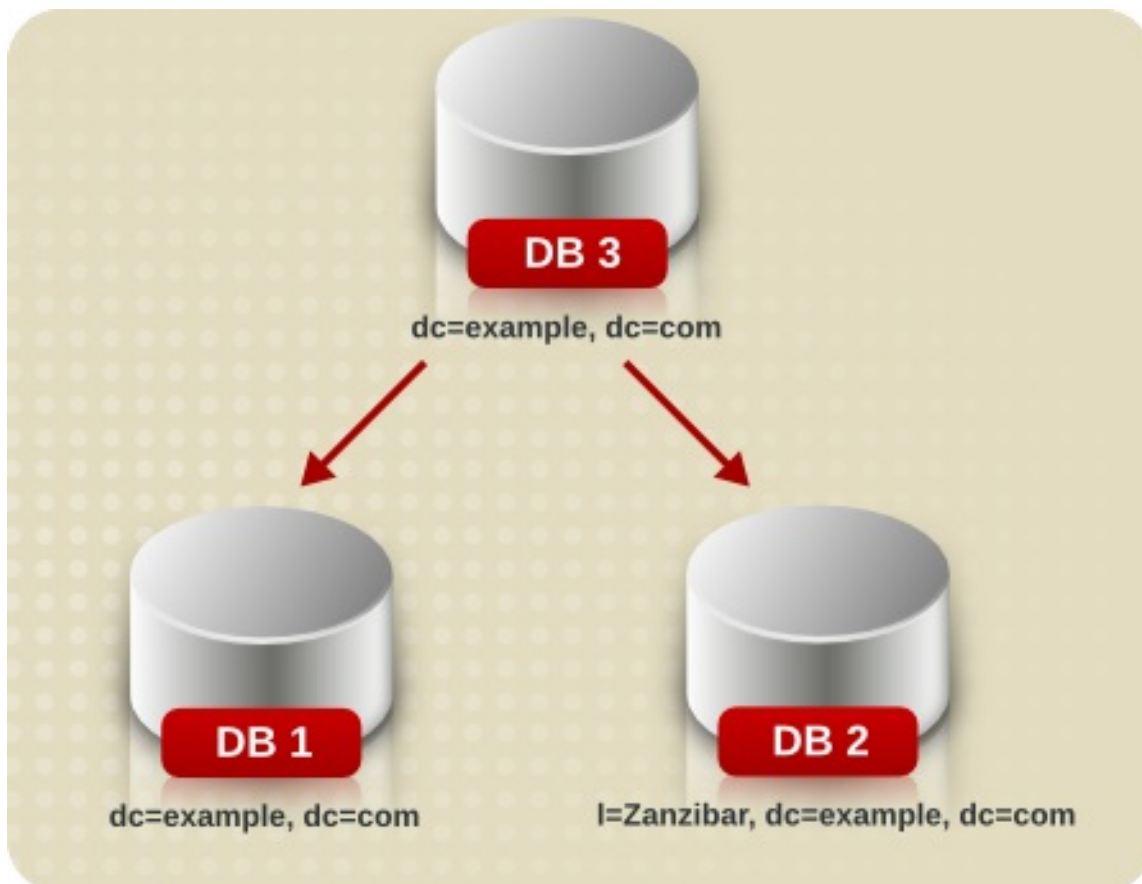


Figure 6.1. Splitting a Database Contents into Two Databases

The Directory Server Console or command-line utilities can be used to export data.

- Section 6.2.1, “Exporting Directory Data to LDIF Using the Console”
- Section 6.2.2, “Exporting a Single Database to LDIF Using the Console”
- Section 6.2.3, “Exporting a Database to LDIF Using the Command Line”

**WARNING**

Do not stop the server during an export operation.

6.2.1. Exporting Directory Data to LDIF Using the Console

Some or all of directory data can be exported to LDIF, depending upon the location of the final exported file. When the LDIF file is on the server, only the data contained by the databases local to the server can be exported. If the LDIF file is remote to the server, all of the databases and database links can be exported.

Export operations can be run to get data from a server instance that is local to the Directory Server Console or from a different host machine (a remote export operation).

Export directory data to LDIF from the Directory Server Console while the server is running:

1. Select the **Tasks** tab. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, and click **Export Database(s)**.



Alternatively, select the **Configuration** tab and click the **Export from the Console** menu.

2. Enter the full path and filename of the LDIF file in the **LDIF File** field, or click **Browse** to locate the file.



Browse is not enabled if the Console is running on a remote server. When the **Browse** button is not enabled, the file is stored in the default directory, `/var/lib/dirsrv/slapped-instance/ldif`.

3. If the Console is running on a machine remote to the server, two radio buttons are displayed beneath the **LDIF File** field.

- Select **To local machine** to export the data to an LDIF file on the machine from which the Console is running.
 - Select **To server machine** to export to an LDIF file located on the server's machine.
4. To export the whole directory, select the **Entire database** radio button.

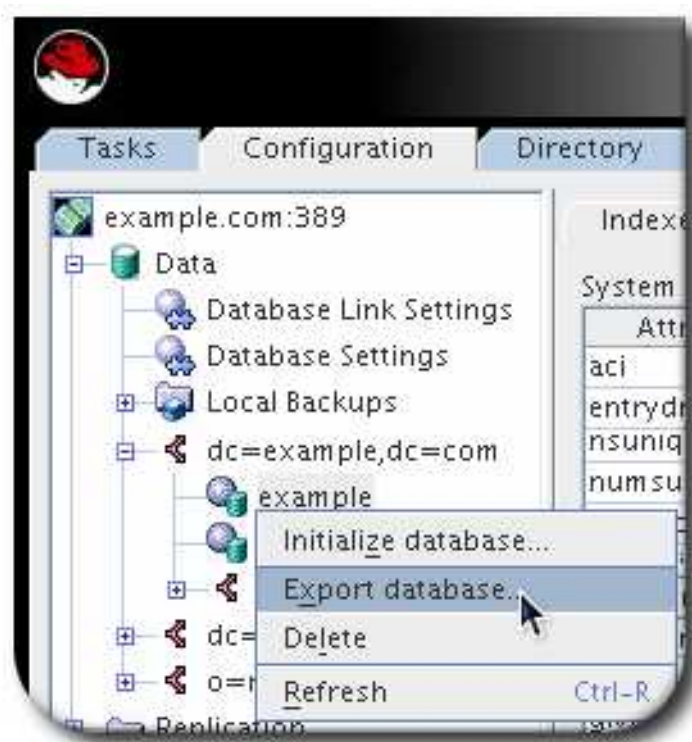
To export only a single subtree of the suffix contained by the database, select the **Subtree** radio button, and then enter the name of the suffix in the **Subtree** text box. This option exports a subtree that is contained by more than one database.

Alternatively, click **Browse** to select a suffix or subtree.

6.2.2. Exporting a Single Database to LDIF Using the Console

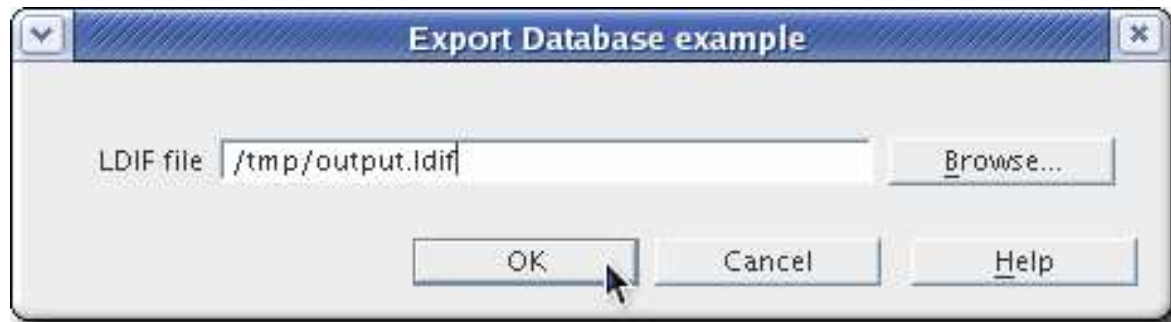
It is also possible to export a single database to LDIF. Do the following while the server is running:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab.
2. Expand the **Data** tree in the left navigation pane. Expand the suffix, and select the database under the suffix.
3. Right-click the database, and select **Export Database**.



Alternatively, select **Export Database** from the **Object** menu.

4. In the **LDIF file** field, enter the full path to the LDIF file, or click **Browse**.



When the **Browse** button is not enabled, the file is stored in the default directory, `/var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance/ldif`.

6.2.3. Exporting a Database to LDIF Using the Command Line

Directory Server supports the following ways to export data into LDIF files:

6.2.3.1. Exporting a Database While Directory Server is Running

To export a database while Directory Server is running, create an export task. You can either use the **db2ldif.pl** script to create it or create the task manually. After the task is completed, Directory Server automatically removes the task entry from the `cn=export,cn=tasks,cn=config` entry.

For a comparison of which **db2ldif.pl** command-line option sets which attribute in the task entry, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.2.3.1.1. Exporting a Database Using the **db2ldif.pl** Script

The **db2ldif.pl** script creates a task to export a database while Directory Server is running. For example, to export the **userRoot** database:

```
# db2ldif.pl -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w - -n userRoot
```

By default, the script stores the exported data in the `/var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name/ldif/` directory. The created file is named `instance_name-database_or_suffix_name-time_stamp.ldif`. Alternatively, you can pass the **-a file_name** option to the script to set a different location. Note that the Directory Server user requires write permissions in the destination directory.

For details about the available command-line options, see the description of the script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

To export an encrypted database, see [Section 10.7, "Exporting and Importing an Encrypted Database"](#).

6.2.3.1.2. Manually Creating an Export Task

Instead of using the **db2ldif.pl** script to create an export task, you can create the task entry manually. For example, to create a task that exports the **userRoot** database to the `/tmp/export.ldif` file:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=task_name,cn=export,cn=tasks,cn=config
objectclass: extensibleObject
```

```
cn: task_name
nsInstance: userRoot
nsFilename: /tmp/export.ldif
```

For a list of settings which you can use in export task entries, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.2.3.2. Exporting a Database While Directory Server is Stopped

To export a database while the Directory Server instance is stopped, use the **db2ldif** script. The script takes the same options as the **db2ldif.pl** script, which can export data while the instance is running.

For example, to export the **userRoot** database while the instance is stopped:

```
# db2ldif -Z instance_name -n userRoot
```

By default, the script stores the exported data in the `/var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name/ldif/` directory. The created file is named ***instance_name-database_or_suffix_name-time_stamp.ldif***. Alternatively, you can pass the **-a *file_name*** option to the script to set a different location. Note that the Directory Server user requires write permissions in the destination directory.

For details about the available command-line options, see the description of the script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.3. BACKING UP AND RESTORING DATA

Databases can be backed up and restored using the Directory Server Console or a command-line script. A backup contains, for example:

- All database files, such as for **userRoot** and **NetscapeRoot**, including the data stored within these databases
- The transaction logs
- The Indices

In contrast to a backup, you can export data as described in [Section 6.2, “Exporting Data”](#). Use the export feature to export specific data, such as a subtree, from a server in the LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) format.

This section describes the following procedures:

- [Section 6.3.1, “Backing up All Databases”](#)
- [Section 6.3.2, “Backing up the dse.ldif Configuration File”](#)
- [Section 6.3.3, “Restoring All Databases”](#)
- [Section 6.3.4, “Restoring a Single Database”](#)
- [Section 6.3.5, “Restoring Databases That Include Replicated Entries”](#)
- [Section 6.3.6, “Restoring the dse.ldif Configuration File”](#)

**WARNING**

Do not stop the server during a backup or restore operation.

6.3.1. Backing up All Databases

The following procedures describe backing up all of the databases in the directory using the Directory Server Console and from the command line.

**NOTE**

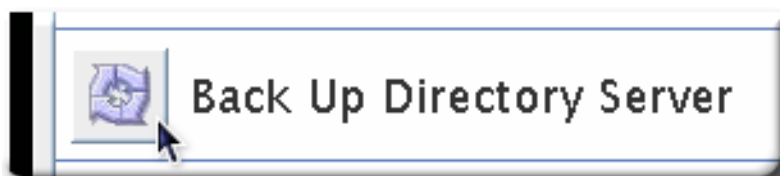
These backup methods cannot be used to back up the data contained by databases on a remote server that are chained using database links.

6.3.1.1. Backing up All Databases from the Console

When backing up databases from the Directory Server Console, the server copies all of the database contents and associated index files to a backup location. A backup can be performed while the server is running.

To back up databases from the Directory Server Console:

1. Select the **Tasks** tab.
2. Click **Back Up Directory Server**.



3. Enter the full path of the directory to store the backup file in the **Directory** text box, or click **Use default**, and the server provides a name for the backup directory.

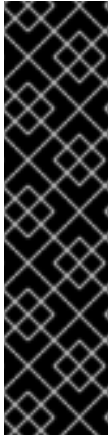


If the Console is running on the same machine as the directory, click **Browse** to select a local directory.

With the default location, the backup files are placed in **/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-*instance*/bak**. By default, the backup directory name contains the name of the server instance and the time and date the backup was created (*instance-YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss*).

6.3.1.2. Backing up All Databases from the Command Line

Databases can be backed up from the command line using either the **db2bak** command-line script or the **db2bak.pl** Perl script. The command-line script works when the server is running or when the server is stopped; the Perl script can only be used when the server is running.



IMPORTANT

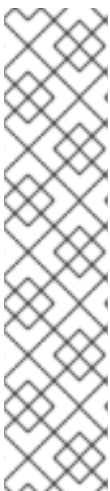
If the database being backed up is a master database, meaning it keeps a changelog, then it must be backed up using the **db2bak.pl** Perl script or using the Directory Server Console if the server is kept running. The changelog only writes its RUV entries to the database when the server is shut down; while the server is running, the changelog keeps its changes in memory. For the Perl script and the Console, these changelog RUVs are written to the database before the backup process runs. However, that step is not performed by the command-line script.

The **db2bak** should not be run on a running master server. Either use the Perl script or stop the server before performing the backup.

Configuration information *cannot* be backed up using this backup method. For information on backing up the configuration information, see [Section 6.3.2, "Backing up the dse.ldif Configuration File"](#).

To back up the directory from the command line using the **db2bak.pl** script, run the **db2bak.pl** Perl script, specifying the backup filename and directory.

```
# db2bak.pl -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w password -a /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-  
example/bak/instance-2020_04_30_16_27_5-custom-name
```



NOTE

Do not use a trailing slash character ("/") when using the **-a** option to specify the default backup directory that is configured using the **nsslapd-bakdir** directive. For example:

```
# db2bak.pl -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w password -a  
/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-example/bak
```

Note the lack of slash after **slapd-example/bak**.

This limitation only applies when specifying exactly the same directory which is configured in **nsslapd-bakdir**. Any other directory, even inside the default backup directory (for example, **bak/custom-name/**) can be specified with or without a trailing slash.

The backup directory where the server saves the backed up databases can be specified with the script. If a directory is not specified, the backup file is stored in **/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-*instance*/bak**. By default, the backup directory is named with the Directory Server instance name and the date of the backup (*serverID-YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss*).

For information about **ldif2db**, see the script's description in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.3.1.3. Backing up the Database through the `cn=tasks` Entry

The `cn=tasks,cn=config` entry in the Directory Server configuration is a container entry for temporary entries that the server uses to manage tasks. Several common directory tasks have container entries under `cn=tasks,cn=config`. Temporary task entries can be created under `cn=backup,cn=tasks,cn=config` to initiate a backup operation.

The backup task entry requires three attributes:

- A unique name (`cn`).
- The directory to write the backup file to (`nsArchiveDir`). The backup file is named with the Directory Server instance name and the date of the backup (`serverID-YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss`).
- The type of database (`nsDatabaseType`); the only option is **ldbm database**.

The entry is simply added using `ldapmodify`, as described in [Section 3.1.3.2, “Adding an Entry Using `ldapmodify`”](#). For example:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=example backup,cn=backup,cn=tasks,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: extensibleObject
cn: example backup
nsArchiveDir: /export/backups/
nsDatabaseType: ldbm database
```

As soon as the task is completed, the entry is removed from the directory configuration.

For details about the attributes used in the example and other attributes you can set in this entry, see the `cn=backup,cn=tasks,cn=config` entry description in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#)

6.3.2. Backing up the `dse.ldif` Configuration File

Directory Server automatically backs up the `dse.ldif` configuration file. When the Directory Server is started, the directory creates a backup of the `dse.ldif` file automatically in a file named `dse.ldif.startOK` in the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance` directory.

When the `dse.ldif` file is modified, the file is first backed up to a file called `dse.ldif.bak` in the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance` directory before the directory writes the modifications to the `dse.ldif` file.

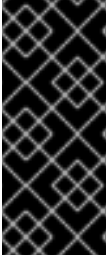
6.3.3. Restoring All Databases

The following procedures describe restoring all of the databases in the directory using the Directory Server Console and from the command line.



NOTE

Restoring a database from backup also restores the changelog.



IMPORTANT

While restoring databases, the server must be running. However, the databases will be unavailable for processing operations during the restore.

Therefore, stop all replication processes before restoring a database. For details, see [Section 15.9, "Disabling and Re-enabling a Replication Agreement"](#).

6.3.3.1. Restoring All Databases from the Console

If the databases become corrupted, restore data from a previously generated backup using the Directory Server Console. This process consists of stopping the server and then copying the databases and associated index files from the backup location to the database directory.



WARNING

Restoring databases overwrites any existing database files.



IMPORTANT

While restoring databases, the server must be running. However, the databases will be unavailable for processing operations during the restore.

Therefore, stop all replication processes before restoring a database. For details, see [Section 15.9, "Disabling and Re-enabling a Replication Agreement"](#).

To restore databases from a previously created backup:

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Tasks** tab.
2. Click **Restore Directory Server**.



3. Select the backup from the **Available Backups** list, or enter the full path to a valid backup in the **Directory** text box.

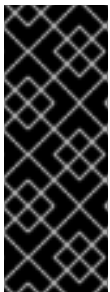


The **Available Backups** list shows all backups located in the default directory, `/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/bak/backup_directory`. `backup_directory` is the directory of the most recent backup, in the form `serverID-YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss`.

6.3.3.2. Restoring Databases from the Command Line

There are three ways to restore databases from the command line:

- Using the **bak2db** command-line script. This script requires the server to be shut down.
- Using the **bak2db.pl** Perl script. This script works while the server is running.
- Creating a temporary entry under **cn=restore,cn=tasks,cn=config**. This method can also be run while the server is running.



IMPORTANT

While restoring databases, the server must be running (with the exception of running the **bak2db** command-line script). However, the databases will be unavailable for processing operations during the restore.

Therefore, stop all replication processes before restoring a database. For details, see [Section 15.9, “Disabling and Re-enabling a Replication Agreement”](#).

6.3.3.2.1. Using the bak2db Command-Line Script

1. If the Directory Server is running, stop it:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance
```

2. Run the **bak2db** command-line script. The **bak2db** script requires the full path and name of the input file.

```
# bak2db -Z instance_name /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/bak/instance-2020_04_30_11_48_30
```

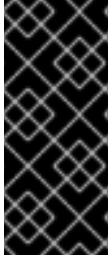
For information about the parameters used in the example, see the description of the **bak2db** script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

6.3.3.2.2. Using bak2db.pl Perl Script

Run the **bak2db.pl** Perl script.

```
# bak2db.pl -Z instance_name -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w secret -a
/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance/bak/instance-2020_04_30_11_48_30
```

For information about the parameters used in the example, see the description of the **bak2db.pl** script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).



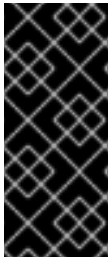
IMPORTANT

While restoring databases, the server must be running. However, the databases will be unavailable for processing operations during the restore.

Therefore, stop all replication processes before restoring a database. For details, see [Section 15.9, "Disabling and Re-enabling a Replication Agreement"](#).

6.3.3.2.3. Restoring the Database through the cn=tasks Entry

The **cn=tasks,cn=config** entry in the Directory Server configuration is a container entry for temporary entries that the server uses to manage tasks. Several common directory tasks have container entries under **cn=tasks,cn=config**. Temporary task entries can be created under **cn=restore,cn=tasks,cn=config** to initiate a restore operation.



IMPORTANT

While restoring databases, the server must be running. However, the databases will be unavailable for processing operations during the restore.

Therefore, stop all replication processes before restoring a database. For details, see [Section 15.9, "Disabling and Re-enabling a Replication Agreement"](#).

The restore task entry requires three attributes, the same as the backup task:

- A unique name (**cn**).
- The directory from which to retrieve the backup file (**nsArchiveDir**).
- The type of database (**nsDatabaseType**); the only option is **ldbm database**.

The entry is simply added using **ldapmodify**, as described in [Section 3.1.3.2, "Adding an Entry Using ldapmodify"](#). For example:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=example restore,cn=restore,cn=tasks,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: extensibleObject
cn: example restore
nsArchiveDir: /export/backups/
nsDatabaseType: ldbm database
```

As soon as the task is completed, the entry is removed from the directory configuration.

For details about the attributes used in the example and other attributes you can set in this entry, see the **cn=restore,cn=tasks,cn=config** entry description in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#)

6.3.4. Restoring a Single Database

It is possible to restore a single database through the command line, but not in the Directory Server Console. To restore a single database:

1. Stop the Directory Server if it is running.

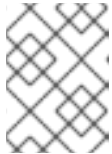
```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance
```

2. Restore the back end from the **/var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance/bak** archives with the **bak2db** script, using the **-n** parameter to specify the database name. For example:

```
# bak2db -Z instance_name /var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance/bak/backup_file -n userRoot
```

3. Restart the Directory Server.

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance
```



NOTE

If the Directory Server fails to start, remove the database transaction log files in **/var/lib/dirsrv/slaped-instance/db/log.###**, then retry starting the server.

6.3.5. Restoring Databases That Include Replicated Entries

Several situations can occur when a supplier server is restored:

- The consumer servers are also restored.

For the very unlikely situation, that all databases are restored from backups taken at exactly the same time (so that the data are in sync), the consumers remain synchronized with the supplier, and it is not necessary to do anything else. Replication resumes without interruption.

- Only the supplier is restored.

If only the supplier is restored or if the consumers are restored from backups taken at a different times, reinitialize the consumers for the supplier to update the data in the database. If only the supplier is restored or if the consumers are restored from backups taken at a different times, reinitialize the consumers for the supplier to update the data in the database.

- Changelog entries have not yet expired on the supplier server.

If the supplier's changelog has not expired since the database backup was taken, then restore the local consumer and continue with normal operations. This situation occurs only if the backup was taken within a period of time that is shorter than the value set for the maximum changelog age attribute, **nsslapd-changelogmaxage**, in the **cn=changelog5,cn=config** entry. For more information about this option, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

Directory Server automatically detects the compatibility between the replica and its changelog. If a mismatch is detected, the server removes the old changelog file and creates a new, empty one.

- Changelog entries have expired on the supplier server since the time of the local backup.

If changelog entries have expired, reinitialize the consumer. For more information on reinitializing consumers, see [Section 15.18, "Initializing Consumers"](#).

Example 6.1. Restoring a Directory Server Replication Topology

For example, to restore all servers in a replication environment, consisting of two masters and two consumer server:

1. Restore the first master. Use the **ldif2db** utility without the **-r** option to import the data. See [Section 6.1.4, "Importing from the Command Line"](#).
2. Online-initialize the remaining servers by using replication:
 - a. Initialize the second master from the first one.
 - b. Initialize the consumers from the master.

For details, see [Section 15.18, "Initializing Consumers"](#).

3. On each server, display the ***nsds5replicaLastUpdateStatus*** attribute to verify that replication works correctly:

```
# ldapsearch -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -b
"cn=example_agreement,cn=replica,cn=dc\=example\,dc\=com,cn=mapping
tree,cn=config" nsds5replicaLastUpdateStatus
```

For details about possible statuses, see the [Replication Agreement Status](#) appendix in the *Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference*.

The changelog associated with the restored database will be erased during the restore operation. A message will be logged to the supplier servers' log files indicating that reinitialization is required.

For information on managing replication, see [Chapter 15, Managing Replication](#).

6.3.6. Restoring the **dse.ldif** Configuration File

The directory creates two backup copies of the **dse.ldif** file in the **/etc/dirsrv/slapd-*instance*** directory. The **dse.ldif.startOK** file records a copy of the **dse.ldif** file at server start up. The **dse.ldif.bak** file contains a backup of the most recent changes to the **dse.ldif** file. Use the version with the most recent changes to restore the directory.

To restore the **dse.ldif** configuration file:

1. Stop the server.

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance
```

2. Restore the database as outlined in [Section 6.3.4, "Restoring a Single Database"](#) to copy the backup copy of the **dse.ldif** file into the directory.
3. Restart the server.

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance
```

CHAPTER 7. MANAGING ATTRIBUTES AND VALUES

Red Hat Directory Server provides several different mechanisms for dynamically and automatically maintaining some types of attributes on directory entries. These plug-ins and configuration options simplify managing directory data and expressing relationships between entries.

Part of the characteristic of entries are their *relationships* to each other. Obviously, a manager has an employee, so those two entries are related. Groups are associated with their members. There are less apparent relationships, too, like between entries which share a common physical location.

Red Hat Directory Server provides several different ways that these relationships between entries can be maintained smoothly and consistently. There are several plug-ins can apply or generate attributes automatically as part of the data within the directory, including classes of service, linking attributes, and generating unique numeric attribute values.

7.1. ENFORCING ATTRIBUTE UNIQUENESS

To ensure that the value of an attribute is unique across the directory or subtree, use the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in.

If you want multiple attributes to be unique or if you want to use different conditions, create multiple configuration records of the plug-in.

7.1.1. Creating a New Configuration Record of the Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in

For each attribute whose values must be unique, create a new configuration record of the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in.



NOTE

You can only create a new configuration record of the plug-in from the command line.

To create a new unconfigured and disabled configuration record of the plug-in named **Example Attribute Uniqueness**:

```
# ldapadd -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=Example Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSlapdPlugin
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: Example Attribute Uniqueness
nsslapd-pluginPath: libattr-unique-plugin
nsslapd-pluginInitfunc: NSUniqueAttr_Init
nsslapd-pluginType: betxnpreoperation
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: off
nsslapd-pluginDepends-on-type: database
nsslapd-pluginId: NSUniqueAttr
nsslapd-pluginVersion: none
nsslapd-pluginVendor: 389 Project
nsslapd-pluginDescription: Enforce unique attribute values
uniqueness-attribute-name: uid
```

7.1.2. Configuring Attribute Uniqueness over Suffixes or Subtrees

You can configure the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in to ensure that values of an attribute are unique in certain suffixes, subtrees, or over suffixes and subtrees.

7.1.2.1. Configuring Attribute Uniqueness over Suffixes or Subtrees Using the Command Line

To configure, for example, that values stored in **mail** attributes are unique:

1. Create a new configuration record of the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in named, for example, **mail Attribute Uniqueness**. For details, see [Section 7.1.1, "Creating a New Configuration Record of the Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in"](#).
2. Enable the plug-in configuration record and configure that values stored in **mail** attributes must be unique inside, for example, the **ou=Engineering,dc=example,dc=com** and **ou=Sales,dc=example,dc=com** subtrees:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=mail Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
-
add: uniqueness-attribute-name
uniqueness-attribute-name: mail
-
add: uniqueness-subtrees
uniqueness-subtrees: ou=Engineering,dc=example,dc=com
uniqueness-subtrees: ou=Sales,dc=example,dc=com
```

3. Optionally, to configure uniqueness across all subtrees configured in this plug-in configuration record:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=mail Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: uniqueness-across-all-subtrees
uniqueness-across-all-subtrees: on
```

4. Restart the instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

7.1.2.2. Configuring Attribute Uniqueness over Suffixes or Subtrees Using the Console

To configure, for example, that values stored in **mail** attributes are unique:

1. Create a new configuration record of the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in. See [Section 7.1.1, "Creating a New Configuration Record of the Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in"](#).
2. Open the **Property Editor** in the plug-in configuration record's configuration. For details, see [Section 1.9.3.2, "Configuring Plug-ins using the Console"](#).

- To enable the plug-in, set:

```
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

- Set that the **mail** attribute must be unique:

```
uniqueness-attribute-name: mail
```

- Set the subtrees in which the attribute's value must be unique:

```
uniqueness-subtrees: ou=Engineering,dc=example,dc=com
uniqueness-subtrees: ou=Sales,dc=example,dc=com
```

Select the value field of the **uniqueness-subtrees** attribute and click the **Add Value** button to add the second **uniqueness-subtrees** attribute.

- Optionally, to configure uniqueness across all subtrees configured in this plug-in configuration record, add the **uniqueness-across-all-subtrees** attribute and set it to **on**:

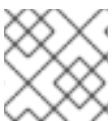
```
uniqueness-across-all-subtrees: on
```

- Click **OK** to close the **Property Editor**

- Restart the Directory Server instance. See [Section 1.4.2, "Starting and Stopping a Directory Server Instance Using the Console"](#).

7.1.3. Configuring Attribute Uniqueness over Object Classes

You can configure the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in to ensure that values of an attribute are unique in subtree entries that contain a specific object class. Directory Server searches for this object class in the parent entry of the updated object. If Directory Server did not find the object class, the search continues at the next higher level entry up to the root of the directory tree. If the object class was found, Directory Server verifies that the value of the attribute set in **uniqueness-attribute-name** is unique in this subtree.



NOTE

You can configure this scenario only using the command line.

To configure, for example, that values stored in **mail** attributes are unique under the entry that contains the **nsContainer** object class:

- Create a new configuration record of the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in named, for example, **mail Attribute Uniqueness**. For details, see [Section 7.1.1, "Creating a New Configuration Record of the Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in"](#).
- Enable the plug-in configuration record and configure that values stored in **mail** attributes must be unique under the entry that contains the **nsContainer** object class:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=mail Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
```



```
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
-
add: uniqueness-top-entry-oc
uniqueness-top-entry-oc: nsContainer
```

- Optionally, you can limit the scope of objects being checked. If you want the server to check only a subset of entries under the entry that contains the **nsContainer** object class, set an additional object class in the **uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc** parameter. This additional class will also have to be present.

For example, the **mail** attribute must be unique in all entries under the entry that contains the **nsContainer** object class set. However, you want that the plug-in only searches the **mail** in entries that contain a object class that provides this attribute, such as **inetOrgPerson**. In this situation enter:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=mail Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
add: uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc
uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc: inetOrgPerson
```

- Restart the instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

7.1.4. Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Parameters

To configure an **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in configuration record, set the plug-in's configuration attributes in the **cn=attribute_uniqueness_configuration_record_name,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry.

You can configure this plug-in using the new plug-in-specific attribute names ([Example 7.1, "Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Using Plug-in-specific Attributes"](#)) or using the deprecated **nsslapd-pluginarg*** attributes ([Example 7.2, "Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Using nsslapd-pluginarg* Attributes"](#)).



IMPORTANT

Red Hat recommends using only the plug-in-specific attribute names to configure the **Attribute Uniqueness** plug-in.

Example 7.1. Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Using Plug-in-specific Attributes

```
dn: cn=Example Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
uniqueness-attribute-name: attribute_name
uniqueness-top-entry-oc: objectclass1
uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc: objectclass2
```

Example 7.2. Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Using nsslapd-pluginarg* Attributes

```
dn: cn=Example Attribute Uniqueness,cn=plugins,cn=config
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
nsslapd-pluginarg0: attribute=mail
nsslapd-pluginarg1: markerObjectClass=objectclass1
nsslapd-pluginarg2: requiredObjectClass=objectclass2
```

Table 7.1. Attribute Uniqueness Plug-in Configuration Parameters

Parameter	New or Old Syntax	Definition
<i>cn</i>	Both	Sets the name of the Attribute Uniqueness plug-in configuration record. You can use any string, but Red Hat recommends naming the configuration record <i>attribute_name Attribute Uniqueness</i> .
<i>nsslapd-pluginEnabled</i>	Both	Enables (on) or disables (off) the plug-in configuration record.
<i>uniqueness-attribute-name</i>	New	Sets the name of the attribute whose values must be unique. This attribute is multi-valued.
<i>uniqueness-subtrees</i>	New	Sets the DN under which the plug-in checks for uniqueness of the attribute's value. This attribute is multi-valued.
<i>uniqueness-across-all-subtrees</i>	New	If enabled (on), the plug-in checks that the attribute is unique across all subtrees set. If you set the attribute to off , uniqueness is only enforced within the subtree of the updated entry.
<i>uniqueness-top-entry-oc</i>	New	Directory Server searches this object class in the parent entry of the updated object. If it was not found, the search continues at the next higher level entry up to the root of the directory tree. If the object class was found, Directory Server verifies that the value of the attribute set in <i>uniqueness-attribute-name</i> is unique in this subtree.
<i>uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc</i>	New	Optionally, when using the <i>uniqueness-top-entry-oc</i> parameter, you can configure that the Attribute Uniqueness plug-in only verifies if an attribute is unique, if the entry contains the object class set in this parameter. For details, see Section 7.1.3, "Configuring Attribute Uniqueness over Object Classes" .

Parameter	New or Old Syntax	Definition
<i>nsslapd-pluginarg0</i>	Old	The plug-in-specific attribute equivalent of this <i>nsslapd-pluginarg*</i> parameter is <i>uniqueness-attribute-name</i> . See this parameter for a description. Set the attribute to <i>attribute=attribute_name</i> .
<i>nsslapd-pluginarg[1-9]</i>	Old	The plug-in-specific attribute equivalent of this <i>nsslapd-pluginarg*</i> parameter is <i>uniqueness-top-entry-oc</i> . See this parameter for a description. Set the attribute to <i>markerObjectClass=object_class</i> .
<i>nsslapd-pluginarg[1-9]</i>	Old	The equivalent plug-in-specific attribute is <i>uniqueness-subtree-entries-oc</i> . See this parameter for a description. Set the attribute to <i>requiredObjectClass=object_class</i> .

7.2. ASSIGNING CLASS OF SERVICE

A *class of service definition* (CoS) shares attributes between entries in a way that is transparent to applications. CoS simplifies entry management and reduces storage requirements.

Clients of the Directory Server read the attributes in a user's entry. With CoS, some attribute values may not be stored within the entry itself. Instead, these attribute values are generated by class of service logic as the entry is sent to the client application.

Each CoS is comprised of two types of entry in the directory:

- *CoS definition entry*. The CoS definition entry identifies the type of CoS used. Like the role definition entry, it inherits from the **LDAPsubentry** object class. The CoS definition entry is below the branch at which it is effective.
- *Template entry*. The CoS template entry contains a list of the shared attribute values. Changes to the template entry attribute values are automatically applied to all the entries within the scope of the CoS. A single CoS might have more than one template entry associated with it.

The CoS definition entry and template entry interact to provide attribute information to their target entries, any entry within the scope of the CoS.

7.2.1. About the CoS Definition Entry

The CoS definition entry is an instance of the **cosSuperDefinition** object class. The CoS definition entry also contains one of three object class that specifies the type of template entry it uses to generate the entry. The target entries which interact with the CoS share the same parent as the CoS definition entry.

There are three types of CoS, defined using three types of CoS definition entries:

- *Pointer* CoS. A pointer CoS identifies the template entry using the template DN only.
- *Indirect* CoS. An indirect CoS identifies the template entry using the value of one of the target entry's attributes. For example, an indirect CoS might specify the **manager** attribute of a target entry. The value of the **manager** attribute is then used to identify the template entry.

The target entry's attribute must be single-valued and contain a DN.

- *Classic* CoS. A classic CoS identifies the template entry using a combination of the template entry's base DN and the value of one of the target entry's attributes.

For more information about the object classes and attributes associated with each type of CoS, see [Section 7.2.11, "Managing CoS from the Command Line"](#).

If the CoS logic detects that an entry contains an attribute for which the CoS is generating values, the CoS, by default, supplies the client application with the attribute value in the entry itself. However, the CoS definition entry can control this behavior.

7.2.2. About the CoS Template Entry

The CoS template entry contains the value or values of the attributes generated by the CoS logic. The CoS template entry contains a general object class of **cosTemplate**. The CoS template entries for a given CoS are stored in the directory tree along with the CoS definition.

The relative distinguished name (RDN) of the template entry is determined by one of the following:

- The DN of the template entry alone. This type of template is associated with a pointer CoS definition.
- The value of one of the target entry's attributes. The attribute used to provide the relative DN to the template entry is specified in the CoS definition entry using the **cosIndirectSpecifier** attribute. This type of template is associated with an indirect CoS definition.
- By a combination of the DN of the subtree where the CoS performs a one level search for templates and the value of one of the target entry's attributes. This type of template is associated with a classic CoS definition.

7.2.3. How a Pointer CoS Works

An administrator creates a pointer CoS that shares a common postal code with all of the entries stored under **dc=example,dc=com**. The three entries for this CoS appear as illustrated in [Figure 7.1, "Sample Pointer CoS"](#).

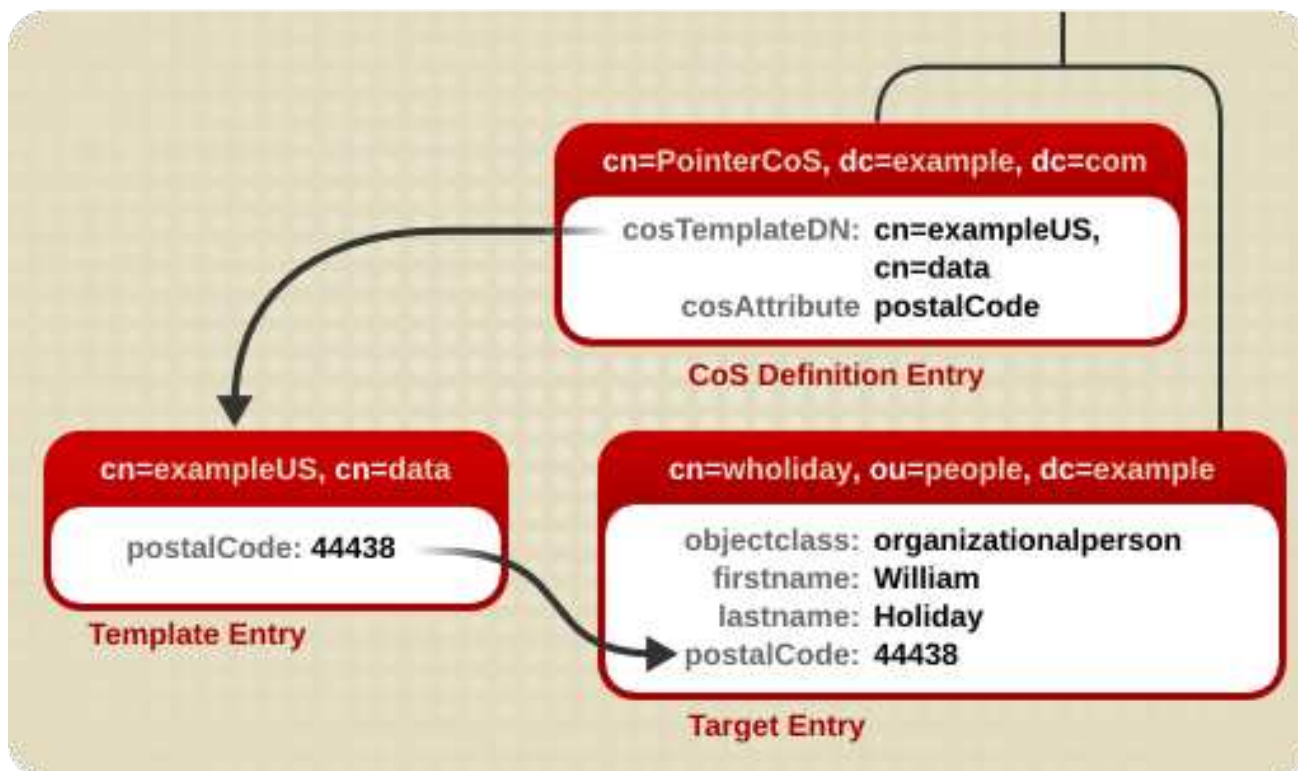


Figure 7.1. Sample Pointer CoS

In this example, the template entry is identified by its DN, **cn=exampleUS,cn=data**, in the CoS definition entry. Each time the **postalCode** attribute is queried on the entry **cn=wholiday,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**, the Directory Server returns the value available in the template entry **cn=exampleUS,cn=data**.

7.2.4. How an Indirect CoS Works

An administrator creates an indirect CoS that uses the **manager** attribute of the target entry to identify the template entry. The three CoS entries appear as illustrated in [Figure 7.2, "Sample Indirect CoS"](#).

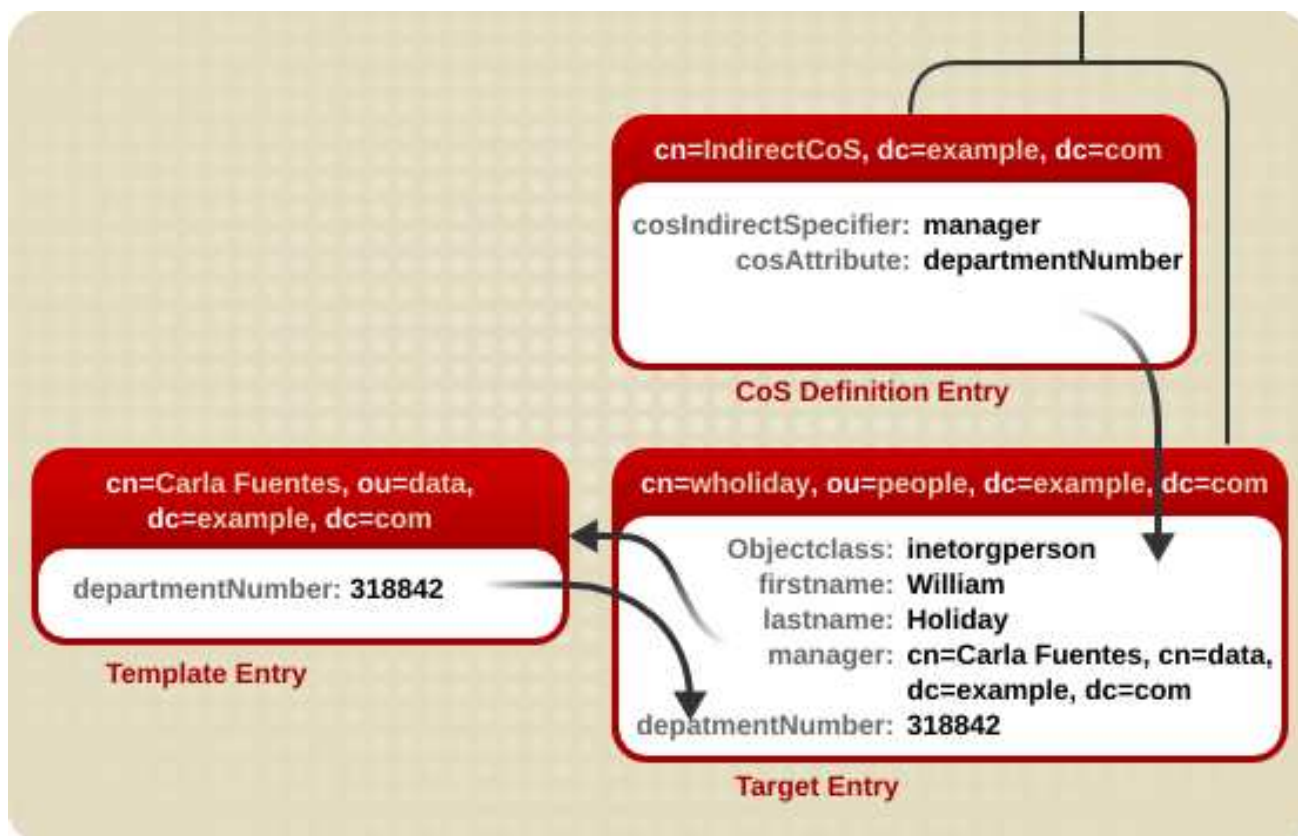


Figure 7.2. Sample Indirect CoS

In this example, the target entry for William Holiday contains the indirect specifier, the **manager** attribute. William's manager is Carla Fuentes, so the **manager** attribute contains a pointer to the DN of the template entry, **cn=Carla Fuentes,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**. The template entry in turn provides the **departmentNumber** attribute value of **318842**.

7.2.5. How a Classic CoS Works

An administrator creates a classic CoS that uses a combination of the template DN and a CoS specifier to identify the template entry containing the postal code. The three CoS entries appear as illustrated in [Figure 7.3, "Sample Classic CoS"](#):

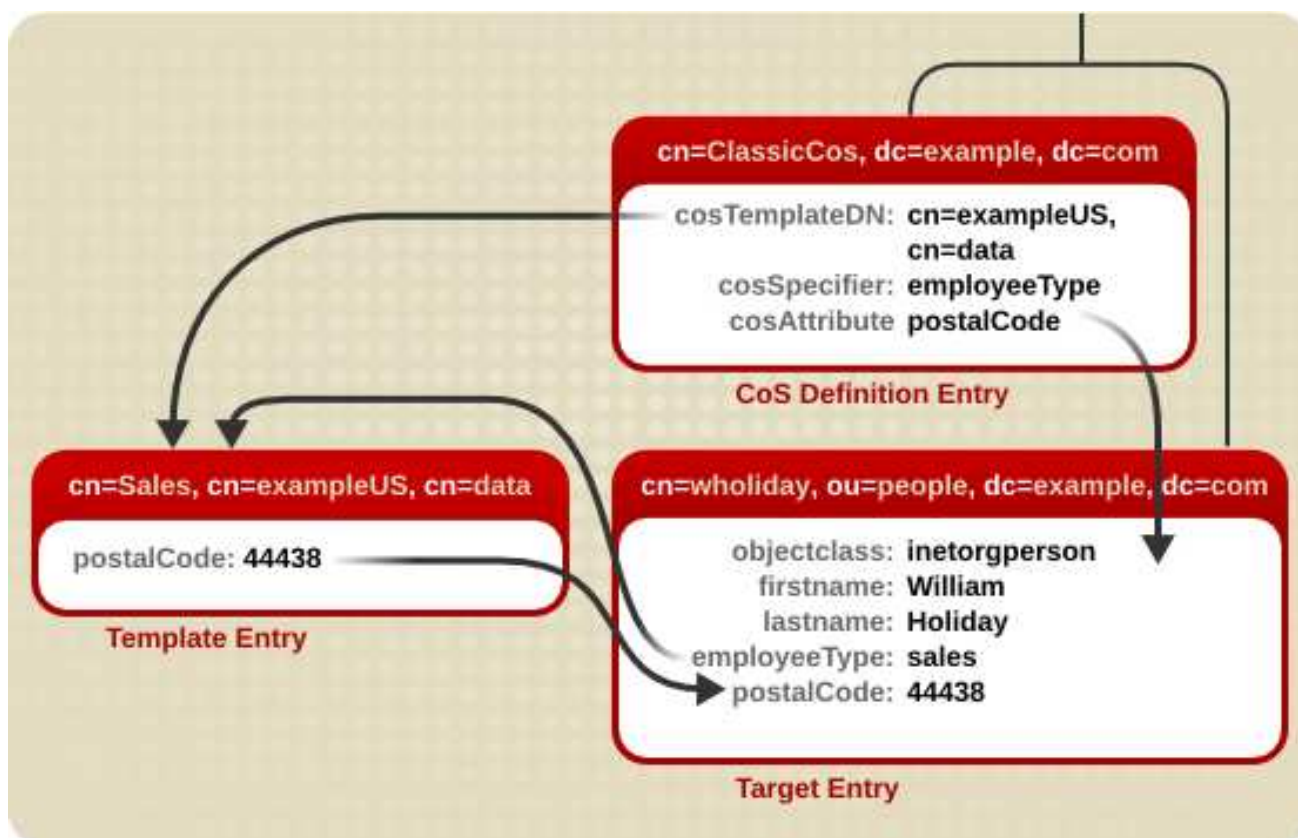


Figure 7.3. Sample Classic CoS

In this example, the CoS definition entry's **cosSpecifier** attribute specifies the **employeeType** attribute. This attribute, in combination with the template DN, identify the template entry as **cn=sales,cn=exampleUS,cn=data**. The template entry then provides the value of the **postalCode** attribute to the target entry.

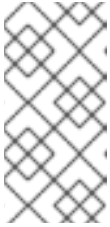
7.2.6. Handling Physical Attribute Values

The **cosAttribute** attribute contains the name of another attribute which is governed by the class of service. This attribute allows an **override** qualifier after the attribute value which sets how the CoS handles existing attribute values on entries when it generates attribute values.

cosAttribute: *attribute_name override*

There are four **override** qualifiers:

- **default:** Only returns a generated value if there is no corresponding attribute value stored with the entry.
- **override:** Always returns the value generated by the CoS, even when there is a value stored with the entry.
- **operational:** Returns a generated attribute only if it is explicitly requested in the search. Operational attributes do not need to pass a schema check in order to be returned. When **operational** is used, it also overrides any existing attribute values.

**NOTE**

An attribute can only be made operational if it is defined as operational in the schema. For example, if the CoS generates a value for the ***description*** attribute, it is not possible to use the **operational** qualifier because this attribute is not marked operational in the schema.

- **operational-default**: Only returns a generated value if there is no corresponding attribute value stored with the entry and if it is explicitly requested in the search.

If no qualifier is set, **default** is assumed.

For example, this pointer CoS definition entry indicates that it is associated with a template entry, **cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com**, that generates the value of the ***postalCode*** attribute. The **override** qualifier indicates that this value will take precedence over the value stored by the entries for the ***postalCode*** attribute:

```
dn: cn=pointerCoS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosPointerDefinition
cosTemplateDn: cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com
cosAttribute: postalCode override
```

**NOTE**

If an entry contains an attribute value generated by a CoS, the value of the attribute *cannot* be manually updated if it is defined with the operational or override qualifiers.

For more information about the CoS attributes, see the *Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference*.

7.2.7. Handling Multi-valued Attributes with CoS

Any attribute can be generated using a class of service – including multi-valued attributes. That introduces the potential for confusion. Which CoS supplies a value? Any of them or all of them? How is the value selected from competing CoS templates? Does the generated attribute use a single value or multiple values?

There are two ways to resolve this:

- Creating a rule to merge multiple CoS-generated attributes into the target entry. This results in multiple values in the target entry.
- Setting a priority to select one CoS value out of competing CoS definitions. This generates one single value for the target entry.

**NOTE**

Indirect CoS do not support the ***cosPriority*** attribute.

The way that the CoS handles multiple values for a CoS attribute is defined in whether it uses a *merge-schemes* qualifier.

cosAttribute: *attribute override merge-schemes*



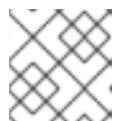
NOTE

The *merge-schemes* qualifier does not affect how the CoS handles physical attribute values or the *override* qualifier. If there are multiple competing CoS templates or definitions, then the same *merge-schemes* and *override* qualifiers have to be set on every **cosAttribute** for every competing CoS definition. Otherwise, one combination is chosen arbitrarily from all possible CoS definitions.

Using the *merge-schemes* qualifier tells the CoS that it will, or can, generate multiple values for the managed attribute. There are two possible scenarios for having a multi-valued CoS attribute:

- One CoS template entry contains multiple instances of the managed CoS attribute, resulting in multiple values on the target entry. For example:

```
dn: cn=server access template,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
accessTo: mail.example.com
accessTo: irc.example.com
```



NOTE

This method only works with classic CoS.

- Multiple CoS definitions may define a class of service for the same target attribute, so there are multiple template entries. For example:

```
dn: cn=mail template,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
accessTo: mail.example.com
```

```
dn: cn=chat template,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
accessTo: irc.example.com
```

However, it may be that even if there are multiple CoS definitions, only one value should be generated for the attribute. If there are multiple CoS definitions, then the value is chosen arbitrarily. This is an unpredictable and unwieldy option. The way to control which CoS template to use is to set a ranking on the template – a *priority* – and the highest prioritized CoS always "wins" and provides the value.

It is fairly common for there to be multiple templates competing to provide a value. For example, there can be a multi-valued **cosSpecifier** attribute in the CoS definition entry. The template priority is set using the **cosPriority** attribute. This attribute represents the global priority of a particular template. A priority of zero is the highest priority.

For example, a CoS template entry for generating a department number appears as follows:

```
dn: cn=data,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
departmentNumber: 71776
cosPriority: 0
```

This template entry contains the value for the **departmentNumber** attribute. It has a priority of zero, meaning this template takes precedence over any other conflicting templates that define a different **departmentNumber** value.

Templates that contain no **cosPriority** attribute are considered the lowest priority. Where two or more templates are considered to supply an attribute value and they have the same (or no) priority, a value is chosen arbitrarily.



NOTE

The behavior for negative **cosPriority** values is not defined in Directory Server; do not enter negative values.

7.2.8. Searches for CoS-Specified Attributes

CoS definitions provide values for attributes in entries. For example, a CoS can set the **postalCode** attribute for every entry in a subtree. Searches against those CoS-defined attributes, however, do not behave like searches against regular entries.

If the CoS-defined attribute is indexed with any kind of index (including presence), then any attribute with a value set by the CoS is not returned with a search. For example:

- The **postalCode** attribute for Ted Morris is defined by a CoS.
- The **postalCode** attribute for Barbara Jensen is set in her entry.
- The **postalCode** attribute is indexed.

If an **ldapsearch** command uses the filter **(postalCode=*)**, then Barbara Jensen's entry is returned, while Ted Morris's is not.

If the CoS-defined attribute is *not* indexed, then every matching entry is returned in a search, regardless of whether the attribute value is set locally or with CoS. For example:

- The **postalCode** attribute for Ted Morris is defined by a CoS.
- The **postalCode** attribute for Barbara Jensen is set in her entry.
- The **postalCode** attribute is *not* indexed.

If an **ldapsearch** command uses the filter **(postalCode=*)**, then both Barbara Jensen's and Ted Morris's entries are returned.

CoS allows for an *override*, an identifier given to the **cosAttribute** attribute in the CoS entry, which means that local values for an attribute can override the CoS value. If an override is set on the CoS, then an **ldapsearch** operation will return a value for an entry even if the attribute is indexed, as long as there

is a local value for the entry. Other entries which possess the CoS but do not have a local value will still not be returned in the **ldapsearch** operation.

Because of the potential issues with running LDAP search requests on CoS-defined attributes, take care when deciding which attributes to generate using a CoS.

7.2.9. Access Control and CoS

The server controls access to attributes generated by a CoS in exactly the same way as regular stored attributes. However, access control rules depending upon the value of attributes generated by CoS will not work. This is the same restriction that applies to using CoS-generated attributes in search filters.

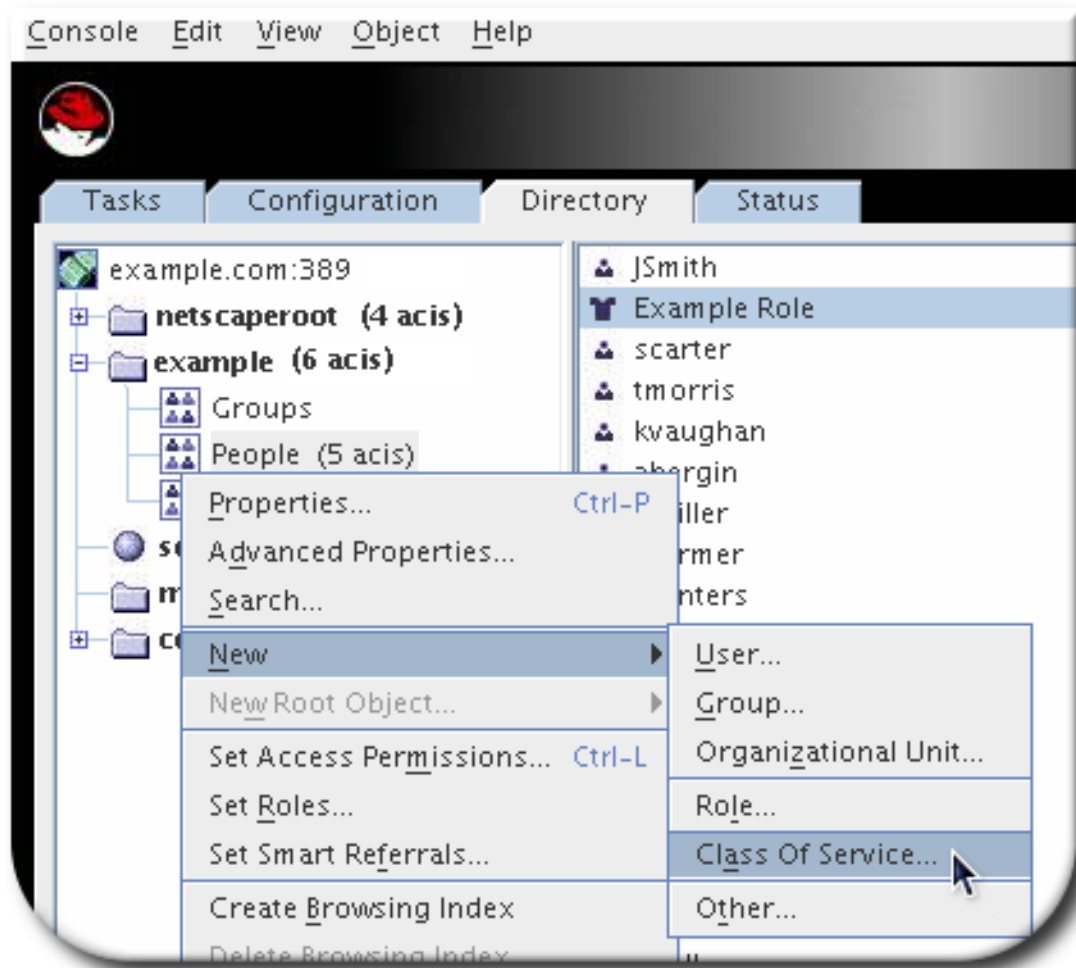
7.2.10. Managing CoS Using the Console

This section describes creating and editing CoS through the Directory Server Console:

- [Section 7.2.10.1, "Creating a New CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.10.2, "Creating the CoS Template Entry"](#)

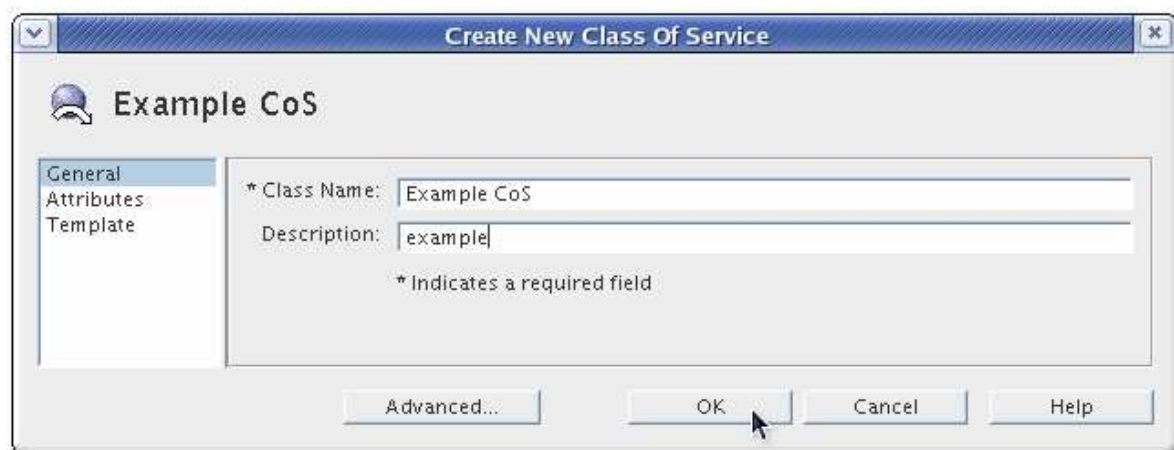
7.2.10.1. Creating a New CoS

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the parent entry for the new class of service.
3. Go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Class of Service**.



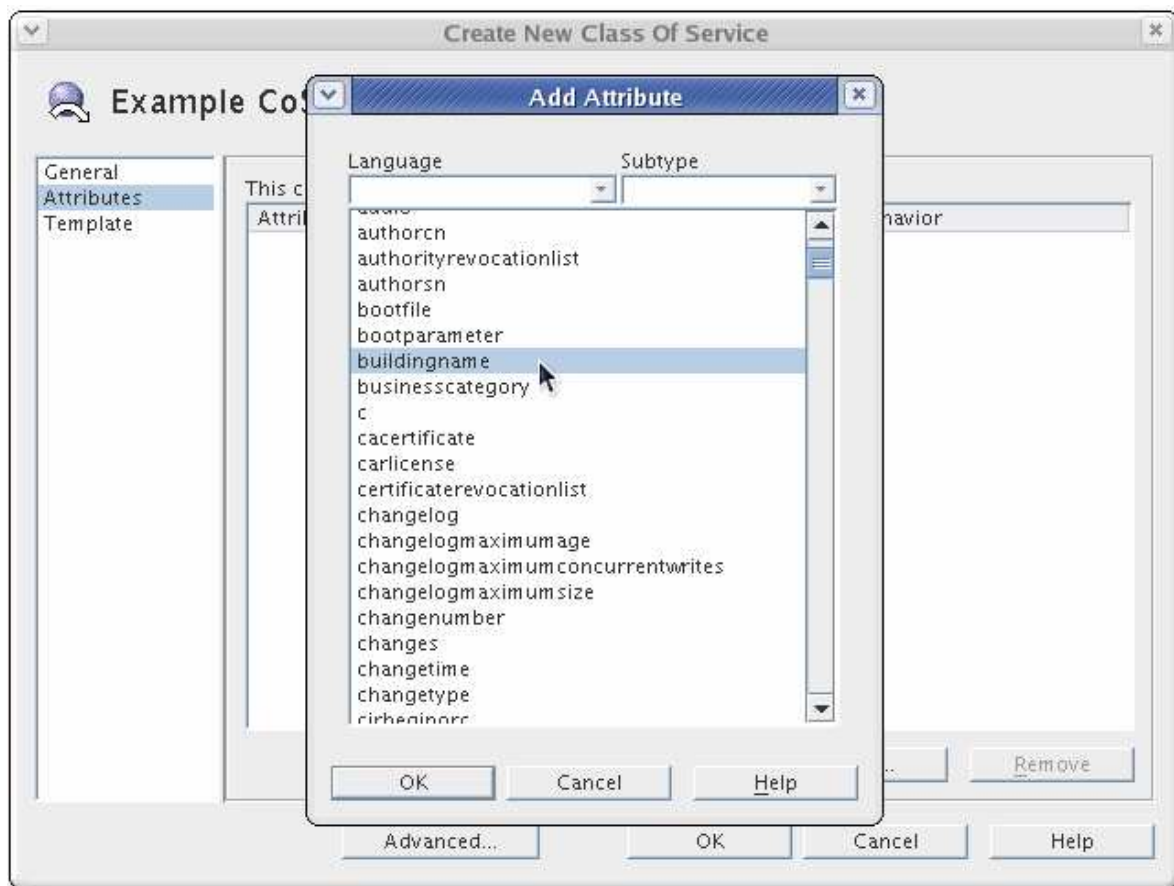
Alternatively, right-click the entry and select **New > Class of Service**.

4. Select **General** in the left pane. In the right pane, enter the name of the new class of service in the **Class Name** field. Enter a description of the class in the **Description** field.

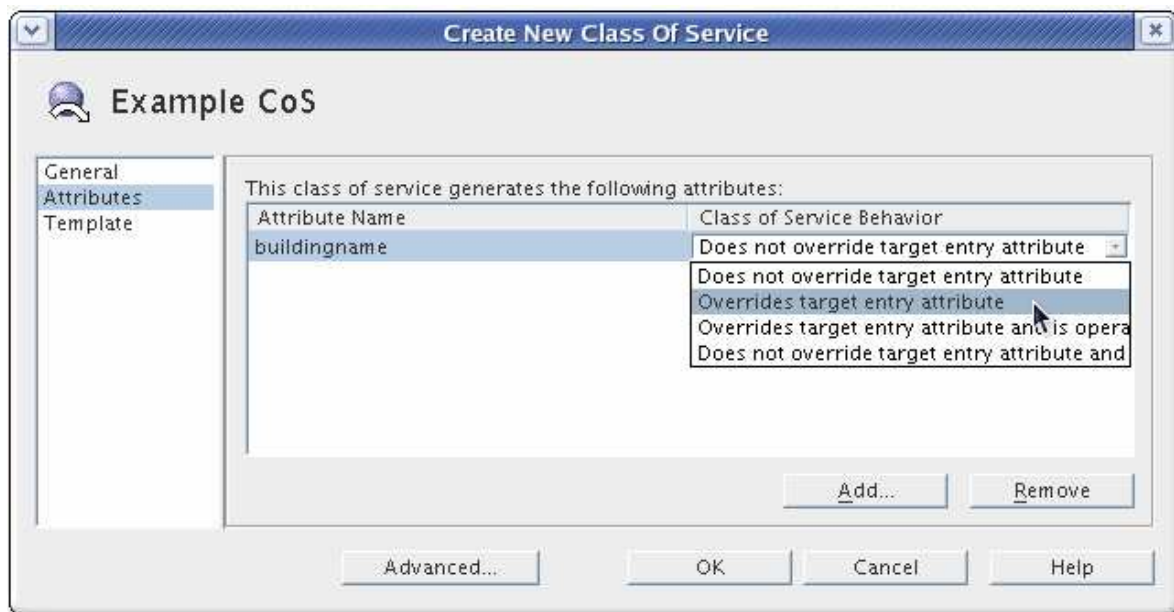


5. Click **Attributes** in the left pane. The right pane displays a list of attributes generated on the target entries.

Click **Add** to browse the list of possible attributes and add them to the list.



6. After an attribute is added to the list, a drop-down list appears in the **Class of Service Behavior** column.



- Select **Does not override target entry attribute** to tell the directory to only return a generated value if there is no corresponding attribute value stored with the entry.
- Select **Overrides target entry attribute** to make the value of the attribute generated by the CoS override the local value.

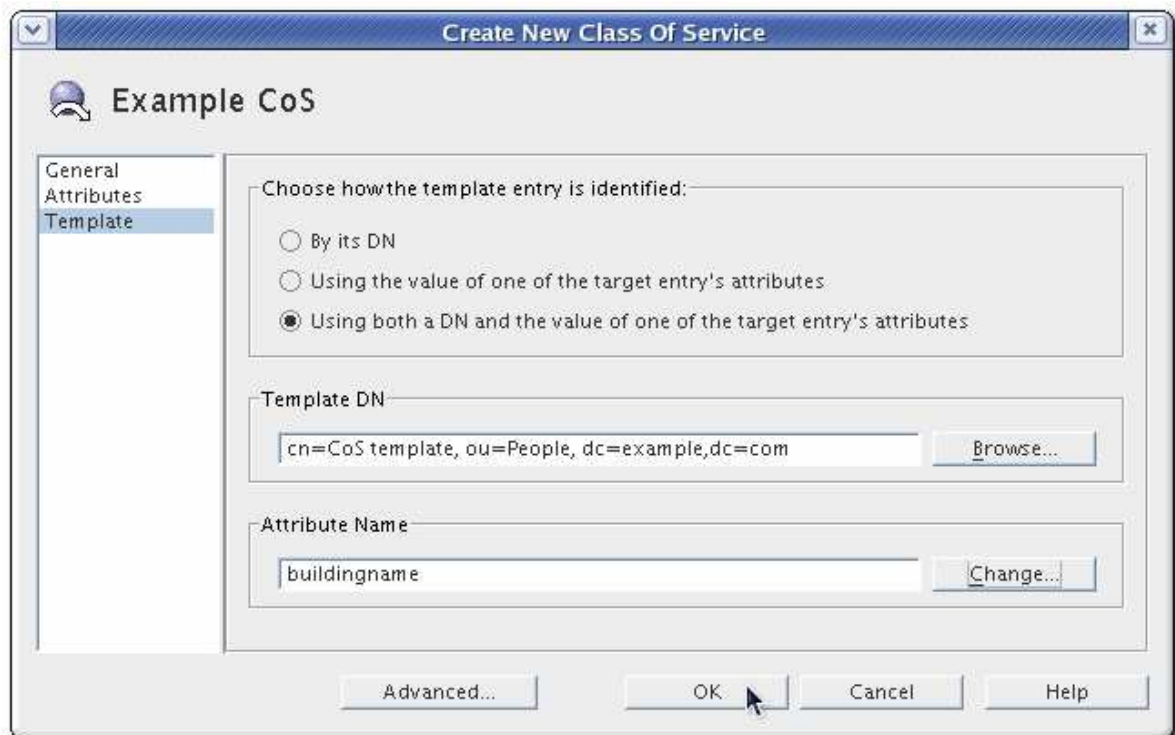
- Select **Overrides target entry attribute and is operational** to make the attribute override the local value and to make the attribute operational, so that it is not visible to client applications unless explicitly requested.
- Select **Does not override target entry attribute and is operational** to tell the directory to return a generated value only if there is no corresponding attribute value stored with the entry and to make the attribute operational (so that it is not visible to client applications unless explicitly requested).



NOTE

An attribute can only be made operational if it is also defined as operational in the schema. For example, if a CoS generates a value for the *description* attribute, you cannot select **Overrides target entry attribute and is operational** because this attribute is not marked operational in the schema.

7. Click **Template** in the left pane. In the right pane, select how the template entry is identified.



- *By its DN.* To have the template entry identified by only its DN (a pointer CoS), enter the DN of the template in the **Template DN** field. Click **Browse** to locate the DN on the local server. This will be an exact DN, such as **cn=CoS template,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**.
- *Using the value of one of the target entry's attribute.* To have the template entry identified by the value of one of the target entry's attributes (an indirect CoS), enter the attribute name in the **Attribute Name** field. Click **Change** to select a different attribute from the list of available attributes.
- *Using both its DN and the value of one of the target entry's attributes.* To have the template entry identified by both its DN and the value of one of the target entry's attributes (a classic CoS), enter both a template DN and an attribute name. The template DN in a classic CoS is more general than for a pointer CoS; it references the suffix or subsuffix where the template entries will be. There can be more than one template for a classic CoS.

8. Click **OK**.

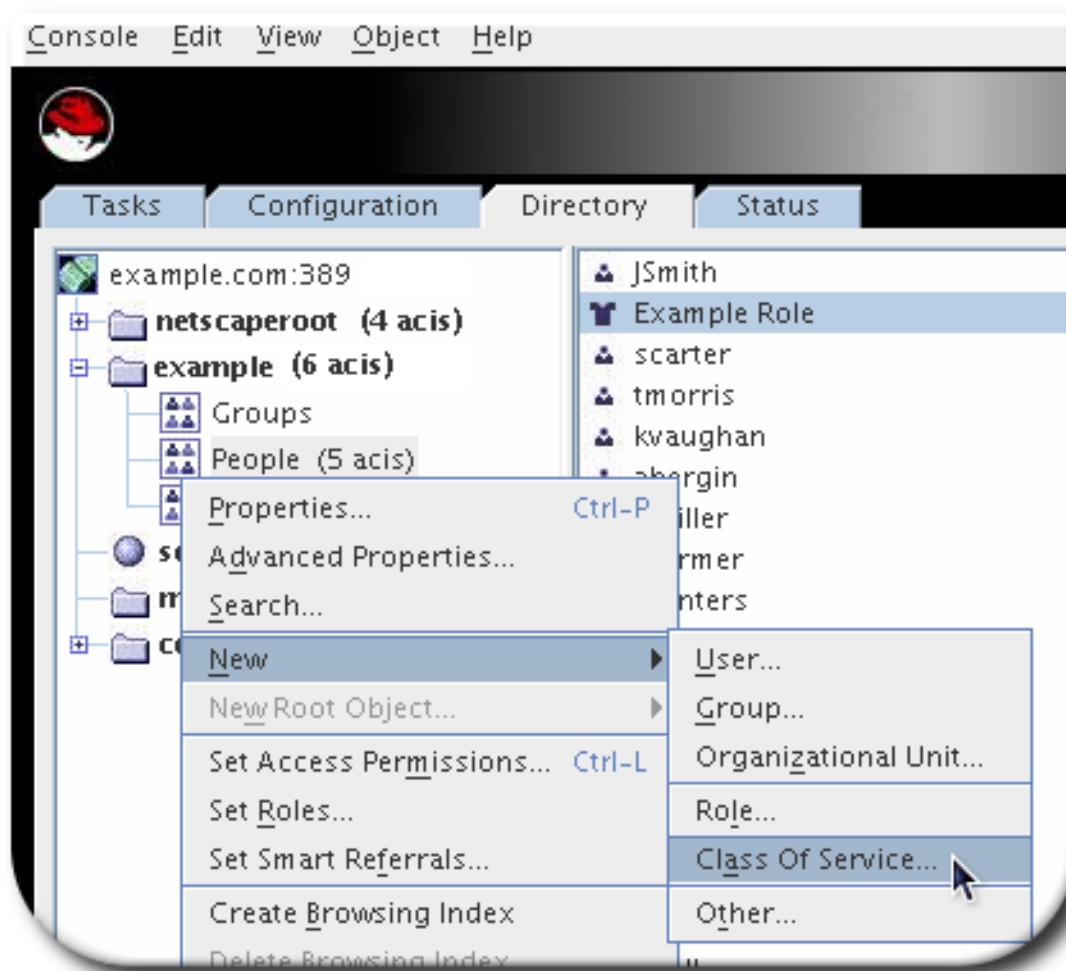
7.2.10.2. Creating the CoS Template Entry

For a pointer CoS or a classic CoS, there must be a template entry, according to the template DN set when the class of service was created. Although the template entries can be placed anywhere in the directory as long as the *cosTemplateDn* attribute reflects that DN, it is best to place the template entries under the CoS itself.

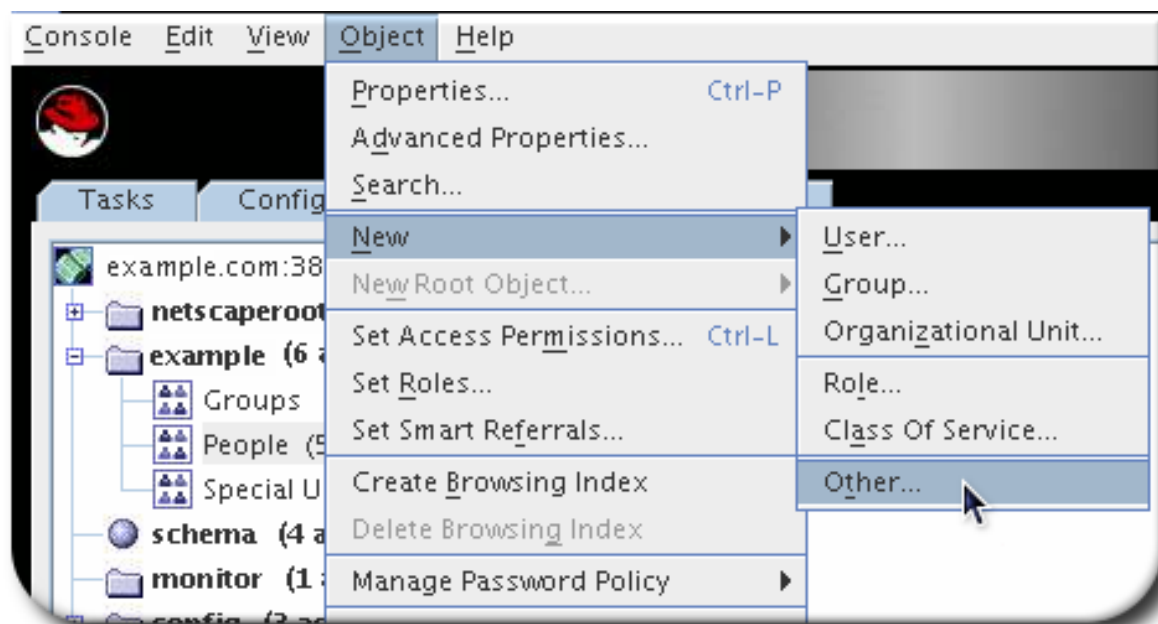
- For a pointer CoS, make sure that this entry reflects the exact DN given when the CoS was created.
- For a classic CoS, the template DN should be recursive, pointing back to the CoS entry itself as the base suffix for the template.

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the parent entry that contains the class of service.

The CoS appears in the right pane with other entries.

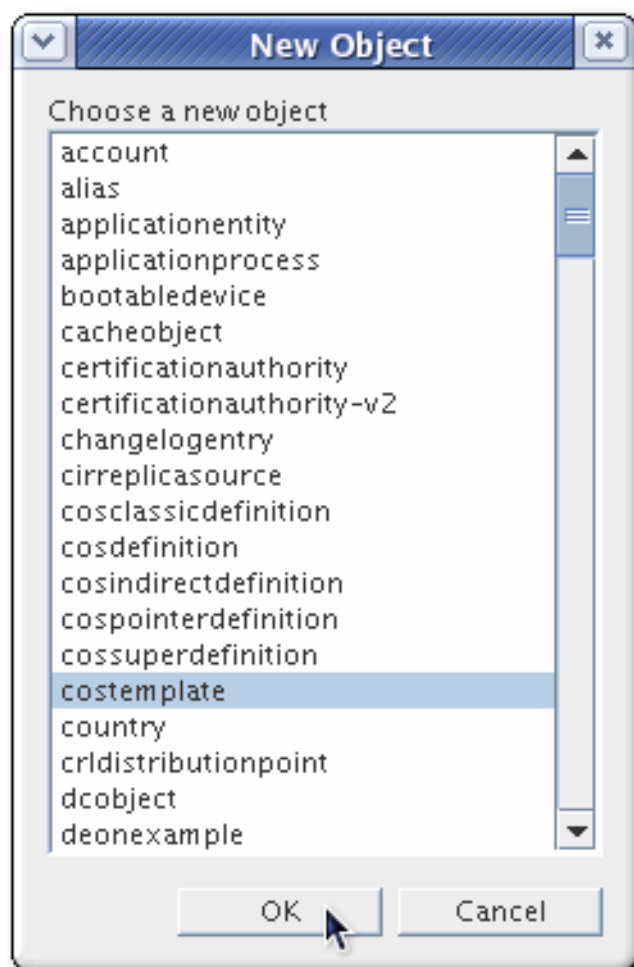


3. Right-click the CoS, and select **New > Other**.



Alternatively, select the CoS in the right pane, click **Object** in the menu at the top, and select **New > Other**.

4. Select **cosTemplate** from the list of object classes.

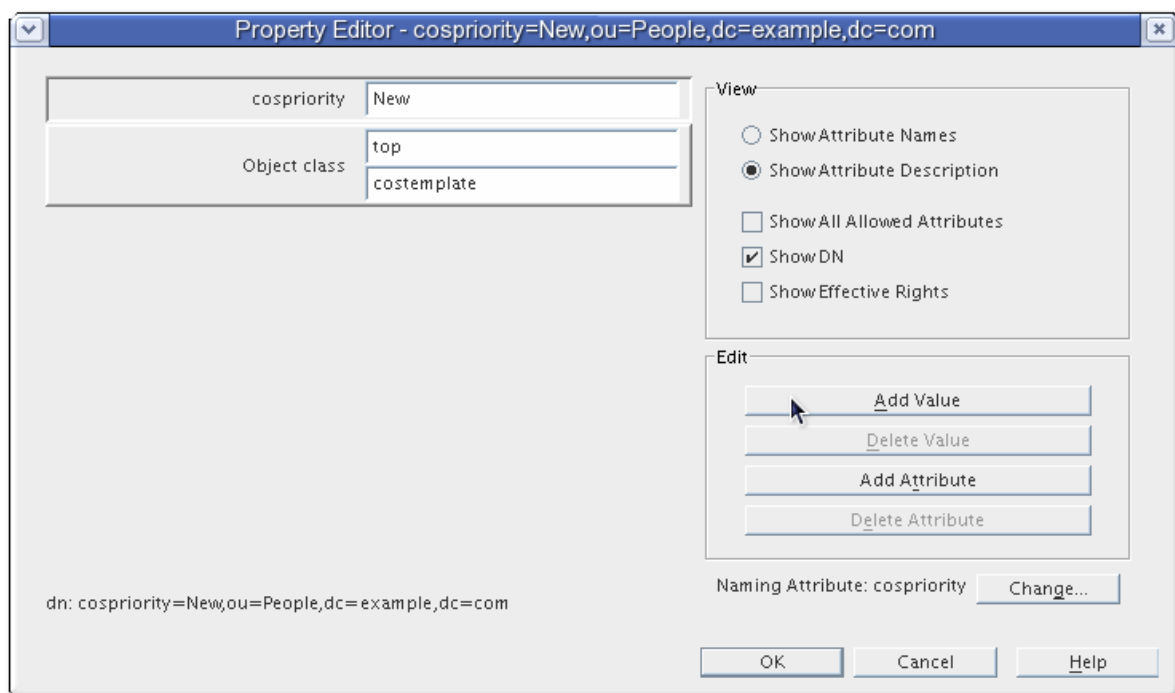




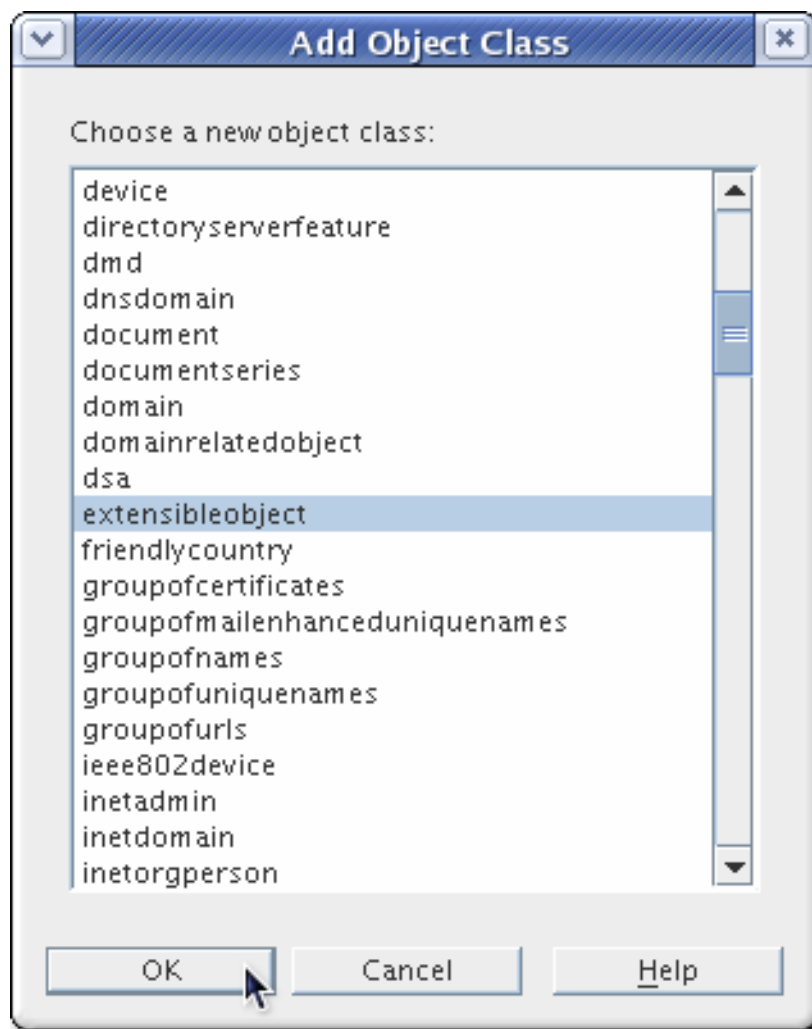
NOTE

The **LDAPsubentry** object class can be added to a new template entry. Making the CoS template entry an instance of the **LDAPsubentry** object class allows ordinary searches to be performed unhindered by the configuration entries. However, if the template entry already exists and is used for something else (for example, if it is a user entry), the **LDAPsubentry** object class does not need to be added to the template entry.

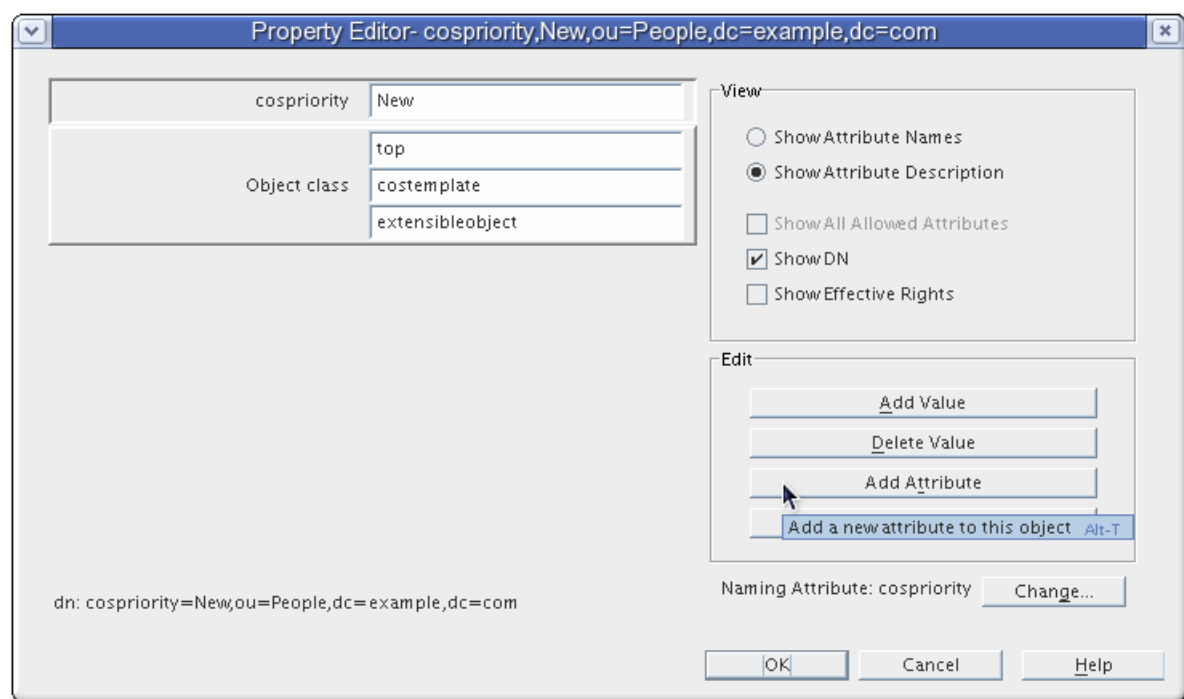
5. Select the object classes attribute, and click **Add Value**.



6. Add the **extensibleObject** object class. This makes it possible to add any attribute available in the directory.

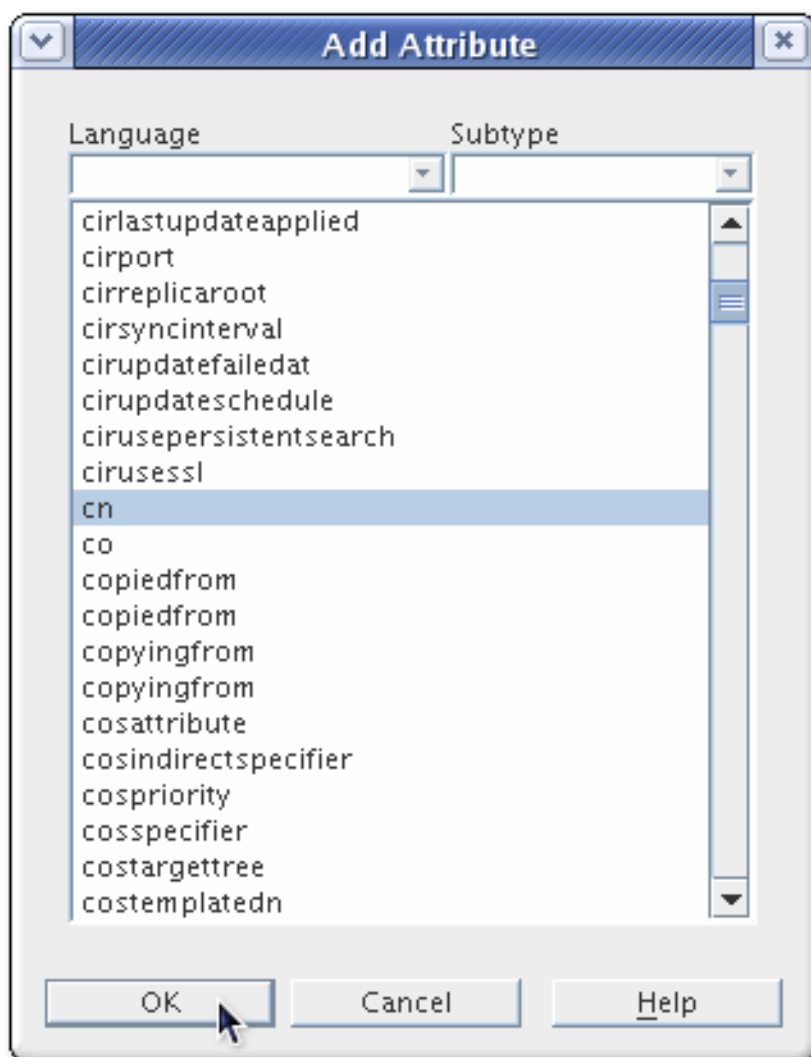


- Click the **Add Attribute** button.

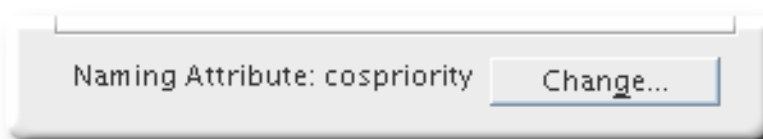


- Add the **cn** attribute, and give it a value that corresponds to the attribute value in the target entry. For example, if the **manager** attribute is used to set the value for a classic CoS, give the

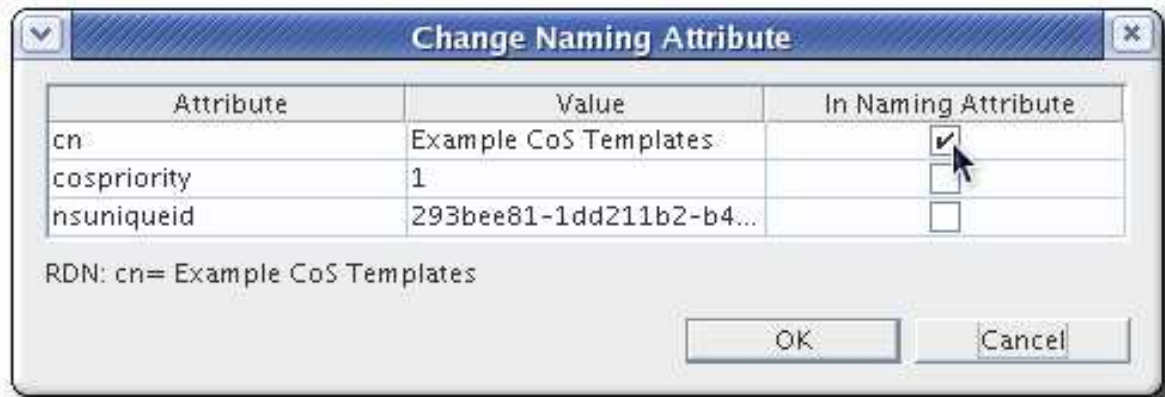
cn a value of a manager's DN, such as **uid=bparker,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**. Alternatively, set it to a role, such as **cn=QA Role,dc=example,dc=com** or a regular attribute value. For example, if the **employeeType** attribute is selected, it can be **full time** or **temporary**.



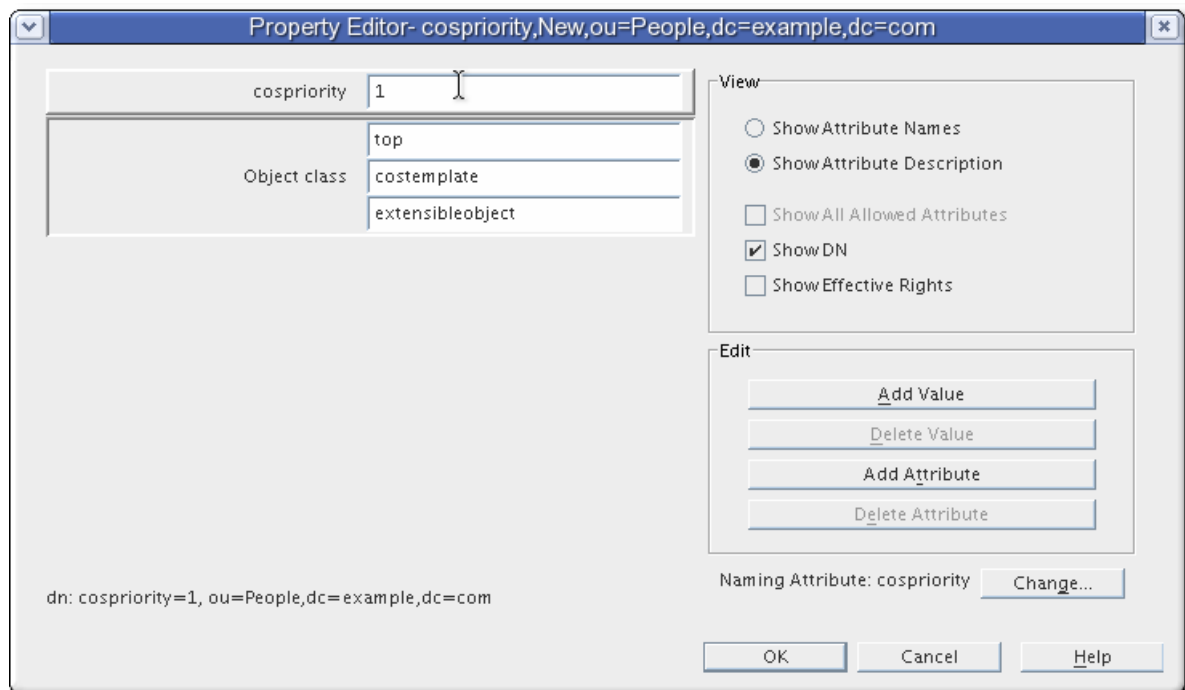
- Click the **Change** button in the lower right corner to change the naming attribute.



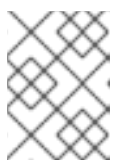
- Use the **cn** of the entry as the naming attribute instead of **cospriority**.



11. Click the **Add Attribute** button, and add the attributes listed in the CoS. The values used here will be used throughout the directory in the targeted entries.
12. Set the **cospriority**. There may be more than one CoS that applies to a given attribute in an entry; the **cospriority** attribute ranks the importance of that particular CoS. The higher **cospriority** will take precedence in a conflict. The highest priority is **0**.

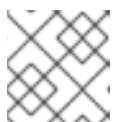


Templates that contain no **cosPriority** attribute are considered the lowest priority. In the case where two or more templates could supply an attribute value and they have the same (or no) priority, a value is chosen arbitrarily.



NOTE

The behavior for negative **cosPriority** values is not defined in Directory Server; do not enter negative values.



NOTE

The **cosPriority** attribute is not supported by indirect CoS.

The CoS is visible in the left navigation pane once there are entries beneath it. For classic CoS, there can be multiple entries, according to the different potential values of the attribute specifier.

To edit the description or attributes generated on the target entry of an existing CoS, simply double-click the CoS entry listed in the **Directory** tab, and make the appropriate changes in the editor window.

7.2.11. Managing CoS from the Command Line

Because all configuration information and template data is stored as entries in the directory, standard LDAP tools can be used for CoS configuration and management.

- [Section 7.2.11.1, "Creating the CoS Definition Entry from the Command Line"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.2, "Creating the CoS Template Entry from the Command Line"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.3, "Example of a Pointer CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.4, "Example of an Indirect CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.5, "Example of a Classic CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.6, "Searching for CoS Entries"](#)

7.2.11.1. Creating the CoS Definition Entry from the Command Line

Each type of CoS requires a particular object class to be specified in the definition entry. All CoS definition object classes inherit from the **LDAPsubentry** object class and the **cosSuperDefinition** object class.

A pointer CoS uses the **cosPointerDefinition** object class. This object class identifies the template entry using an entry DN value specified in the **cosTemplateDn** attribute, as shown in [Example 7.3, "An Example Pointer CoS Entry"](#).

Example 7.3. An Example Pointer CoS Entry

```
dn: cn=pointerCoS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosPointerDefinition
cosTemplateDn:DN_string
cosAttribute:list_of_attributes_qualifier
cn: pointerCoS
```

An indirect CoS uses the **cosIndirectDefinition** object class. This type of CoS identifies the template entry based on the value of one of the target entry's attributes, as specified in the **cosIndirectSpecifier** attribute. This is illustrated in [Example 7.4, "An Example Indirect CoS Entry"](#).

Example 7.4. An Example Indirect CoS Entry

```
dn: cn=indirectCoS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosIndirectDefinition
```

```

cosIndirectSpecifier:attribute_name
cosAttribute:list_of_attributes qualifier
cn: indirectCoS

```

A classic CoS uses the **cosClassicDefinition** object class. This identifies the template entry using both the template entry's DN (set in the **cosTemplateDn** attribute) and the value of one of the target entry's attributes (set in the **cosSpecifier** attribute). This is illustrated in [Example 7.5, "An Example Classic CoS Entry"](#).

Example 7.5. An Example Classic CoS Entry

```

dn: cn=classicCoS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosClassicDefinition
cosTemplateDn:DN_string
cosSpecifier:attribute_name
cosAttribute:list_of_attributes qualifier
cn: classicCoS

```

For a class of service, the object class defines the type of CoS, and the supporting attributes identify which directory entries are affected by defining the CoS template. Every CoS has one additional attribute which can be defined for it: **cosAttribute**. The purpose of a CoS is to supply attribute values across multiple entries; the **cosAttribute** attribute defines which attribute the CoS generates values for.

7.2.11.2. Creating the CoS Template Entry from the Command Line

Each template entry is an instance of the **cosTemplate** object class.



NOTE

Consider adding the **LDAPsubentry** object class to a new template entry. Making the CoS template entry an instance of the **LDAPsubentry** object classes allows ordinary searches to be performed unhindered by the configuration entries. However, if the template entry already exists and is used for something else, such as a user entry, the **LDAPsubentry** object class does not need to be added to the template entry.

The CoS template entry also contains the attribute generated by the CoS (as specified in the **cosAttribute** attribute of the CoS definition entry) and the value for that attribute.

For example, a CoS template entry that provides a value for the **postalCode** attribute follows:

```

dn:cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
postalCode: 44438

```

The following sections provide examples of template entries along with examples of each type of CoS definition entry.

- [Section 7.2.11.3, "Example of a Pointer CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.4, "Example of an Indirect CoS"](#)
- [Section 7.2.11.5, "Example of a Classic CoS"](#)

7.2.11.3. Example of a Pointer CoS

Example Corporation's administrator is creating a pointer CoS that shares a common postal code with all entries in the **dc=example,dc=com** tree.

1. Add a new pointer CoS definition entry to the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=pointerCoS,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosPointerDefinition
cosTemplateDn: cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com
cosAttribute: postalCode
```

2. Create the template entry:

```
dn: cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
postalCode: 44438
```

The CoS template entry (**cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com**) supplies the value stored in its **postalCode** attribute to any entries located under the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix. These entries are the target entries.

7.2.11.4. Example of an Indirect CoS

This indirect CoS uses the **manager** attribute of the target entry to identify the CoS template entry, which varies depending on the different values of the attribute.

1. Add a new indirect CoS definition entry to the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=indirectCoS,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosIndirectDefinition
cosIndirectSpecifier: manager
cosAttribute: departmentNumber
```

If the directory or modify the manager entries already contain the **departmentNumber** attribute, then no other attribute needs to be added to the manager entries. The definition entry looks in the target suffix (the entries under **dc=example,dc=com**) for entries containing the **manager** attribute because this attribute is specified in the **cosIndirectSpecifier** attribute of the definition entry). It then checks the **departmentNumber** value in the manager entry that is listed. The value of the **departmentNumber**

attribute will automatically be relayed to all of the manager's subordinates that have the **manager** attribute. The value of **departmentNumber** will vary depending on the department number listed in the different manager's entries.

7.2.11.5. Example of a Classic CoS

The Example Corporation administrator is creating a classic CoS that automatically generates postal codes using a combination of the template DN and the attribute specified in the **cosSpecifier** attribute.

1. Add a new classic CoS definition entry to the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=classicCoS,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosClassicDefinition
cosTemplateDn: cn=classicCoS,dc=example,dc=com
cosSpecifier: businessCategory
cosAttribute: postalCode override
```

2. Create the template entries for the sales and marketing departments. Add the CoS attributes to the template entry. The **cn** of the template sets the value of the **businessCategory** attribute in the target entry, and then the attributes are added or overwritten according to the value in the template:

```
dn: cn=sales,cn=classicCoS,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
postalCode: 44438

dn: cn=marketing,cn=classicCoS,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
postalCode: 99111
```

The classic CoS definition entry applies to all entries under the **dc=example,dc=com** suffix. Depending upon the combination of the **businessCategory** attribute found in the entry and the **cosTemplateDn**, it can arrive at one of two templates. One, the sales template, provides a postal code specific to employees in the sales department. The marketing template provides a postal code specific to employees in the marketing department.

7.2.11.6. Searching for CoS Entries

CoS definition entries are *operational* entries and are not returned by default with regular searches. This means that if a CoS is defined under **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**, for example, the following **ldapsearch** command will not return them:

```
ldapsearch -x -s sub -b ou=People,dc=example,dc=com "(objectclass=*)"
```


To return the CoS definition entries, add the **ldapSubEntry** object class to the CoS definition entries. For example:

```
dn: cn=pointerCoS,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosPointerDefinition
objectclass: ldapSubEntry
cosTemplateDn: cn=exampleUS,ou=data,dc=example,dc=com
cosAttribute: postalCode override
```

Then use a special search filter, **(objectclass=ldapSubEntry)**, with the search. This filter can be added to any other search filter using OR (|):

```
ldapsearch -x -s sub -b ou=People,dc=example,dc=com "(|(objectclass=*)
(objectclass=ldapSubEntry))"
```

This search returns all regular entries in addition to CoS definition entries in the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** subtree.



NOTE

The Console automatically shows CoS entries.

7.2.12. Creating Role-Based Attributes

Classic CoS schemes generate attribute values for an entry based on the role possessed by the entry. For example, role-based attributes can be used to set the server look-through limit on an entry-by-entry basis.

To create a role-based attribute, use the **nsRole** attribute as the **cosSpecifier** in the CoS definition entry of a classic CoS. Because the **nsRole** attribute can be multi-valued, CoS schemes can be defined that have more than one possible template entry. To resolve the ambiguity of which template entry to use, include the **cosPriority** attribute in the CoS template entry.

For example, this CoS allows members of the manager role to exceed the standard mailbox quota. The manager role entry is:

```
dn: cn=ManagerRole,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsComplexRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsFilteredRoleDefinition
cn: ManagerRole
nsRoleFilter: ou=managers
Description: filtered role for managers
```



IMPORTANT

The **nsRoleFilter** attribute cannot accept virtual attribute values.

The classic CoS definition entry looks like:

```
dn: cn=managerCOS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: cosSuperDefinition
objectclass: cosClassicDefinition
cosTemplateDn: cn=managerCOS,dc=example,dc=com
cosSpecifier: nsRole
cosAttribute: mailboxquota override
```

The ***cosTemplateDn*** attribute provides a value that, in combination with the attribute specified in the ***cosSpecifier*** attribute (in the example, the ***nsRole*** attribute of the target entry), identifies the CoS template entry. The CoS template entry provides the value for the ***mailboxquota*** attribute. An additional qualifier of ***override*** tells the CoS to override any existing ***mailboxquota*** attributes values in the target entry.

The corresponding CoS template entry looks as follows:

```
dn:cn="cn=ManagerRole,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com",cn=managerCOS,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: cosTemplate
mailboxquota: 1000000
```

The template provides the value for the ***mailboxquota*** attribute, **1000000**.



NOTE

The role entry and the CoS definition and template entries should be located at the same level in the directory tree.

7.3. LINKING ATTRIBUTES TO MANAGE ATTRIBUTE VALUES

A class of service dynamically supplies attribute values for entries which all have attributes with the *same value*, like building addresses, postal codes, or main office numbers. These are shared attribute values, which are updated in a single template entry.

Frequently, though, there are relationships between entries where there needs to be a way to express linkage between them, but the values (and possibly even the attributes) that express that relationship are different. Red Hat Directory Server provides a way to link specified attributes together, so that when one attribute in one entry is altered, a corresponding attribute on a related entry is automatically updated. (The link and managed attributes both have DN values. The value of the link attribute contains the DN of the entry for the plug-in to update; the managed attribute in the second entry has a DN value which points back to the original link entry.)

7.3.1. About Linking Attributes

The Linked Attributes Plug-in, allows multiple instances of the plug-in. Each instance configures one attribute which is manually maintained by the administrator (***linkType***) and one attribute which is automatically maintained by the plug-in (***managedType***).

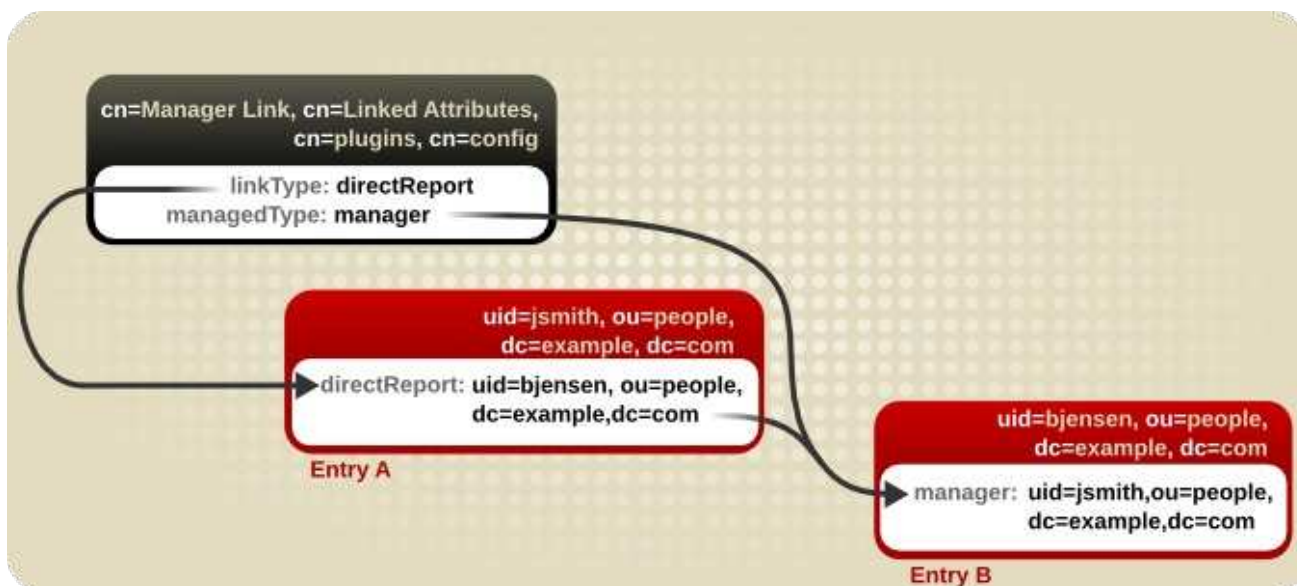


Figure 7.4. Basic Linked Attribute Configuration



NOTE

To preserve data consistency, only the plug-in process should maintain the managed attribute. Consider creating an ACI that will restrict all write access to any managed attribute. See [Section 18.8, "Adding an ACI"](#) for information on setting ACIs.

A Linked Attribute Plug-in instance can be restricted to a single subtree within the directory. This can allow more flexible customization of attribute combinations and affected entries. If no scope is set, then the plug-in operates in the entire directory.

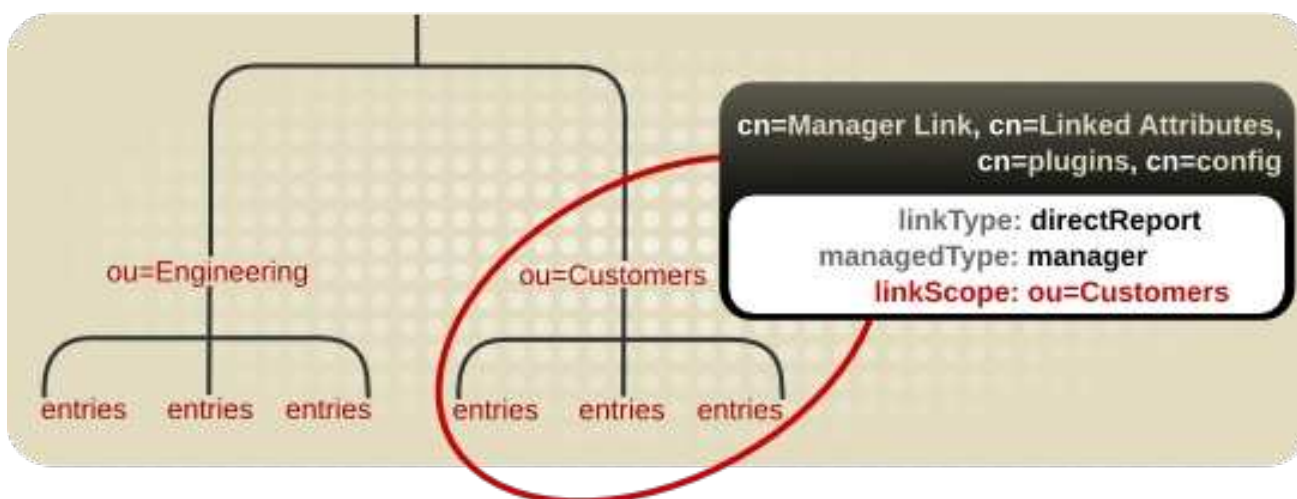


Figure 7.5. Restricting the Linked Attribute Plug-in to a Specific Subtree

When configuring the Linked Attribute Plug-in instance, certain configurations are required:

- Both the managed attribute and linked attribute must require the Distinguished Name syntax in their attribute definitions. The linked attributes are essentially managed cross-references, and the way that the plug-in handles these cross-references is by pulling the DN of the entry from the attribute value.

For information on planning custom schema elements, see [Chapter 12, Managing the Directory Schema](#).

- Each Linked Attribute Plug-in instance must be local and any *managed* attributes must be blocked from replication using fractional replication.

Any changes that are made on one supplier will automatically trigger the plug-in to manage the values on the corresponding directory entries, so the data stay consistent across servers. However, the managed attributes must be maintained by the plug-in instance for the data to be consistent between the linked entries. This means that managed attribute values should be maintained solely by the plug-in processes, not the replication process, even in a multi-master replication environment.

For information on using fractional replication, see [Section 15.1.7, “Replicating a Subset of Attributes with Fractional Replication”](#).

7.3.2. Looking at the Linking Attributes Plug-in Syntax

The default Linked Attributes Plug-in entry is a container entry for each plug-in instance, similar to the password syntax plug-ins or the DNA Plug-in in the next section. Each entry beneath this container entry defines a different link-managed attribute pair.

To create a new linking attribute pair, then, create a new plug-in instance beneath the container entry. A basic linking attribute plug-in instance required defining two things:

- The attribute that is managed manually by administrators, in the *linkType* attribute
- The attribute that is created dynamically by the plug-in, in the *managedType* attribute
- Optionally, a scope that restricts the plug-in to a specific part of the directory tree, in the *linkScope* attribute

Example 7.6. Example Linked Attributes Plug-in Instance Entry

```
dn: cn=Manager Link,cn=Linked Attributes,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: Manager Link
linkType: directReport
managedType: manager
linkScope: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

All of the attributes available for an instance of the Linked Attributes Plug-in instance are listed in [Table 7.2, “Linked Attributes Plug-in Instance Attributes”](#).

Table 7.2. Linked Attributes Plug-in Instance Attributes

Plug-in Attribute	Description
cn	Gives a unique name for the plug-in instance.
linkScope	Contains the DN of a suffix to which to restrict the function of the plug-in instance.

Plug-in Attribute	Description
linkType	Gives the attribute which is maintained by an administrator. This attribute is manually maintained and is used as the reference for the plug-in. This attribute must have a DN value format. When the attribute is added, modified, or deleted, then its value contains the DN of the target entry for the plug-in to update.
managedType	Gives the attribute which is maintained by the plug-in. This attribute is created and updated on target entries. This attribute must have a DN value format. When the attribute is added to the entry, its value will point back as a cross-reference to the managed entry.

7.3.3. Configuring Attribute Links



NOTE

The Linked Attribute Plug-in instance can be created in the Directory Server Console, but only through the Advanced Property Editor for the directory entry, by manually adding all of the required attributes, the same as creating the entry manually through the command line.

1. If it is not already enabled, enable the Linked Attributes Plug-in, as described in [Section 1.9.2.2, “Enabling Plug-ins in the Directory Server Console”](#) or [Section 1.9.1, “Enabling Plug-ins Dynamically”](#).
2. Create the plug-in instance. Both the *managedType* and *linkType* attributes are required. The plug-in syntax is covered in [Section 7.3.2, “Looking at the Linking Attributes Plug-in Syntax”](#). The following example shows the plug-in instance created by using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Manager Link,cn=Linked Attributes,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: Manager Link
linkType: directReport
managedType: manager
```

3. If the server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-ins using *nsslapd-dynamic-plugins*, restart the server to apply the new plug-in instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv.target
```

7.3.4. Cleaning up Attribute Links

The managed-linked attributes can get out of sync. For instance, a linked attribute could be imported or replicated over to a server, but the corresponding managed attribute was not because the link attribute was not properly configured. The managed-linked attribute pairs can be fixed by running a script (**fixup-linkedattrs.pl**) or by launching a fix-up task.

The `fixup` task removes any managed attributes (attributes managed by the plug-in) that do not have a corresponding link attribute (attributes managed by the administrator) on the referenced entry. Conversely, the task adds any missing managed attributes if the link attribute exists in an entry.

7.3.4.1. Regenerating Linked Attributes Using `fixup-linkedattrs.pl`

The `fixup-linkedattrs.pl` script launches a special task to regenerate all of the managed-link attribute pairs on directory entries. One or the other may be lost in certain situations. If the link attribute exists in an entry, the task traces the cross-referenced DN in the available attribute and creates the corresponding configured managed attribute on the referenced entry. If a managed attribute exists with no corresponding link attribute, then the managed attribute value is removed.

To repair all configured link attribute pairs for the entire scope of the plug-in, then simply run the command as the Directory Manager:

```
# fixup-linkedattrs.pl -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w password
```

It is also possible to limit the `fixup` task to a single link-managed attribute pair, using the `-l` option to specify the target plug-in instance DN:

```
# fixup-linkedattrs.pl -D "cn=Directory Manager" -w password -l "cn=Manager Link,cn=Linked
Attributes,cn=plugins,cn=config"
```

For information about the parameters used in the examples, see the description of the `fixup-linkedattrs.pl` script in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

7.3.4.2. Regenerating Linked Attributes Using `ldapmodify`

Repairing linked attributes is one of the tasks which can be managed through a special task configuration entry. Task entries occur under the `cn=tasks` configuration entry in the `dse.ldif` file, so it is also possible to initiate a task by adding the entry using `ldapmodify`. When the task is complete, the entry is removed from the directory.

This task is the same one created automatically by the `fixup-linkedattrs.pl` script when it is run.

To initiate a linked attributes `fixup` task, add an entry under the `cn=fixup linked attributes,cn=tasks,cn=config` entry. The only required attribute is the `cn` for the specific task, though it also allows the `ttl` attribute to set a timeout period. Using `ldapmodify`:

```
dn: cn=example,cn=fixup linked attributes,cn=tasks,cn=config
changetype: add
cn:example
ttl: 5
```

Once the task is completed, the entry is deleted from the `dse.ldif` configuration, so it is possible to reuse the same task entry continually.

The `cn=fixup linked attributes` task configuration is described in more detail in the [Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

7.4. ASSIGNING AND MANAGING UNIQUE NUMERIC ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Some entry attributes require having a unique number, such as *uidNumber* and *gidNumber*. The Directory Server can automatically generate and supply unique numbers for specified attributes using the Distributed Numeric Assignment (DNA) Plug-in.



NOTE

Attribute uniqueness is not necessarily preserved with the DNA Plug-in. The plug-in only assigns non-overlapping ranges, but it does allow manually-assigned numbers for its managed attributes, and it does not verify or require that the manually-assigned numbers are unique.

The issue with assigning unique numbers is not with generating the numbers but in effectively avoiding replication conflicts. The DNA Plug-in assigns unique numbers across a *single* back end. For multi-master replication, when each master is running a local DNA Plug-in instance, there has to be a way to ensure that each instance is using a truly unique set of numbers. This is done by assigning different *ranges* of numbers to each server to assign.

7.4.1. About Dynamic Number Assignments

The DNA Plug-in for a server assigns a range of available numbers that that instance can issue. The range definition is very simple and is set by two attributes: the server's next available number (the low end of the range) and its maximum value (the top end of the range). The initial bottom range is set when the plug-in instance is configured. After that, the bottom value is updated by the plug-in. By breaking the available numbers into separate ranges on each replica, the servers can all continually assign numbers without overlapping with each other.

7.4.1.1. Filters, Searches, and Target Entries

The server performs a sorted search, internally, to see if the next specified range is already taken, requiring the managed attribute to have an equality index with the proper ordering matching rule (as described in [Section 13.2, "Creating Standard Indexes"](#)).

The DNA Plug-in is applied, always, to a specific area of the directory tree (the *scope*) and to specific entry types within that subtree (the *filter*).



IMPORTANT

The DNA Plug-in only works on a single back end; it cannot manage number assignments for multiple databases. The DNA plug-in uses the sort control when checking whether a value has already been manually allocated outside of the DNA Plug-in. This validation, using the sort control, only works on a single back end.

7.4.1.2. Ranges and Assigning Numbers

There are several different ways that the Directory Server can handle generating attribute values:

- In the simplest case, a user entry is added to the directory with an object class which requires the unique-number attribute, but without the attribute present. Adding an entry with no value for the managed attribute triggers the DNA Plug-in to assign a value. This option only works if the DNA Plug-in has been configured to assign unique values to a single attribute.
- A similar and more manageable option is to use a *magic number*. This magic number is a template value for the managed attribute, something outside the server's range, a number or even a word, that the plug-in recognizes it needs to replace with a new assigned value. When an

entry is added with the magic value and the entry is within the scope and filter of the configured DNA Plug-in, then using the magic number automatically triggers the plug-in to generate a new value. The following example, based on using **ldapmodify**, adds 0 as a magic number:

```
dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: posixAccount
uid: jsmith
cn: John Smith
uidNumber: 0
gidNumber: 0
....
```

The DNA Plug-in only generates new, unique values. If an entry is added or modified to use a specific value for an attribute controlled by the DNA Plug-in, the specified number is used; the DNA Plug-in will not overwrite it.

7.4.1.3. Multiple Attributes in the Same Range

The DNA Plug-in can assign unique numbers to a single attribute type or across multiple attribute types from a single range of unique numbers.

This provides several options for assigning unique numbers to attributes:

- A single number assigned to a single attribute type from a single range of unique numbers.
- The same unique number assigned to two attributes for a single entry.
- Two different attributes assigned two different numbers from the same range of unique numbers.

In many cases, it is sufficient to have a unique number assigned per attribute type. When assigning an **employeeID** to a new employee entry, it is important each employee entry is assigned a unique **employeeID**.

However, there are cases where it may be useful to assign unique numbers from the same range of numbers to multiple attributes. For example, when assigning a **uidNumber** and a **gidNumber** to a **posixAccount** entry, the DNA Plug-in will assign the same number to both attributes. To do this, then pass both managed attributes to the modify operation, specifying the magic value. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x

dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: uidNumber
uidNumber: 0
-
add:gidNumber
gidNumber: 0
```

When multiple attributes are handled by the DNA Plug-in, the plug-in can assign a unique value to only one of those attributes if the object class only allows one of them. For example, the **posixGroup** object class does not allow a **uidNumber** attribute but it does allow **gidNumber**. If the DNA Plug-in manages

both **uidNumber** and **gidNumber**, then when a **posixGroup** entry is created, a unique number for **gidNumber** is assigned from the same range as the **uidNumber** and **gidNumber** attributes. Using the same pool for all attributes managed by the plug-in keeps the assignment of unique numbers aligned and prevents situations where a **uidNumber** and a **gidNumber** on different entries are assigned from different ranges and result in the same *unique* number.

If multiple attributes are handled by the DNA Plug-in, then the same value will be assigned to all of the given managed attributes in an entry in a single modify operation. To assign *different* numbers from the same range, then you must perform separate modify operations. The following example uses **ldapmodify** to do so:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: uidNumber
uidNumber: 0
^D
```

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: employeeld
employeeld: magic
```



IMPORTANT

When the DNA Plug-in is configured to assign unique numbers to multiple attributes, it is necessary to specify the magic value for each attribute that requires the unique number. While this is not necessary when the DNA plug-in has been configured to provide unique numbers for a single attribute, it is necessary for multiple attributes. There may be instances where an entry does not allow each type of attribute defined for the range, or, more important, an entry allow all of the attributes types defined, but only a subset of the attributes require the unique value.

Example 7.7. DNA and Unique Bank Account Numbers

Example Bank wants to use the same unique number for a customer's **primaryAccount** and **customerID** attributes. The Example Bank administrator configured the DNA Plug-in to assign unique values for both attributes from the same range.

The bank also wants to assign numbers for secondary accounts from the same range as the customer ID and primary account numbers, but these numbers cannot be the same as the primary account numbers. The Example Bank administrator configures the DNA Plug-in to also manage the **secondaryAccount** attribute, but will only add the **secondaryAccount** attribute to an entry *after* the entry is created and the **primaryAccount** and **customerID** attributes are assigned. This ensures that **primaryAccount** and **customerID** share the same unique number, and any **secondaryAccount** numbers are entirely unique but still from the same range of numbers.

7.4.2. Looking at the DNA Plug-in Syntax

The DNA Plug-in itself is a container entry, similar to the Password Storage Schemes Plug-in. Each DNA entry underneath the DNA Plug-in entry defines a new managed range for the DNA Plug-in.

To set new managed ranges for the DNA Plug-in, create entries beneath the container entry.

The most basic configuration is to set up distributed numeric assignments on a single server, meaning the ranges will not be shared or transferred between servers. A basic DNA configuration entry defines four things:

- The attribute that value is being managed, set in the ***dnaType*** attribute
- The entry DN to use as the base to search for entries, set in the ***dnaScope*** attribute
- The search filter to use to identify entries to manage, set in the ***dnaFilter*** attribute
- The next available value to assign, set in the ***dnaNextValue*** attribute (after the entry is created, this is handled by the plug-in)

For a list of attributes supported in the ***cn=DNA_config_entry,cn=Distributed Numeric Assignment Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config*** entry, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

To configure distributed numeric assignment on a single server for a single attribute type:

```
dn: cn=Account UIDs,cn=Distributed Numeric Assignment Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: dnaPluginConfig
cn: Account UIDs
dnatype: uidNumber
dnafilter: (objectclass=posixAccount)
dnascope: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
dnaNextValue: 1
```

If multiple suppliers are configured for distributed numeric assignments, then the entry must contain the required information to transfer ranges:

- The maximum number that the server can assign; this sets the upward bound for the range, which is logically required when multiple servers are assigning numbers. This is set in the ***dnaMaxValue*** attribute.
- The threshold where the range is low enough to trigger a range transfer, set in the ***dnaThreshold*** attribute. If this is not set, the default value is **1**.
- A timeout period so that the server does not hang waiting for a transfer, set in the ***dnaRangeRequestTimeout*** attribute. If this is not set, the default value is **10**, meaning 10 seconds.
- A configuration entry DN which is shared among all supplier servers, which stores the range information for each supplier, set in the ***dnaSharedCfgDN*** attribute.

The specific number range which could be assigned by the server is defined in the ***dnaNextRange*** attribute. This shows the next available range for transfer and is managed automatically by the plug-in, as ranges are assigned or used by the server. This range is just "on deck." It has not yet been assigned to another server and is still available for its local Directory Server to use.

```
dn: cn=Account UIDs,cn=Distributed Numeric Assignment Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: dnaPluginConfig
cn: Account UIDs
```

```

dnatype: uidNumber
dnafilter: (objectclass=posixAccount)
dnascope: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
dnanextvalue: 1
dnaMaxValue: 1300
dnasharedcfgdn: cn=Account UIDs,ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=com
dnathreshold: 100
dnaRangeRequestTimeout: 60
dnaNextRange: 1301-2301

```

The ***dnaNextRange*** attribute should be set explicitly only if a separate, specific range has to be assigned to other servers. Any range set in the ***dnaNextRange*** attribute must be unique from the available range for the other servers to avoid duplication. If there is no request from the other servers and the server where ***dnaNextRange*** is set explicitly has reached its set ***dnaMaxValue***, the next set of values (part of the ***dnaNextRange***) is allocated from this deck.

The ***dnaNextRange*** allocation is also limited by the ***dnaThreshold*** attribute that is set in the DNA configuration. Any range allocated to another server for ***dnaNextRange*** cannot violate the threshold for the server, even if the range is available on the deck of ***dnaNextRange***.



NOTE

If the ***dnaNextRange*** attribute is handled internally if it is not set explicitly. When it is handled automatically, the ***dnaMaxValue*** attribute serves as upper limit for the next range.

Each supplier keeps a track of its current range in a separate configuration entry which contains information about its range and its connection settings. This entry is a child of the location in ***dnasharedcfgdn***. The configuration entry is replicated to all of the other suppliers, so each supplier can check that configuration to find a server to contact for a new range. For example:

```

dn: dnaHostname=ldap1.example.com+dnaPortNum=389,cn=Account
UIDs,ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=com
objectClass: dnaSharedConfig
objectClass: top
dnahostname: ldap1.example.com
dnaPortNum: 389
dnaSecurePortNum: 636
dnaRemainingValues: 1000

```

7.4.3. Configuring Unique Number Assignments

The unique number distribution is configured by creating different instances of the DNA Plug-in. These DNA Plug-in instances can only be created through the command line, but they can be edited through the Directory Server Console.

7.4.3.1. Configuring Unique Number Assignments

**NOTE**

Any attribute which has a unique number assigned to it must have an equality index set for it. The server must perform a sorted search, internally, to see if the ***dnaNextvalue*** is already taken, which requires an equality index on an integer attribute, with the proper ordering matching rule.

Creating indexes is described in [Section 13.2, "Creating Standard Indexes"](#).

**NOTE**

Set up the DNA Plug-in on every supplier server, and be careful not to overlap the number range values.

1. Create the shared container entry in the replicated subtree. The following example uses **ldapmodify** to do so:

```
dn: ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=coma
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
objectclass: organizationalUnit
ou: Ranges
```

```
dn: cn=Account UIDs,ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=coma
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: extensibleObject
cn: Account UIDs
```

2. Enable the DNA Plug-in and configure it as dynamic. By default, the plug-in entry (which is the container entry) is disabled. For details on configuring dynamic plug-ins, see [Section 1.9.1, "Enabling Plug-ins Dynamically"](#).
3. Create the new DNA Plug-in instance beneath the container entry. For example:

**NOTE**

The plug-in attribute which sets which entry attributes have unique number assignments, ***dnaType***, is multi-valued. If multiple attributes are set in the same plug-in instance, then their number assignments are taken from the same range. To use different ranges, configure different plug-in instances.

Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Account UIDs,cn=Distributed Numeric Assignment Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: dnaPluginConfig
cn: Account UIDs
dnatype: uidNumber
dnafilter: (objectclass=posixAccount)
```

```
dnascope: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
dnanextvalue: 1
dnaMaxValue: 1300
dnasharedcfgdn: cn=Account UIDs,ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=com
dnathreshold: 100
dnaRangeRequestTimeout: 60
dnaMagicRegen: magic
```

For a list of attributes supported in the **cn=DNA_config_entry,cn=Distributed Numeric Assignment Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry, see the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

4. For servers in multi-master replication, create a configuration entry for the host, which specifies its connection information and range.

The DN of the entry is a combination of the host name and the port number (**dnahostname+dnaPortNum**).

Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: dnahostname=ldap1.example.com+dnaPortNum=389,cn=Account
UIDs,ou=Ranges,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: dnaSharedConfig
objectClass: top
dnahostname: ldap1.example.com
dnaPortNum: 389
dnaSecurePortNum: 636
dnaRemainingValues: 1000
```

5. If the server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-in, restart the server to load the new plug-in instance.

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance
```

7.4.3.2. Editing the DNA Plug-in in the Console



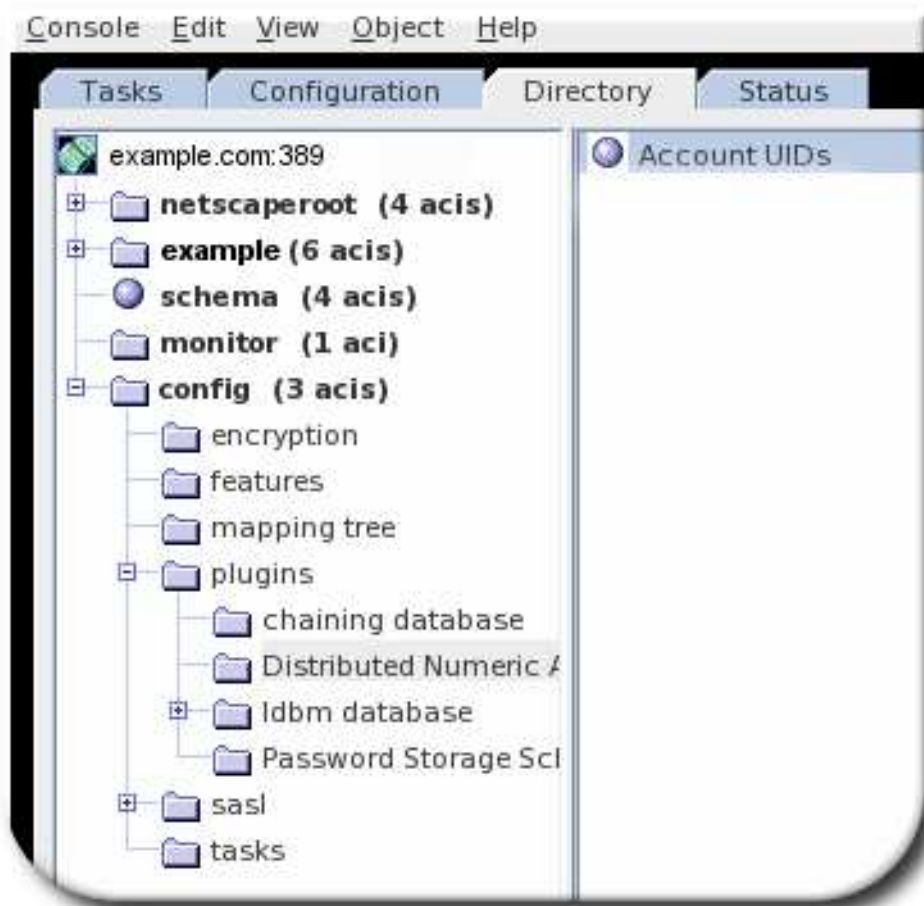
NOTE

Any attribute which has a unique number assigned to it must have an equality index set for it. The server must perform a sorted search, internally, to see if the **dnaNextvalue** is already taken, which requires an equality index on an integer attribute, with the proper ordering matching rule.

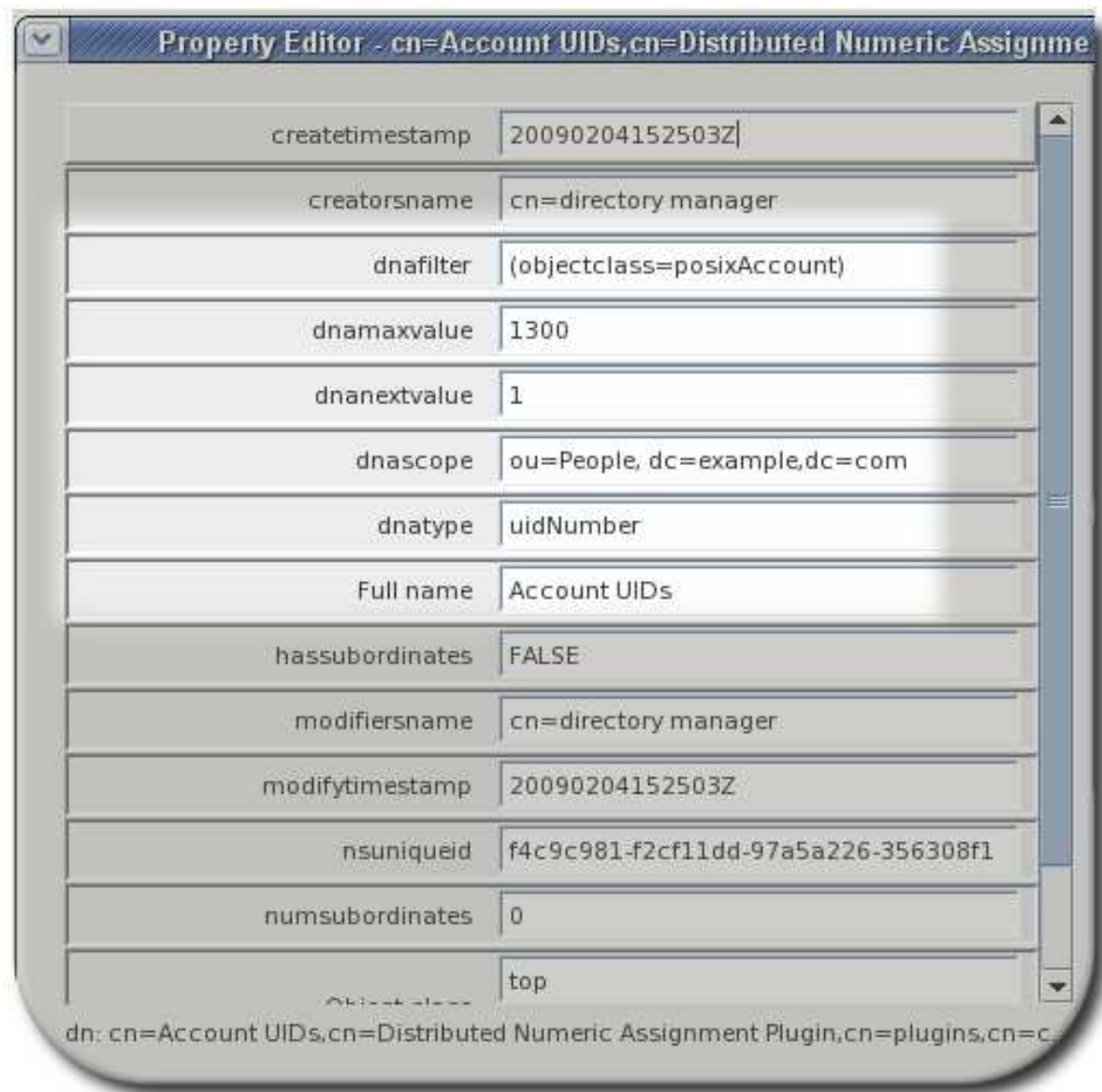
Creating indexes is described in [Section 13.2, "Creating Standard Indexes"](#).

The Directory Server Console can be used to edit the DNA Plug-in instances.

1. Click the **Directory** tab.
2. Open the **config** folder, and then expand the **plugins** folder.
3. Click the **Distributed Numeric Assignment** plug-in folder. All of the DNA Plug-in instances are listed in the main window.



4. Highlight the DNA instance entry, and right-click on the **Advanced** link to open the property editor.
5. Edit the DNA-related attributes.



7.4.4. Distributed Number Assignment Plug-in Performance Notes

There can be thread locking issues as DNA configuration is changed dynamically, so that new operations which access the DNA configuration (such as a DNA task or additional changes to the DNA configuration) will access the old configuration because the thread with the new configuration has not yet been released. This can cause operations to use old configuration or simply cause operations to hang.

To avoid this, preserve an interval between dynamic DNA configuration changes of 35 seconds. This means have a sleep or delay between both DNA configuration changes and any directory entry changes which would trigger a DNA plug-in operation.

CHAPTER 8. ORGANIZING AND GROUPING ENTRIES

Entries contained within the directory can be grouped in different ways to simplify the management of user accounts. Red Hat Directory Server supports a variety of methods for grouping entries and sharing attributes between entries. To take full advantage of the features offered by roles and class of service, determine the directory topology when planning the directory deployment.

8.1. USING GROUPS

Similar to the operating system, you can add users to groups in Directory Server. Groups work the other way around as roles. If you are using roles, the DN of the assigned role is stored in the ***nsRoleDN*** attribute in the user object. If you use groups, then the DN of the users who are members of this group are stored in ***member*** attributes in the group object. If you enabled the ***memberOf*** plug-in, then the groups the user is a member of, are additionally stored in ***memberOf*** attribute in the user object. With this plug-in enabled, groups additionally have the benefit of roles, that you can list the group memberships of a user, similar as when using roles. Additionally, groups are faster than roles.

For further details about using the ***memberOf*** plug-in, see [Section 8.1.4, "Listing Group Membership in User Entries"](#).

8.1.1. Creating Static Groups in the Console

Static groups organize entries by specifying the same group value in the DN attribute of any number of users.

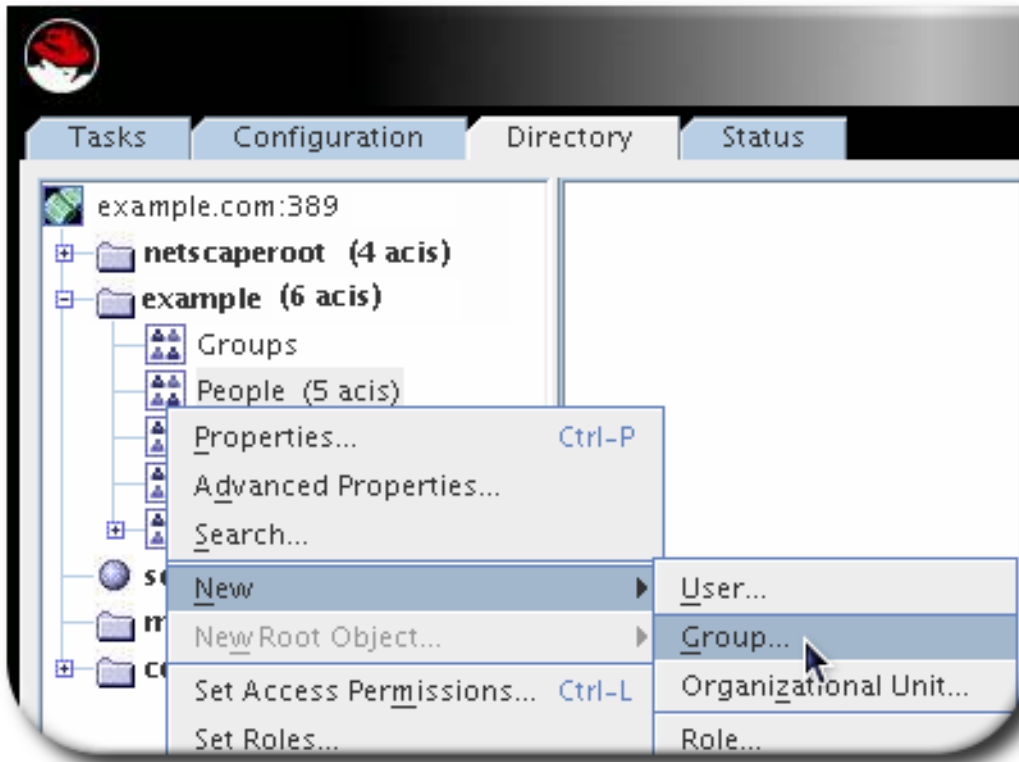


NOTE

If a user has an entry on a remote Directory Server (for example, in a chained database), different from the Directory Server which has the entry that defines the static group, then use the Referential Integrity plug-in to ensure that deleted user entries are automatically deleted from the static group.

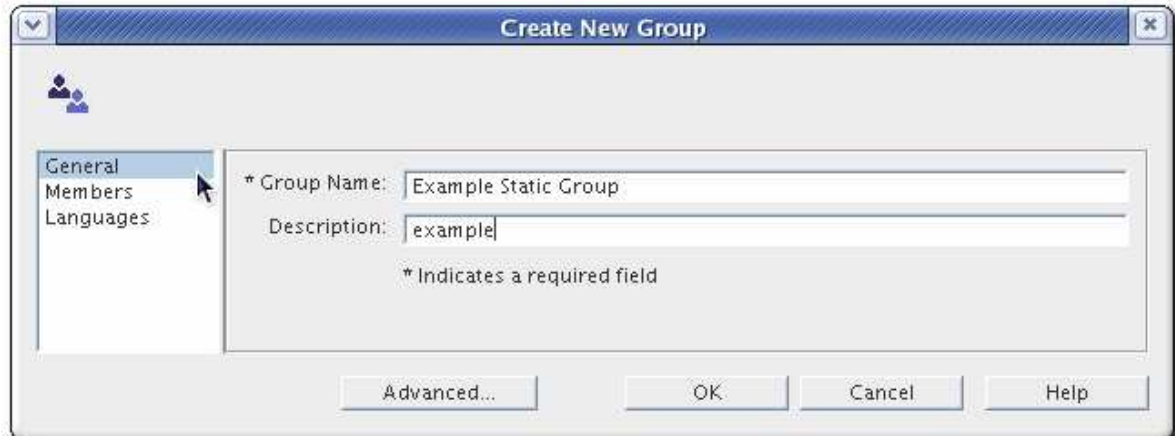
There are some performance and access control considerations with the Referential Integrity plug-in. For more information about using referential integrity with chaining, see [Section 2.3.2, "Configuring the Chaining Policy"](#).

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. In the left pane, right-click the entry under which to add a new group, and select **New > Group**.

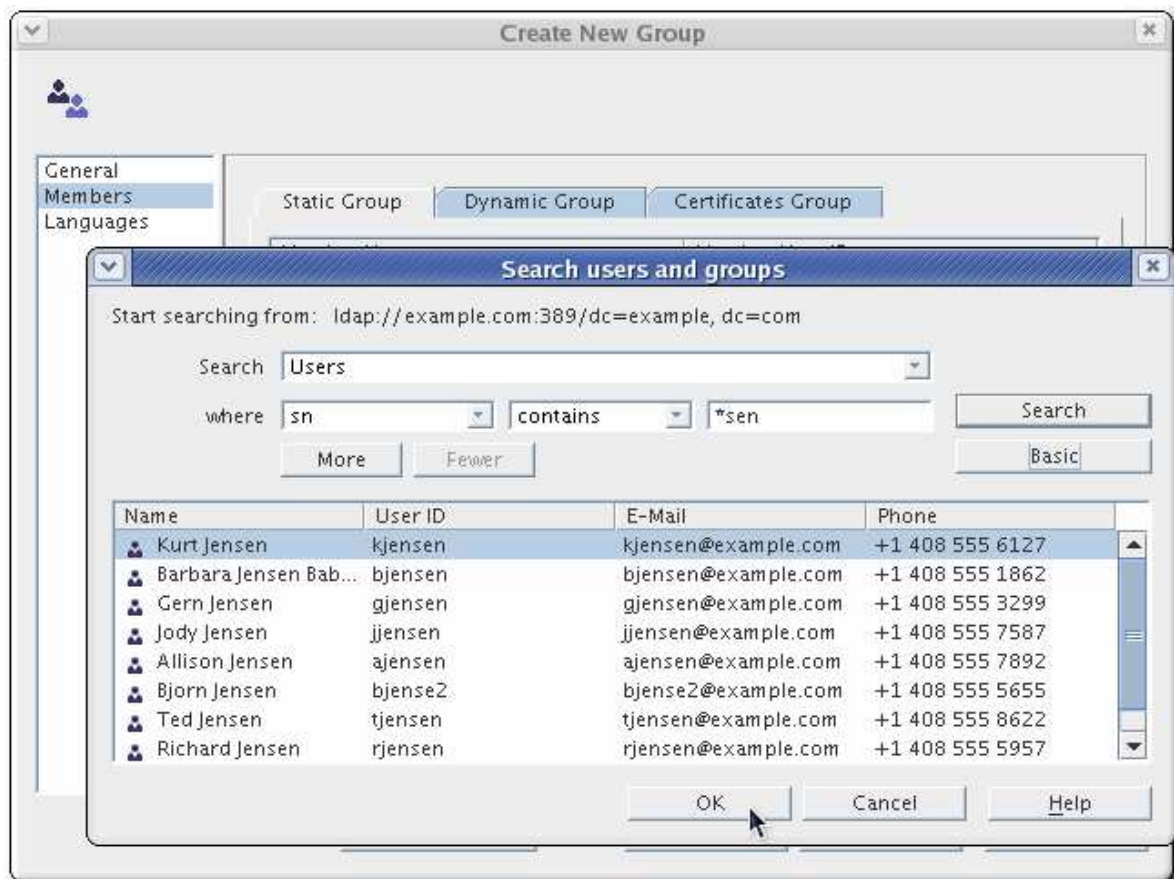


Alternatively, go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Group**.

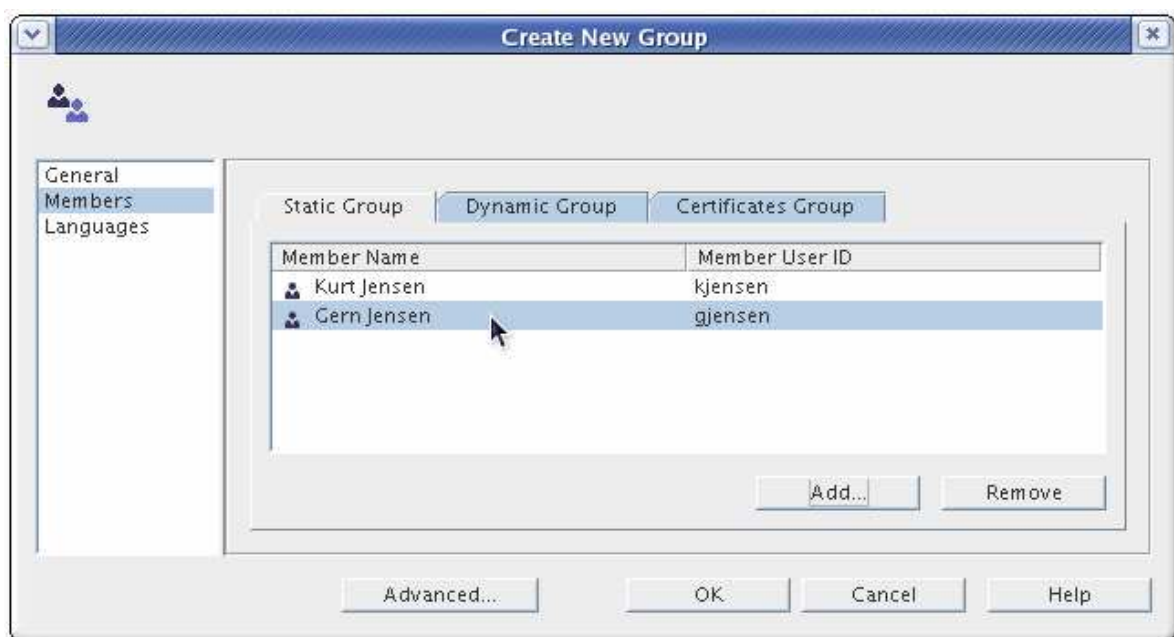
3. Click **General** in the left pane. Type a name for the new group in the **Group Name** field (the name is required), and enter a description of the new group in the **Description** field.



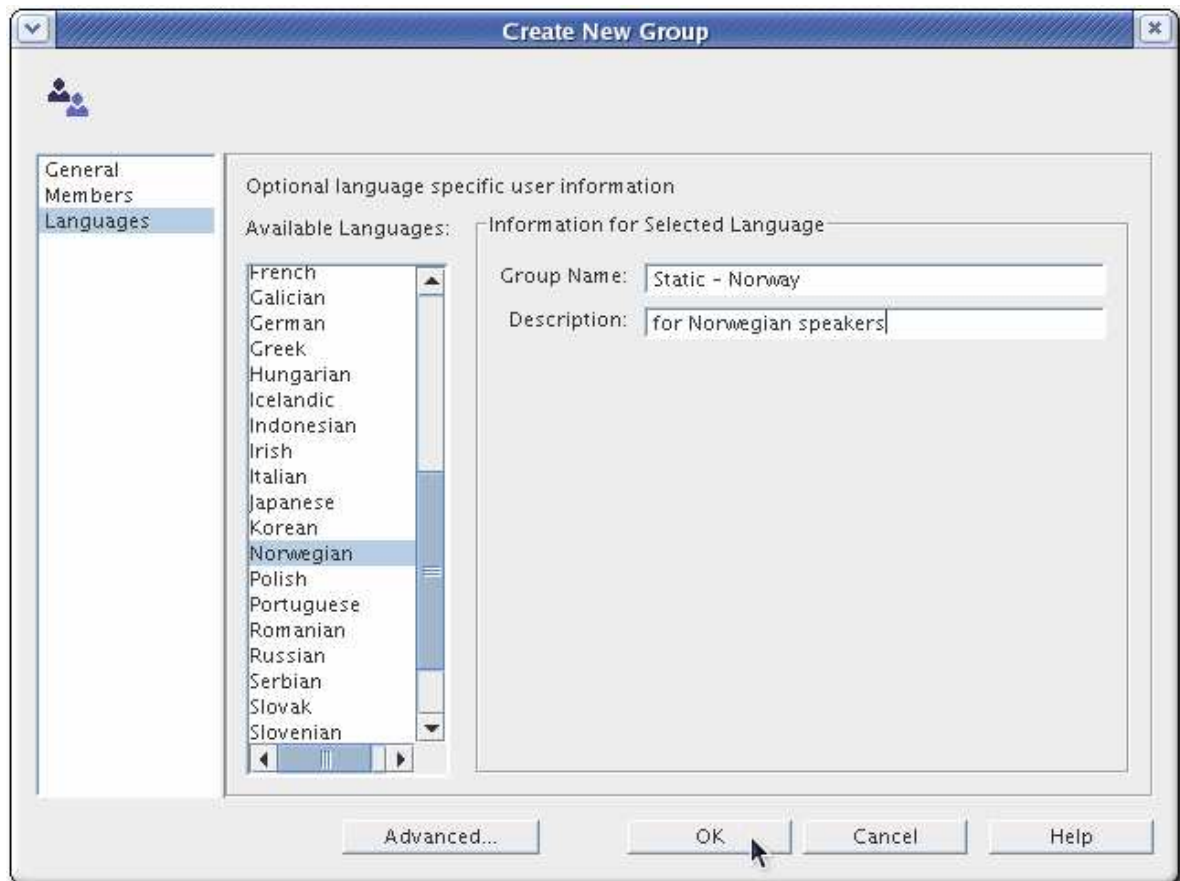
4. Click **Members** in the left pane. In the right pane, select the **Static Group** tab. Click **Add** to add new members to the group.
5. In the **Search** drop-down list, select what sort of entries to search for (users, groups, or both) then click **Search**.



6. Select the members from the returned entries, and click **OK**.



7. Click **Languages** in the left pane to add language-specific information for the group.



8. Click **OK** to create the new group. It appears in the right pane.

To edit a static group, double-click the group entry, and make the changes in the editor window. To view the changes, go to the **View** menu, and select **Refresh**.



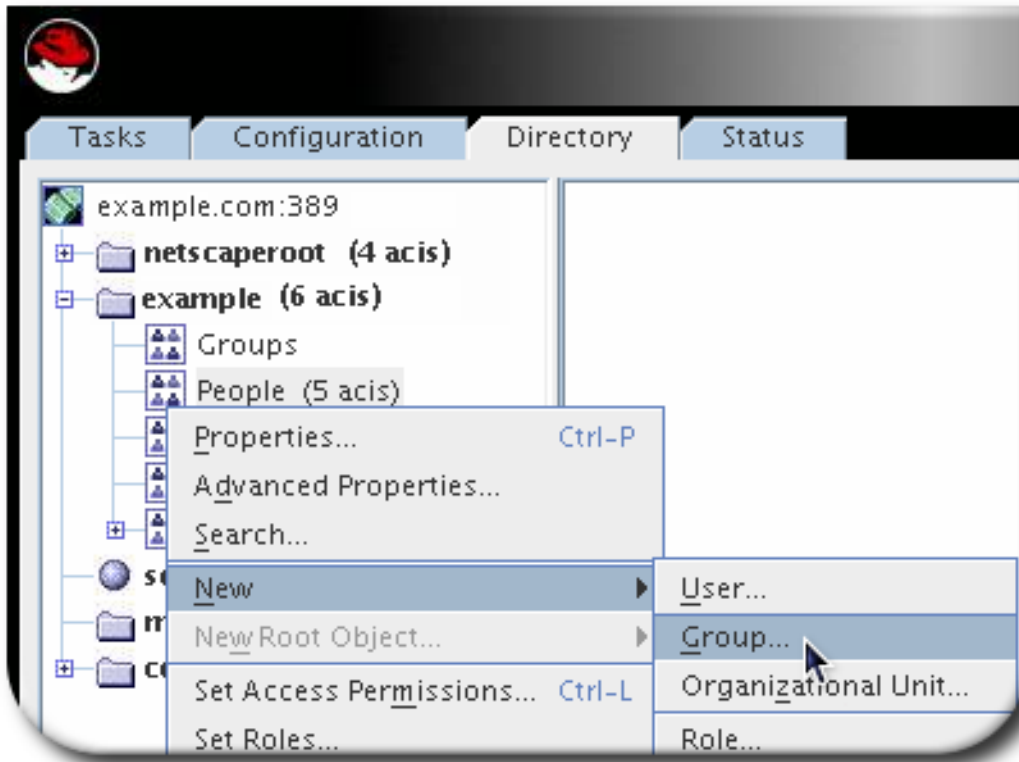
NOTE

The Console for managing static groups may not display all possible selections during a search operation if there is no VLV index for users' search. This problem occurs only when the number of users is 1000 or more and there is no VLV index for search. To work around the problem, create a VLV index for the users suffix with the filter **(objectclass=person)** and scope **sub-tree**. See [Section 13.4.2, "Creating Browsing Indexes from the Command Line"](#).

8.1.2. Creating Dynamic Groups in the Console

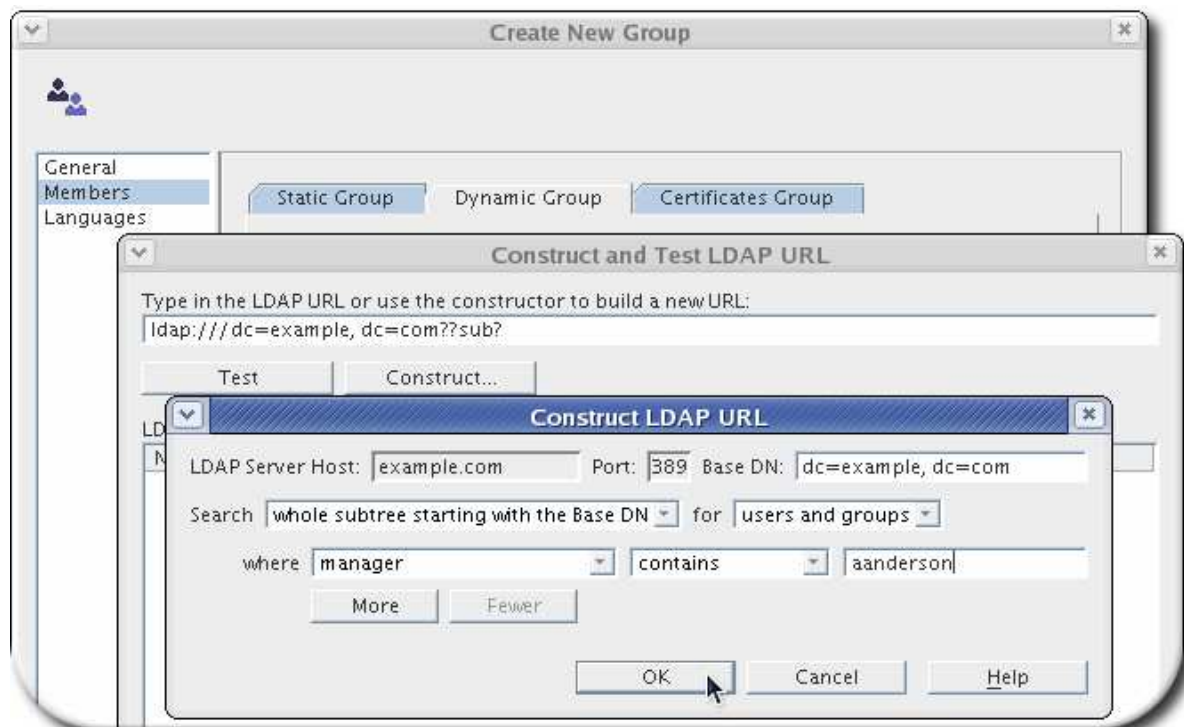
Dynamic groups filter users based on their DN and include them in a single group.

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. In the left pane, right-click the entry under which to add a new group, and select **New > Group**.

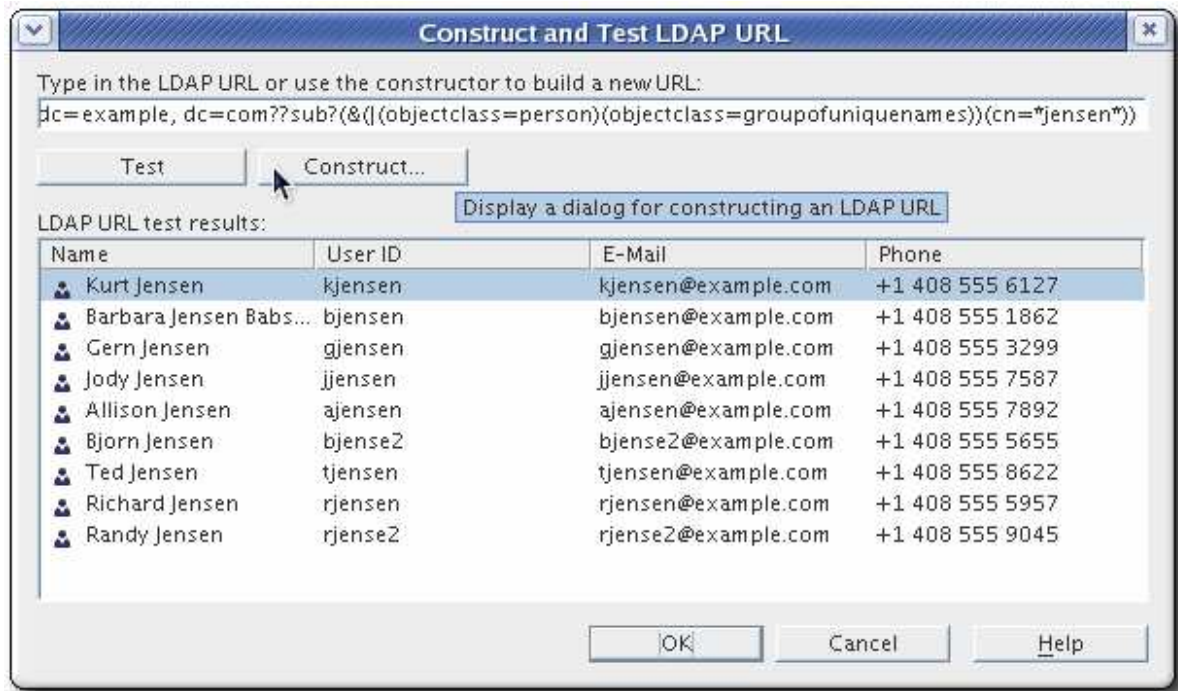


Alternatively, go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Group**.

3. Click **General** in the left pane. Type a name for the new group in the **Group Name** field (the name is required), and enter a description of the new group in the **Description** field.
4. Click **Members** in the left pane. In the right pane, select the **Dynamic Group** tab. Click **Add** to create a LDAP URL for querying the database.
5. Enter an LDAP URL in the text field or select **Construct** to be guided through the construction of an LDAP URL.



The results show the current entries (group members) which correspond to the filter.



- Click **Languages** in the left pane to add language-specific information for the group.
- Click **OK**. The new group appears in the right pane.

To edit a dynamic group, double-click the group entry to open the editor window, and make whatever changes to the dynamic group. To view the changes to the group, go to the **View** menu, and select **Refresh**.



NOTE

The Console for managing dynamic groups may not display all possible selections during a search operation if there is no VLV index for users' search. This problem can occur when the number of users is 1000 or more and there is no VLV index for search. To work around the problem, create a VLV index for the users suffix with the filter **(objectclass=person)** and scope **sub-tree**. See [Section 13.4.2, "Creating Browsing Indexes from the Command Line"](#).

8.1.3. Creating Groups in the Command Line

Creating both static and dynamic groups from the command line is a similar process. A group entry contains the group name, the type of group, and a members attribute.

There are several different options for the type of group; these are described in more detail in the [Red Hat Directory Server 10 Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#). The *type of group* in this case refers to the type of defining member attribute it has:

- **groupOfNames** (recommended) is a simple group, that allows any entry to be added. The attribute used to determine members for this is **member**.
- **groupOfUniqueNames**, like **groupOfNames**, simply lists user DNs as members, but the members must be unique. This prevents users being added more than once as a group member, which is one way of preventing self-referential group memberships. The attribute used to

determine members for this is *uniqueMember*.

- **groupOfURLs** uses a list of LDAP URLs to filter and generate its membership list. This object class is required for any dynamic group and can be used in conjunction with **groupOfNames** and **groupOfUniqueNames**.
- **groupOfCertificates** is similar to **groupOfURLs** in that it uses an LDAP filter to search for and identify certificates (or, really, certificate names) to identify group members. This is useful for group-based access control, since the group can be given special access permissions. The attribute used to determine members for this is *memberCertificate*.

Table 8.1, “Dynamic and Static Group Schema” lists the default attributes for groups as they are created from the command line.

Table 8.1. Dynamic and Static Group Schema

Type of Group	Group Object Classes	Member Attributes
Static	groupOfUniqueNames	uniqueMember
Dynamic	groupOfUniqueNames groupOfURLs	memberURL

A static group entry lists the specific members of the group. For example, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=static group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupOfUniqueNames
cn: static group
description: Example static group.
uniqueMember: uid=mwhite,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
uniqueMember: uid=awhite,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

A dynamic group uses at least one LDAP URL to identify entries belonging to the group and can specify multiple LDAP URLs or, if used with another group object class like **groupOfUniqueNames**, can explicitly list some group members along with the dynamic LDAP URL. For example, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=dynamic group,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupOfUniqueNames
objectClass: groupOfURLs
cn: dynamic group
description: Example dynamic group.
memberURL: ldap:///dc=example,dc=com??sub?(&(objectclass=person)(cn=*sen*))
```




NOTE

The **memberOf** plug-in does not support dynamically generated group memberships. If you set the **memberURL** attribute instead of listing the group members in an attribute, the **memberOf** plug-in does not add the **memberOf** attribute to the user objects that match the filter.

8.1.4. Listing Group Membership in User Entries

The entries which belong to a group are defined, in some way, in the group entry itself. This makes it very easy to look at a group and see its members and to manage group membership centrally. However, there is no good way to find out what groups a single user belongs to. There is nothing in a user entry which indicates its memberships, as there are with roles.

The MemberOf Plug-in correlates group membership lists to the corresponding user entries.

The MemberOf Plug-in analyzes the member attribute in a group entry and automatically writes a corresponding **memberOf** attribute in the member's entry. (By default, this checks the **member** attribute, but multiple attribute instances can be used to support multiple different group types.)

As membership changes, the plug-in updates the **memberOf** attributes on the user entries. The MemberOf Plug-in provides a way to view the groups to which a user belongs simply by looking at the entry, including nested group membership. It can be very difficult to backtrack memberships through nested groups, but the MemberOf Plug-in shows memberships for all groups, direct and indirect.

The MemberOf Plug-in manages member attributes for static groups, not dynamic groups or circular groups.

8.1.4.1. Considerations When Using the **memberOf** Plug-in

This section describes important considerations when you want to use the **memberOf** plug-in.

Using the **memberOf** Plug-in in a Replication Topology

There are two approaches to manage the **memberOf** attribute in a replication topology:

- Enable the **memberOf** plug-in on all master and read-only replica servers in the topology. In this case, you must exclude the **memberOf** attribute from replication in all replication agreements. For details about about excluding attributes, see [Section 15.1.7, "Replicating a Subset of Attributes with Fractional Replication"](#).
- Enable the **memberOf** plug-in only on all master servers in the topology. For this:
 - You must disable replication of the **memberOf** attribute to all write-enabled masters in the replication agreement. For details about about excluding attributes, see [Section 15.1.7, "Replicating a Subset of Attributes with Fractional Replication"](#).
 - You must Enable replication of the **memberOf** attribute to all read-only replicas in their replication agreement.
 - You must not enable the **memberOf** plug-in on read-only replicas.

Using the **memberOf** plug-in With Distributed Databases

As described in [Section 2.2.1, "Creating Databases"](#), you can store sub-trees of your directory in individual databases. By default, the **memberOf** plug-in only updates user entries which are stored within the same database as the group. To enable the plug-in to also update users in different

databases as the group, you must set the **memberOfAllBackends** parameter to **on**. See [Section 8.1.4.4.1, "Editing the MemberOf Plug-in from the Console"](#) .

8.1.4.2. Required Object Classes by the memberOf Plug-In

By default, the **memberOf** plug-in will add the **nsMemberOf** object class to objects to provide the **memberOf** attribute. This object class is safe to add to any object for this purpose, and no further action is required to enable this plug-in to operate correctly. Alternatively, you can create user objects that contain the **inetUser** or **inetAdmin**, object class. Both object classes support the **memberOf** attribute as well.

To configure nested groups, the group must use the **extensibleObject** object class.



NOTE

If directory entries do not contain an object class that supports the required attributes, operations fail with the following error:

```
LDAP: error code 65 - Object Class Violation
```

8.1.4.3. The MemberOf Plug-in Syntax

The MemberOf Plug-in instance defines two attributes, one for the group member attribute to poll (**memberOfGroupAttr**) and the other for the attribute to create and manage in the member's user entry (**memberOfAttr**).

The **memberOfGroupAttr** attribute is multi-valued. Because different types of groups use different member attributes, using multiple **memberOfGroupAttr** attributes allows the plug-in to manage multiple types of groups.

The plug-in instance also gives the plug-in path and function to identify the MemberOf Plug-in and contains a state setting to enable the plug-in, both of which are required for all plug-ins. The default MemberOf Plug-in is shown in [Example 8.1, "Default MemberOf Plug-in Entry"](#) .

Example 8.1. Default MemberOf Plug-in Entry

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSlapdPlugin
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: MemberOf Plugin
nsslapd-pluginPath: libmemberof-plugin
nsslapd-pluginInitfunc: memberof_postop_init
nsslapd-pluginType: postoperation
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
nsslapd-plugin-depends-on-type: database
memberOfGroupAttr: member
memberOfGroupAttr: uniqueMember
memberOfAttr: memberOf
memberOfAllBackends: on
nsslapd-pluginId: memberOf
```



```
nsslapd-pluginVersion: X.Y.Z
nsslapd-pluginVendor: Red Hat, Inc.
nsslapd-pluginDescription: memberOf plugin
```

For details about the parameters used in the example and other parameters you can set, see the [MemberOf Plug-in Attributes](#) section in the *Red Hat Directory Server Command, Configuration, and File Reference*.



NOTE

To maintain backwards compatibility with older versions of Directory Server, which only allowed a single member attribute (by default, **member**), it may be necessary to include the **member** group attribute or whatever previous member attribute was used, in addition any new member attributes used in the plug-in configuration.

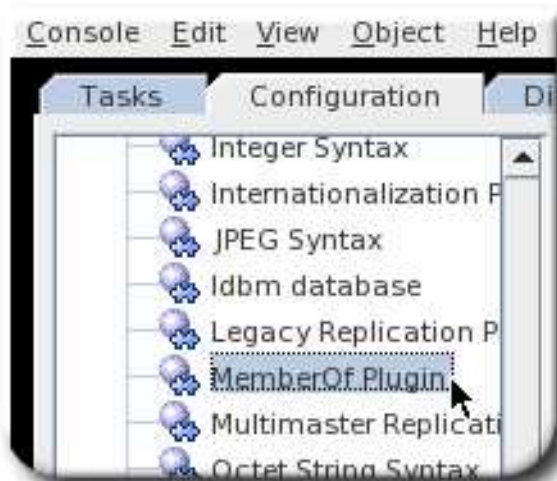
```
memberOfGroupAttr: member
memberOfGroupAttr: uniqueMember
```

8.1.4.4. Configuring an Instance of the MemberOf Plug-in

The attributes defined in the MemberOf Plug-in can be changed, depending on the types of groups used in the directory.

8.1.4.4.1. Editing the MemberOf Plug-in from the Console

1. Select the **Configuration** tab, and expand to the **Plugins** folder.
2. Scroll to the **Memberof Plugin** entry.



3. Make sure that the plug-in is enabled. This is disabled by default.
4. Click the **Advanced** button to open the **Advanced Properties Editor**.
5. The **memberOfGroupAttr** attribute sets the attribute in the group entry which the server uses to identify member entries; this attribute can be used multiple times for different group/member types. The **memberOfAttr** attribute sets the attribute which the plug-in creates and manages on user entries.



6. Save the changes.
7. If the Directory Server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-ins, restart the server to update the plug-in.

8.1.4.4.2. Editing the MemberOf Plug-in from the Command Line

1. Enable the MemberOf Plug-in. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

2. Set the attribute to use for the group member entry attribute. The default attribute is **member**, which can be changed using the **replace** command, or, since the **memberOfGroupAttr** attribute is multi-valued, additional member types can be added to the definition. For example, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: memberOfGroupAttr
memberOfGroupAttr: uniqueMember

add: memberOfGroupAttr
memberOfGroupAttr: customMember-
```

3. Set the attribute to set on the user entries to show group membership. For example, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: memberOfAttr
memberOfAttr: memberOf
```

4. *Optional.* If the deployment uses distributed databases, then enable the **memberOfAllBackends** attribute to search through all databases, not just the local one, for user entries. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: memberOfAllBackends
memberOfAllBackends: on
```

5. If the Directory Server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-ins, restart the server to load the modified new plug-in instance.

8.1.4.5. The **memberOf** Plug-In Shared Configuration

Replicating plug-in configuration helps maintain consistent configuration on the network, which is especially useful in large deployments. You only need to update the configuration on a master replication server, and the change is then replicated to all other servers.

The **memberOf** plug-in configuration can be stored in a shared configuration entry in any back end or suffix, outside of the **cn=config** suffix.

In the plug-in entry, the **nsslapd-pluginConfigArea** attribute is used to specify the location of the shared configuration:

```
nsslapd-pluginConfigArea: entry_DN
```

After you set the **nsslapd-pluginConfigArea** attribute to the same plug-in entry on all replicas, the replication then handles all future configuration changes.

The following table described attributes that you can use in the shared configuration entry.

Table 8.2. Attributes of the **memberOf Plug-in Shared Configuration**

Configuration Attribute	Value	Example
memberOfAttr (required)	Attribute Name	memberOf
memberOfGroupAttr (required)	Attribute Name	uniqueMember
memberOfAllBackends	on off	off
memberOfEntryScope	Entry DN	ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
memberOfSkipNested	on off	on
memberOfEntryScopeExcludeSubtree	Entry DN	ou=other,dc=example,dc=com

In the following example, **nsslapd-pluginConfigArea** is set. Therefore, the configuration in the plug-in entry is ignored.

```
dn: cn=MemberOf Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

```

objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSlapdPlugin
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: MemberOf Plugin
nsslapd-pluginPath: libmemberof-plugin
nsslapd-pluginInitfunc: memberof_postop_init
nsslapd-pluginType: postoperation
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
nsslapd-pluginDepends-on-type: database
memberofGroupAttr: member
memberofAttr: memberOf
nsslapd-pluginConfigArea: cn=memberof plugin configuration,dc=example,dc=com

```

In this example, the **memberof** plug-in will use the **uniquemember** group attribute, rather than **member**.

```

dn: cn=memberof plugin configuration,dc=example,dc=com
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: MemberOf Plugin Configuration
memberofGroupAttr: uniquemember
memberofAttr: memberOf

```

8.1.4.6. Setting the Scope of the MemberOf Plug-in

If you configured several back ends or multiple-nested suffixes, you can use the **memberofEntryScope** and **memberofEntryScopeExcludeSubtree** parameters to set what suffixes the **MemberOf** plug-in works on.

If you add a user to a group, the **MemberOf** plug-in only adds the **memberof** attribute to the group if both the user and the group are in the plug-in's scope. For example, to configure the **MemberOf** plug-in to work on all entries in **dc=example,dc=com**, but to exclude entries in **ou=private,dc=example,dc=com**, set:

```

memberofEntryScope: dc=example,dc=com
memberofEntryScopeExcludeSubtree: ou=private,dc=example,dc=com

```

If you moved a user entry out of the scope set in the **memberofEntryScope** parameter:

- The membership attribute, such as **member**, is updated in the group entry to remove the user DN value.
- The **memberof** attribute is updated in the user entry to remove the group DN value.



NOTE

The value set in the **memberofEntryScopeExcludeSubtree** parameter has a higher priority than values set in **memberofEntryScope**. If the scopes set in both parameters overlap, the **MemberOf** plug-in only works on the non-overlapping directory entries.

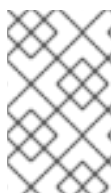
8.1.4.7. Synchronizing memberOf Values

The MemberOf Plug-in automatically manages the **memberof** attribute on group member entries, based on the configuration in the group entry itself. However, the **memberof** attribute can be edited on

a user entry directly (which is improper) or new entries can be imported or replicated over to the server that have a **memberOf** attribute already set. These situations create inconsistencies between the **memberOf** configuration managed by the server plug-in and the actual memberships defined for an entry.

Directory Server has a **memberOf** repair task which manually runs the plug-in to make sure the appropriate **memberOf** attributes are set on entries. There are three ways to trigger this task:

- In the Directory Server Console
- Using the **fixup-memberof.pl** script
- Running a **cn=memberOf task,cn=tasks,cn=config** tasks entry



NOTE

The **memberOf** regeneration tasks are run locally, even if the entries themselves are replicated. This means that the **memberOf** attributes for the entries on other servers are not updated until the updated entry is replicated.

8.1.4.7.1. Initializing and Regenerating **memberOf** Attributes Using **fixup-memberof.pl**

fixup-memberof.pl is a Perl script wrapper used to regenerate **memberOf** attributes as described in [Section 8.1.4.7.2, “Initializing and Regenerating **memberOf** Attributes Using **ldapmodify**”](#).

For more details, see also **man fixup-memberof.pl**.

8.1.4.7.2. Initializing and Regenerating **memberOf** Attributes Using **ldapmodify**

Regenerating **memberOf** attributes is one of the tasks which can be managed through a special task configuration entry. Task entries occur under the **cn=tasks** configuration entry in the **dse.ldif** file, so it is also possible to initiate a task by adding the entry using **ldapmodify**. As soon as the task is complete, the entry is removed from the directory.

The **fixup-memberof.pl** script creates a special task entry in a Directory Server instance which regenerates the **memberOf** attributes.

To initiate a **memberOf** fixup task, add an entry under the **cn=memberOf task, cn=tasks,cn=config** entry. The only required attribute is the **cn** for the specific task. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=example memberOf,cn=memberOf task,cn=tasks,cn=config
changetype: add
cn:example memberOf
```

As soon as the task is completed, the entry is deleted from the **dse.ldif** configuration, so it is possible to reuse the same task entry continually.

The **cn=memberOf task** configuration is described in more detail in the [Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

8.1.5. Automatically Adding Entries to Specified Groups

- [Section 8.1.5.1, “Looking at the Structure of an Automembership Rule”](#)
- [Section 8.1.5.2, “Examples of Automembership Rules”](#)

- [Section 8.1.5.3, “Creating Automembership Definitions”](#)

Group management can be a critical factor for managing directory data, especially for clients which use Directory Server data and organization or which use groups to apply functionality to entries. Groups make it easier to apply policies consistently and reliably across the directory. Password policies, access control lists, and other rules can all be based on group membership.

Being able to assign new entries to groups, automatically, at the time that an account is created ensures that the appropriate policies and functionality are immediately applied to those entries – without requiring administrator intervention.

Dynamic groups are one method of creating groups and assigning members automatically because any matching entry is automatically included in the group. For applying Directory Server policies and settings, this is sufficient. However, LDAP applications and clients commonly need a static and explicit list of group members in order to perform whatever operation is required. And all of the members in static groups have to be manually added to those groups.

The static group itself cannot search for members like a dynamic group, but there is a way to allow a static group to have members added to it automatically – *the Auto Membership Plug-in*.

Automembership essentially allows a static group to act like a dynamic group. Different automembership definitions create searches that are automatically run on all new directory entries. The automembership rules search for and identify matching entries – much like the dynamic search filters – and then explicitly add those entries as members to the static group.



NOTE

By default, the ***autoMemberProcessModifyOps*** parameter in the ***cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config*** entry is set to **on**. With this setting, the Automembership plug-in also updates group memberships when an administrator moves a user to a different group by editing a user entry.

If you set ***autoMemberProcessModifyOps*** to **off**, Directory Server invokes the plug-in only when you add a group entry to the user, and you must manually run a fix-up task to update the group membership.

The Auto Membership Plug-in can target any type of object stored in the directory: users, machines and network devices, customer data, or other assets.



NOTE

The Auto Membership Plug-in adds a new entry to an existing group based on defined criteria. It does not create a group for the new entry.

To create a corresponding group entry when a new entry of a certain type is created, use the Managed Entries Plug-in. This is covered in [Section 8.3, “Automatically Creating Dual Entries”](#).

8.1.5.1. Looking at the Structure of an Automembership Rule

The Auto Membership Plug-in itself is a container entry in ***cn=plugins,cn=config***. Group assignments are defined through child entries.

8.1.5.1.1. The Automembership Configuration Entry

Automembership assignments are created through a main definition entry, a child of the Auto Membership Plug-in entry. Each definition entry defines three elements:

- An LDAP search to identify entries, including both a search scope and a search filter (***autoMemberScope*** and ***autoMemberFilter***)
- A default group to which to add the member entries (***autoMemberDefaultGroup***)
- The member entry format, which is the attribute in the group entry, such as ***member***, and the attribute value, such as ***dn*** (***autoMemberGroupingAttr***)

The definition is the basic configuration for an automember rule. It identifies all of the required information: what a matching member entry looks like and a group for that member to belong to.

For example, this definition assigns all Windows users to the **cn=windows-users** group:

```
dn: cn=Windows Users,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
autoMemberScope: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=ntUser
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=windows-group,cn=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn
```

For details about the attributes used in the example and other attributes you can set in this entry, see the **cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config** entry description in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

8.1.5.1.2. Additional Regular Expression Entries

For something like a users group, where more than likely all matching entries should be added as members, a simple definition is sufficient. However, there can be instances where entries that match the LDAP search filter should be added to different groups, depending on the value of some other attribute. For example, machines may need to be added to different groups depending on their IP address or physical location; users may need to be in different groups depending on their employee ID number.

The automember definition can use regular expressions to provide additional conditions on what entries to include or exclude from a group, and then a new, specific group to add those selected entries to.

For example, an automember definition sets all machines to be added to a generic host group.

Example 8.2. Automember Definition for a Host Group

```
dn: cn=Hostgroups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
cn: Hostgroups
autoMemberScope: dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=ipHost
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=systems,cn=hostgroups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn
```

A regular expression rule is added so that any machine with a fully-qualified domain name within a given range is added to a web server group.

Example 8.3. Regular Expression Condition for a Web Server Group

```

dn: cn=webservers,cn=Hostgroups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
description: Group for webservers
cn: webservers
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=webservers,cn=hostgroups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: fqdn=^www\.web[0-9]+\\.example\.com

```

So, any host machine added with a fully-qualified domain name that matches the expression **^www\.web[0-9]+\\.example\.com**, such as **www.web1.example.com**, is added to the **cn=webservers** group, defined for that exact regular expression. Any other machine entry, which matches the LDAP filter **objectclass=ipHost** but with a different type of fully-qualified domain name, is added to the general host group, **cn=systems**, defined in the main definition entry.

The group in the definition, then, is a fallback for entries which match the general definition, but do not meet the conditions in the regular expression rule.

Regular expression rules are child entries of the automember definition.

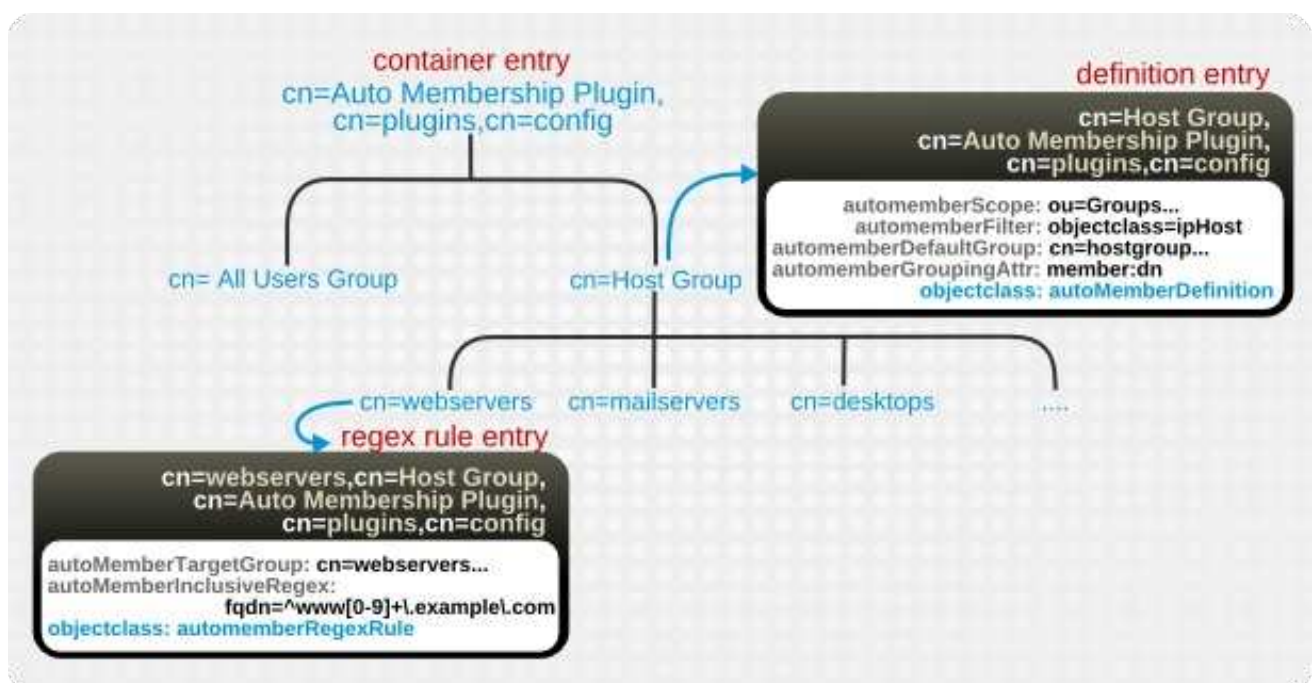



Figure 8.1. Regular Expression Conditions

Each rule can include multiple inclusion and exclusion expressions. (Exclusions are evaluated first.) If an entry matches any inclusion rule, it is added to the group.

There can be only one target group given for the regular expression rule.

Table 8.3. Regular Expression Condition Attributes

Attribute	Description
autoMemberRegexRule (required object class)	Identifies the entry as a regular expression rule. This entry must be a child of an automember definition (objectclass: autoMemberDefinition).

Attribute	Description
autoMemberInclusiveRegex	<p>Sets a regular expression to use to identify entries to include. Only matching entries are added to the group. Multiple regular expressions could be used, and if an entry matches any one of those expressions, it is included in the group.</p> <p>The format of the expression is a Perl-compatible regular expression (PCRE). For more information on PCRE patterns, see the pcresyntax(3) man page.</p> <p>This is a multi-valued attribute.</p>
autoMemberExclusiveRegex	<p>Sets a regular expression to use to identify entries to exclude. If an entry matches the exclusion condition, then it is <i>not</i> included in the group. Multiple regular expressions could be used, and if an entry matches any one of those expressions, it is excluded in the group.</p> <p>The format of the expression is a Perl-compatible regular expression (PCRE). For more information on PCRE patterns, see the pcresyntax(3) man page.</p> <p>This is a multi-valued attribute.</p> <div style="float: left; margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <p>NOTE</p> <p>Exclude conditions are evaluated first and take precedence over include conditions.</p>
autoMemberTargetGroup	<p>Sets which group to add the entry to as a member, if it meets the regular expression conditions.</p>

8.1.5.2. Examples of Automembership Rules

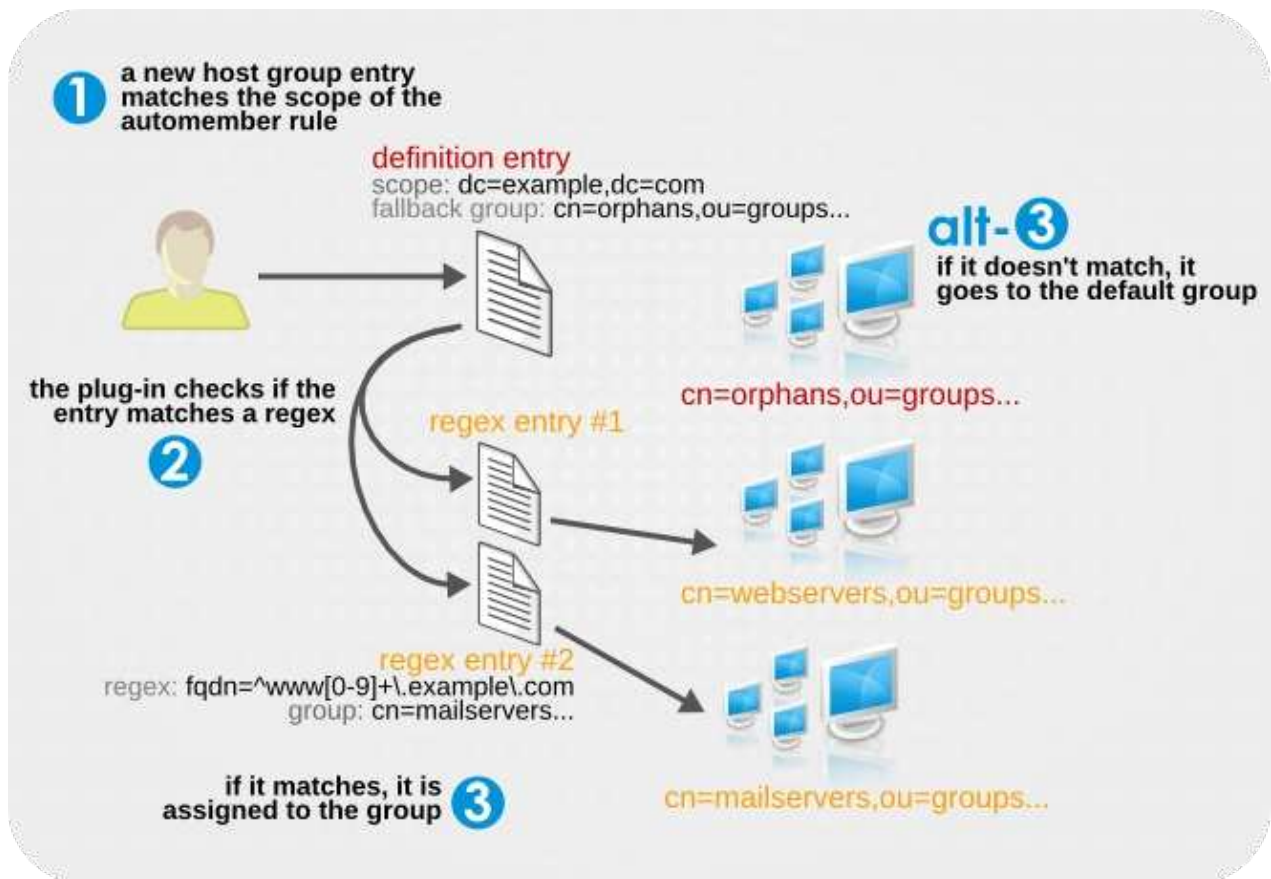
Automembership rules are usually going to applied to users and to machines (although they can be applied to any type of entry). There are a handful of examples that may be useful in planning automembership rules:

- Different host groups based on IP address
- Windows user groups
- Different user groups based on employee ID

Example 8.4. Host Groups by IP Address

The automember rule first defines the scope and target of the rule. The example in [Section 8.1.5.1.2, “Additional Regular Expression Entries”](#) uses the configuration group to define the fallback group and a regular expression entry to sort out matching entries.

The scope is used to find *all* host entries. The plug-in then iterates through the regular expression entries. If an entry matches an inclusive regular expression, then it is added to that host group. If it does not match any group, it is added to the default group.



The actual plug-in configuration entries are configured like this, for the definition entry and two regular expression entries to filter hosts into a web servers group or a mail servers group.

configuration entry

```
dn: cn=Hostgroups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
cn: Hostgroups
autoMemberScope: dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=bootableDevice
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=orphans,cn=hostgroups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn
```

regex entry #1

```
dn: cn=webserver,cn=Hostgroups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
description: Group placement for webserver
cn: webserver
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=webserver,cn=hostgroups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: fqdn=^www[0-9]+\.\example\.com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: fqdn=^web[0-9]+\.\example\.com
autoMemberExclusiveRegex: fqdn=^www13\.\example\.com
autoMemberExclusiveRegex: fqdn=^web13\.\example\.com
```

regex entry #2

```
dn: cn=mailservers,cn=Hostgroups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
description: Group placement for mailservers
cn: mailservers
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=mailservers,cn=hostgroups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: fqdn=^mail[0-9]+\.\example\.com
```

```

autoMemberInclusiveRegex: fqdn=^smtp[0-9]+\.\example\com
autoMemberExclusiveRegex: fqdn=^mail13\.\example\com
autoMemberExclusiveRegex: fqdn=^smtp13\.\example\com

```

Example 8.5. Windows User Group

The basic users group shown in [Section 8.1.5.1.1, “The Automembership Configuration Entry”](#) uses the **posixAccount** attribute to identify all new users. All new users created within Directory Server are created with the **posixAccount** attribute, so that is a safe catch-all for new Directory Server users. However, when user accounts are synchronized over from the Windows domain to the Directory Server, the Windows user accounts are created *without* the **posixAccount** attribute.

Windows users are identified by the **ntUser** attribute. The basic, all-users group rule can be modified to target Windows users specifically, which can then be added to the default all-users group or to a Windows-specific group.

```

dn: cn=Windows Users,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
autoMemberScope: dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=ntUser
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=Windows Users,cn=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn

```

Example 8.6. User Groups by Employee Type

The Auto Membership Plug-in can work on custom attributes, which can be useful for entries which are managed by other applications. For example, a human resources application may create and then reference users based on the employee type, in a custom **employeeType** attribute.

Much like [Example 8.4, “Host Groups by IP Address”](#), the user type rule uses two regular expression filters to sort full time and temporary employees, only this example uses an explicit value rather than a true regular expression. For other attributes, it may be more appropriate to use a regular expression, like basing the filter on an employee ID number range.

configuration entry

```

dn: cn=Employee groups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
cn: Hostgroups
autoMemberScope: ou=employees,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=inetorgperson
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=general,cn=employee groups,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn

```

regex entry #1

```

dn: cn=full time,cn=Employee groups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
description: Group for full time employees
cn: full time
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=full time,cn=employee groups,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: employeeType=full

```

regex entry #2

```
dn: cn=temporary,cn=Employee groups,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
description: Group placement for interns, contractors, and seasonal employees
cn: temporary
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=temporary,cn=employee groups,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: employeeType=intern
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: employeeType=contractor
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: employeeType=seasonal
```

8.1.5.3. Creating Automembership Definitions

1. If necessary, enable the Auto Membership Plug-in. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: replace
replace: nsslapd-pluginEnabled
nsslapd-pluginEnabled: on
```

2. Create the new plug-in instance below the **cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config** container entry. This entry must belong to the **autoMemberDefinition** object class. Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Example Automember Definition,cn=Auto Membership Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberDefinition
...
```

The required attributes for the definition are listed in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

3. Set the scope and filter for the definition. This is used for the initial search for matching entries.

For example, for new entries added to the **ou=People** subtree and containing the **ntUser** attribute:

```
autoMemberScope: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberFilter: objectclass=ntUser
```

4. Set the group to which to add matching entries (as the default or fallback group) and the format of the member entries for that group type.

```
autoMemberDefaultGroup: cn=windows-group,cn=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberGroupingAttr: member:dn
```

5. *Optional.* Create inclusive or exclusive regular expression filters and set a group to use for entries matching those filters.

The attributes for the regular expression condition are listed in [Table 8.3, "Regular Expression Condition Attributes"](#).

Regular expression conditions are added as children of the automember definition. These conditions must belong to the **autoMemberRegexRule** object class.

Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Example Regex,cn=Example Automember Definition,cn=Auto Membership
Plugin,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: autoMemberRegexRule
...
```

Then add the target group name and any inclusive or exclusive regular expressions. Both include and exclude conditions can be used, and multiple expressions of both types can be used.

```
autoMemberTargetGroup: cn=windows-admin-group,cn=groups,dc=example,dc=com
autoMemberInclusiveRegex: cn=\. * Administrator \*
```

If a new entry matches a regular expression condition, it is added to that group *instead of* the default group set in the automember definition.

6. If the Directory Server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-ins, restart the server to load the modified new plug-in instance.

8.1.5.4. Updating Existing Entries for Automembership Definitions

The Auto Member Plug-in only runs when new entries are added to the directory. The plug-in ignores existing entries or entries which are edited to match an automembership rule.

There is a directory task operation which can be run to check existing entries against automembership rules and then update group membership accordingly. This task (**cn=automember rebuild membership**) requires three elements to run, based on LDAP search parameters to identify which existing entries to process:

- The search filter
- The search scope
- The base DN from which to begin the search

The specific task run also needs a name.

The task entry can be created using **ldapmodify**; when the task completes, the entry is automatically removed. For example:

```
dn: cn=my rebuild task, cn=automember rebuild membership,cn=tasks,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: my rebuild task
basedn: dc=example,dc=com
filter: (uid=*)
scope: sub
```

8.1.5.5. Testing Automembership Definitions

Because each instance of the Auto Member Plug-in is a set of related-but-separate entries for the definition and regular expression, it can be difficult to see exactly how users are going to be mapped to groups. This becomes even more difficult when there are multiple rules which target different subsets of users.

There are two dry-run tasks which can be useful to determine whether all of the different Auto Member Plug-in definitions are assigning groups properly as designed.

Testing with Existing Entries

cn=automember export updates runs against *existing entries* in the directory and exports the results of what users would have been added to what groups, based on the rules. This is useful for testing existing rules against existing users to see how your real deployment are performing.

This task requires the same information as the **cn=automember rebuild membership** task – the base DN to search, search filter, and search scope – and has an additional parameter to specify an export LDIF file to record the proposed entry updates.

Using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=test export, cn=automember export updates,cn=tasks,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: test export
basedn: dc=example,dc=com
filter: (uid=*)
scope: sub
ldif: /tmp/automember-updates.ldif
```

Testing with an Import LDIF

cn=automember map updates takes an *import LDIF* of new users and then runs the new users against the current automembership rules. This can be very useful for testing a new rule, before applying it to (real) new or existing user entries.

This is called a map task because it maps or relates changes for proposed new entries to the existing rules.

This task only requires two attributes: the location of the input LDIF (which must contain at least some user entries) and an output LDIF file to which to write the proposed entry updates. Both the input and output LDIF files are absolute paths on the local machine.

For example, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=test mapping, cn=automember map updates,cn=tasks,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: test mapping
ldif_in: /tmp/entries.ldif
ldif_out: /tmp/automember-updates.ldif
```

8.2. USING ROLES

Roles are an entry grouping mechanism that unify the static and dynamic groups described in the previous sections. Roles are designed to be more efficient and easier to use for applications. For example, an application can get the list of roles of which an entry is a member by querying the entry itself, rather than selecting a group and browsing the members list of several groups.

8.2.1. About Roles

Red Hat has two kinds of groups. *Static groups* have a finite and defined list of members. *Dynamic groups* used filters to recognize which entries are members of the group, so the group membership is constantly changed as the entries which match the group filter change. (Both kinds of groups are described in [Section 8.1, “Using Groups”](#).)

Roles are a sort of hybrid group, behaving as both a static and a dynamic group. With a group, entries are added to a group entry as members. With a role, the role attribute is added to an entry and then that attribute is used to identify members in the role entry automatically.

Role *members* are entries that possess the role. Members can be specified either explicitly or dynamically. How role membership is specified depends upon the type of role. Directory Server supports three types of roles:

- *Managed roles* have an explicit enumerated list of members.
- *Filtered roles* are assigned entries to the role depending upon the attribute contained by each entry, specified in an LDAP filter. Entries that match the filter possess the role.
- *Nested roles* are roles that contain other roles.

Managed roles can do everything that can normally be done with static groups. The role members can be filtered using filtered roles, similarly to the filtering with dynamic groups. Roles are easier to use than groups, more flexible in their implementation, and reduce client complexity.

When a role is created, determine whether a user can add themselves or remove themselves from the role. See [Section 8.2.10, “Using Roles Securely”](#) for more information about roles and access control.



NOTE

Evaluating roles is more resource-intensive for the Directory Server than evaluating groups because the server does the work for the client application. With roles, the client application can check role membership by searching for the ***nsRole*** attribute. The ***nsRole*** attribute is a computed attribute, which identifies to which roles an entry belongs; the ***nsRole*** attribute is not stored with the entry itself. From the client application point of view, the method for checking membership is uniform and is performed on the server side.

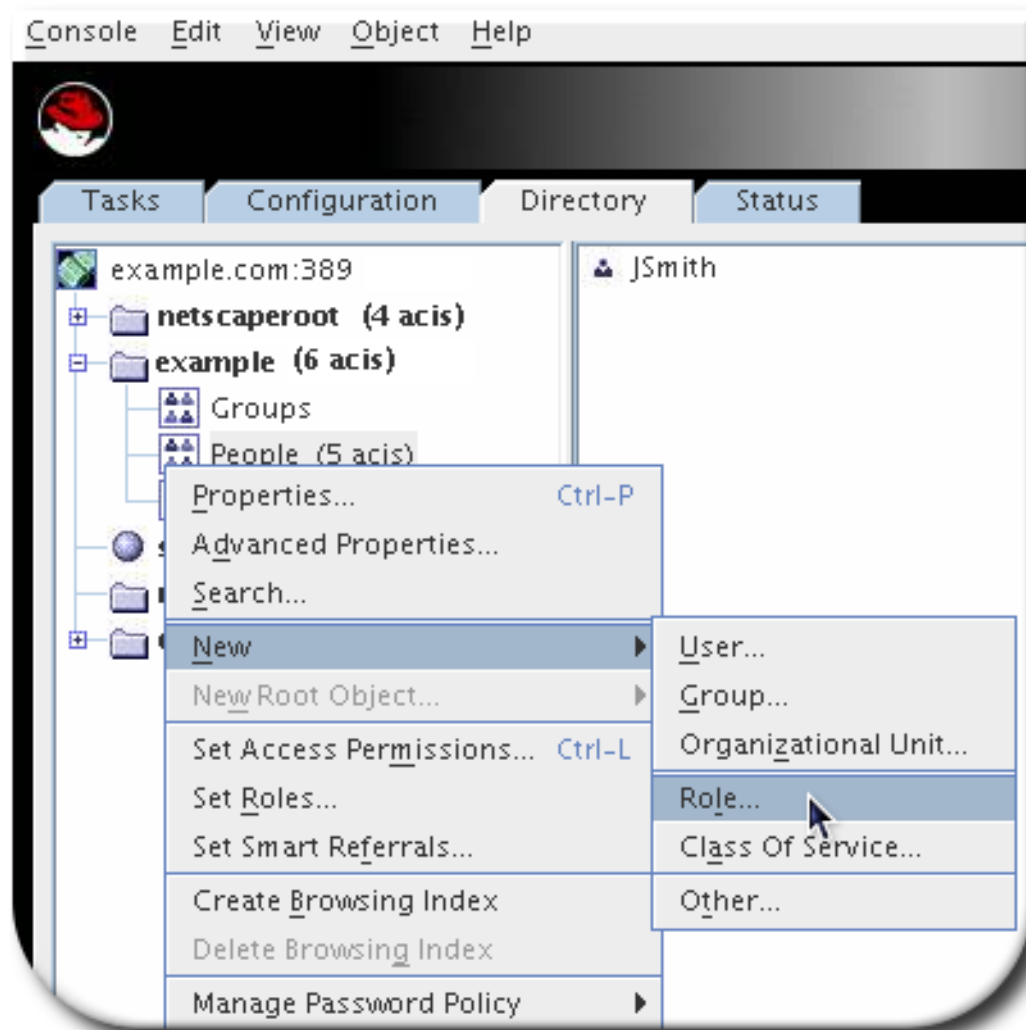
Considerations for using roles are covered in the *Red Hat Directory Server Deployment Guide*.

8.2.2. Creating a Managed Role

Managed roles have an explicit enumerated list of members. Managed roles are added to entries by adding the ***nsRoleDN*** attribute to the entry.

8.2.2.1. Creating a Managed Role in the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the parent entry for the new role.
3. Go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Role**.



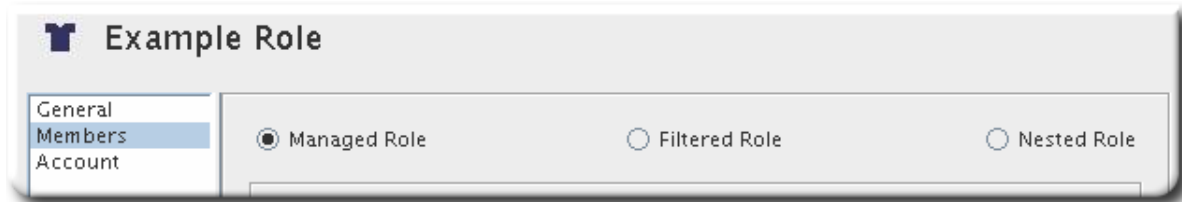
Alternatively, right-click the entry and select **New > Role**.

- Click **General** in the left pane. Type a name for the new role in the **Role Name** field. The role name is required.



- Enter a description of the new role in the **Description** field.
- Click **Members** in the left pane.

- In the right pane, select Managed Role. Click **Add** to add new entries to the list of members.



- In the **Search** drop-down list, select **Users** from the **Search** drop-down list, then click **Search**. Select one of the entries returned, and click **OK**.



- After adding all of the entries, click **OK**.

8.2.2.2. Creating Managed Roles through the Command Line

Roles inherit from the **ldapsubentry** object class, which is defined in the ITU X.509 standard. In addition, each managed role requires two object classes that inherit from the **nsRoleDefinition** object class:

- nsSimpleRoleDefinition
- nsManagedRoleDefinition

A managed role also allows an optional **description** attribute.

Members of a managed role have the **nsRoleDN** attribute in their entry.

This example creates a role which can be assigned to the marketing department.

- Use **ldapmodify** with the **-a** option to add the managed role entry. The new entry must contain the **nsManagedRoleDefinition** object class, which in turn inherits from the **LdapSubEntry**, **nsRoleDefinition**, and **nsSimpleRoleDefinition** object classes.

```
dn: cn=Marketing,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: LdapSubEntry
objectclass: nsRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsSimpleRoleDefinition
```

```
objectclass: nsManagedRoleDefinition
cn: Marketing
description: managed role for marketing staff
```

2. Assign the role to the marketing staff members, one by one, using **ldapmodify**:

```
dn: cn=Bob,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: modify
add: nsRoleDN
nsRoleDN: cn=Marketing,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

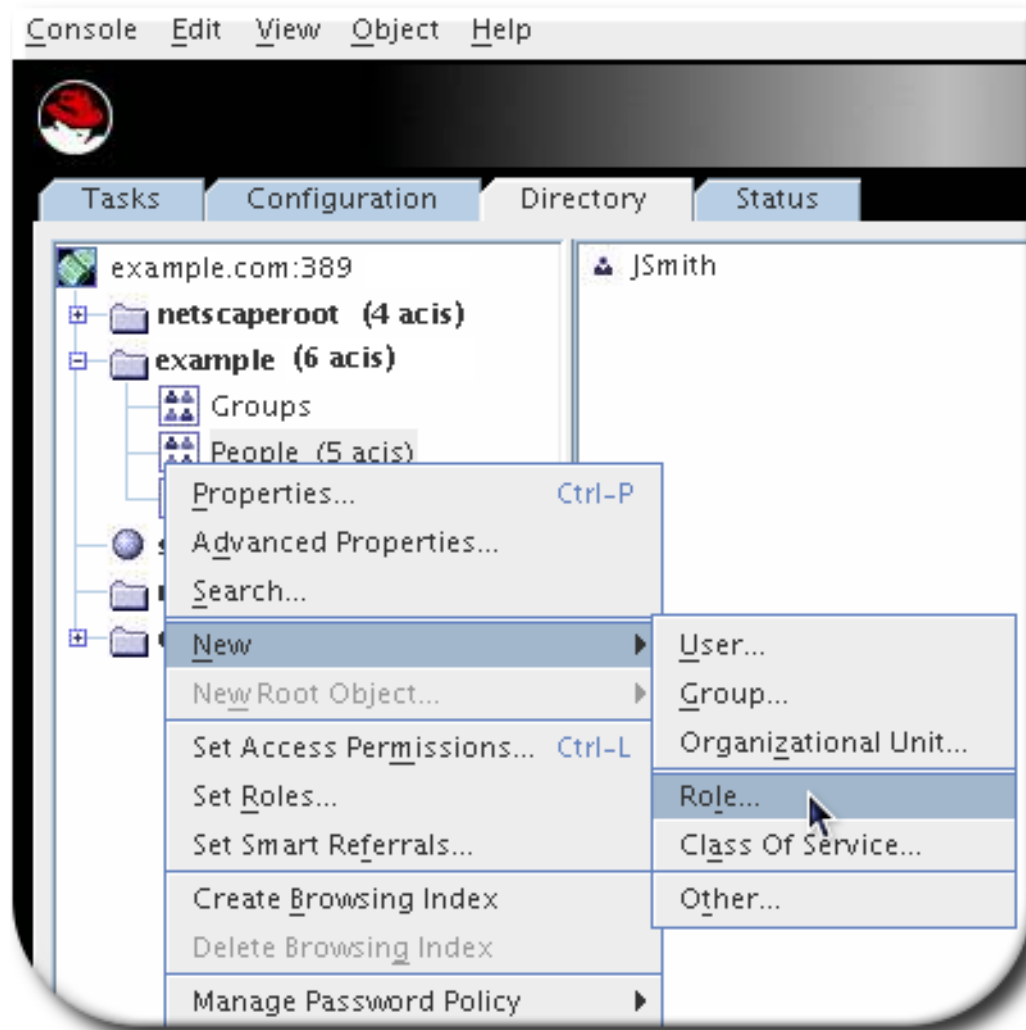
The ***nsRoleDN*** attribute in the entry indicates that the entry is a member of a managed role, **cn=Marketing,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**.

8.2.3. Creating a Filtered Role

Entries are assigned to a filtered role depending whether the entry possesses a specific attribute defined in the role. The role definition specifies an LDAP filter for the target attributes. Entries that match the filter possess (are members of) the role.

8.2.3.1. Creating a Filtered Role in the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the parent entry for the new role.
3. Go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Role**.



Alternatively, right-click the entry and select **New > Role**.

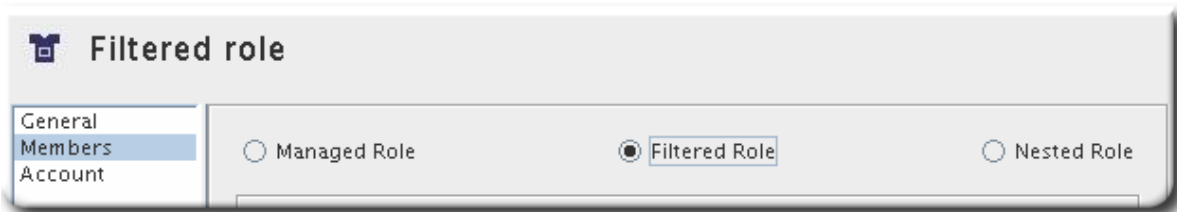
- Click **General** in the left pane. Type a name for the new role in the **Role Name** field. The role name is required.



- Enter a description of the new role in the **Description** field.
- Click **Members** in the left pane.

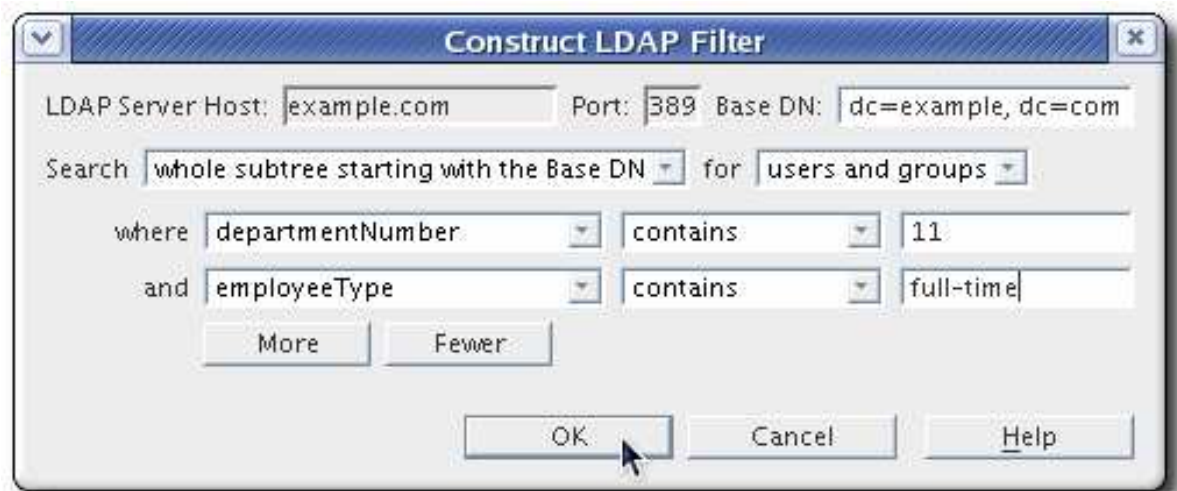
A search dialog box appears briefly.

- In the right pane, select **Filtered Role**.

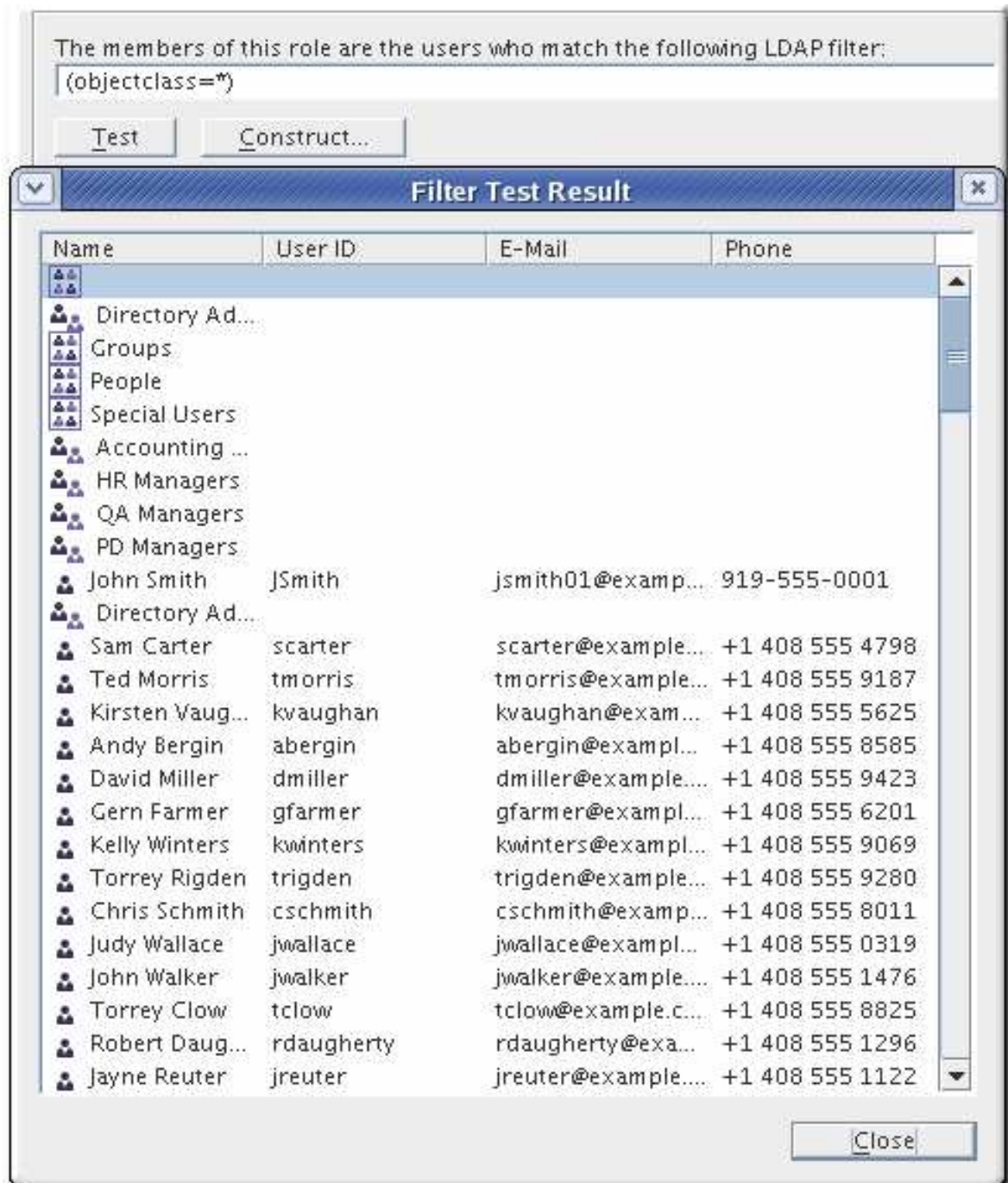


- Enter an LDAP filter in the text field, or click **Construct** to be guided through the construction of an LDAP filter.

The **Construct** opens the standard LDAP URL construction dialog. Ignore the fields for **LDAP Server Host**, **Port**, **Base DN**, and **Search** (since the search scope cannot be set filtered role definitions).



- Select the types of entries to filter from the **For** drop-down list. The entries can be users, groups, or both.
 - Select an attribute from the **Where** drop-down list. The two fields following it refine the search by selecting one of the qualifiers from the drop-down list, such as **as contains, does not contain, is, or is not**. Enter an attribute value in the text box. To add additional filters, click **More**. To remove unnecessary filters, click **Fewer**.
- Click **Test** to try the filter.



10. Click **OK**.

8.2.3.2. Creating a Filtered Role through the Command Line

Roles inherit from the **ldapsubentry** object class, which is defined in the ITU X.509 standard. In addition, each filtered role requires two object classes that inherit from the **nsRoleDefinition** object class:

- nsComplexRoleDefinition
- nsFilteredRoleDefinition

A filtered role entry also requires the **nsRoleFilter** attribute to define the LDAP filter to determine role members. Optionally, the role can take a **description** attribute.

Members of a filtered role are entries that match the filter specified in the **nsRoleFilter** attribute.

This example creates a filtered role which is applied to all sales managers.

1. Run **ldapmodify** with the **-a** option to add a new entry.
2. Create the filtered role entry.

The role entry has the **nsFilteredRoleDefinition** object class, which inherits from the **LdapSubEntry**, **nsRoleDefinition**, and **nsComplexRoleDefinition** object classes.

The **nsRoleFilter** attribute sets a filter for **o** (organization) attributes that contain a value of **sales managers**.

```
dn: cn=SalesManagerFilter,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: LDAPsubentry
objectclass: nsRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsComplexRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsFilteredRoleDefinition
cn: SalesManagerFilter
nsRoleFilter: o=sales managers
Description: filtered role for sales managers
```

The following entry matches the filter (possesses the **o** attribute with the value **sales managers**), and, therefore, it is a member of this filtered role automatically:

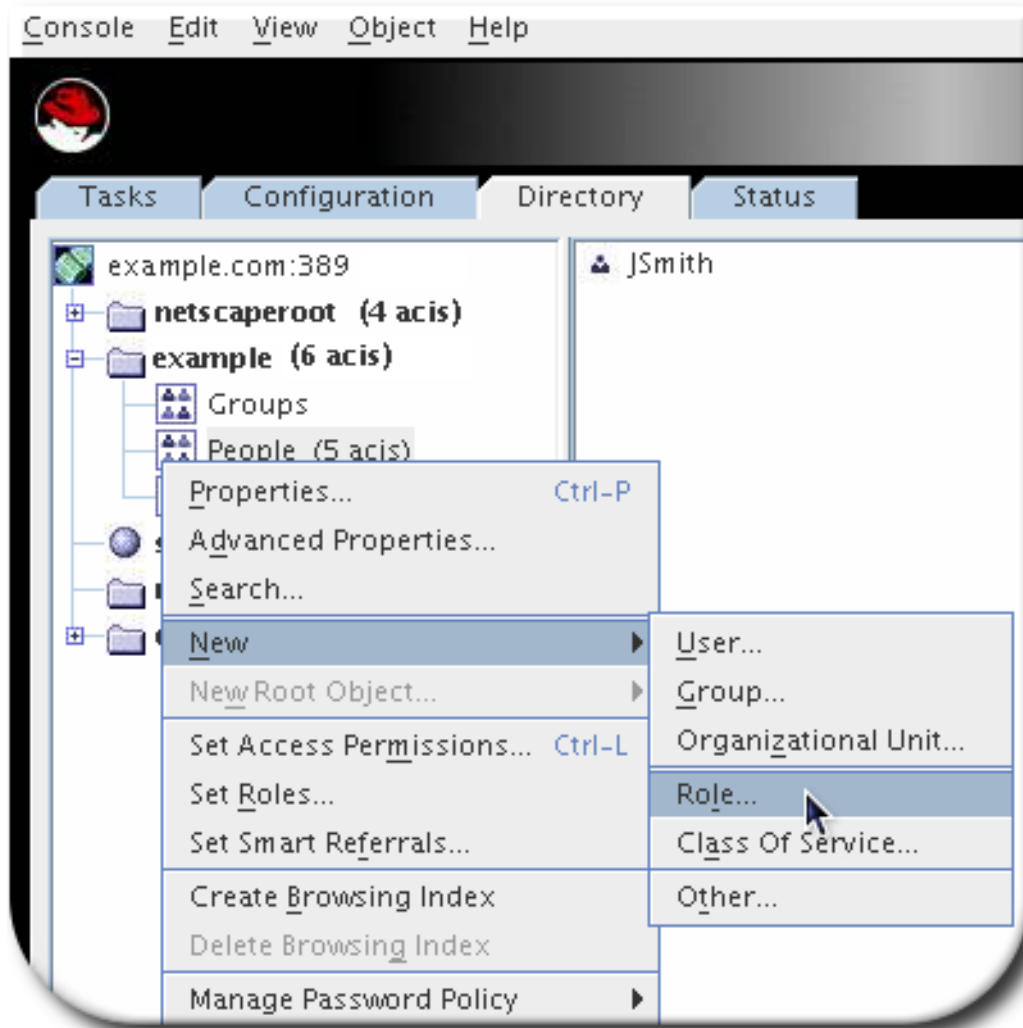
```
dn: cn=Pat Smith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: person
cn: Pat
sn: Smith
userPassword: secret
o: sales managers
```

8.2.4. Creating a Nested Role

Nested roles are roles that contain other roles. Before it is possible to create a nested role, another role must exist. When a nested role is created, the Console displays a list of the roles available for nesting. The roles nested within the nested role are specified using the **nsRoleDN** attribute.

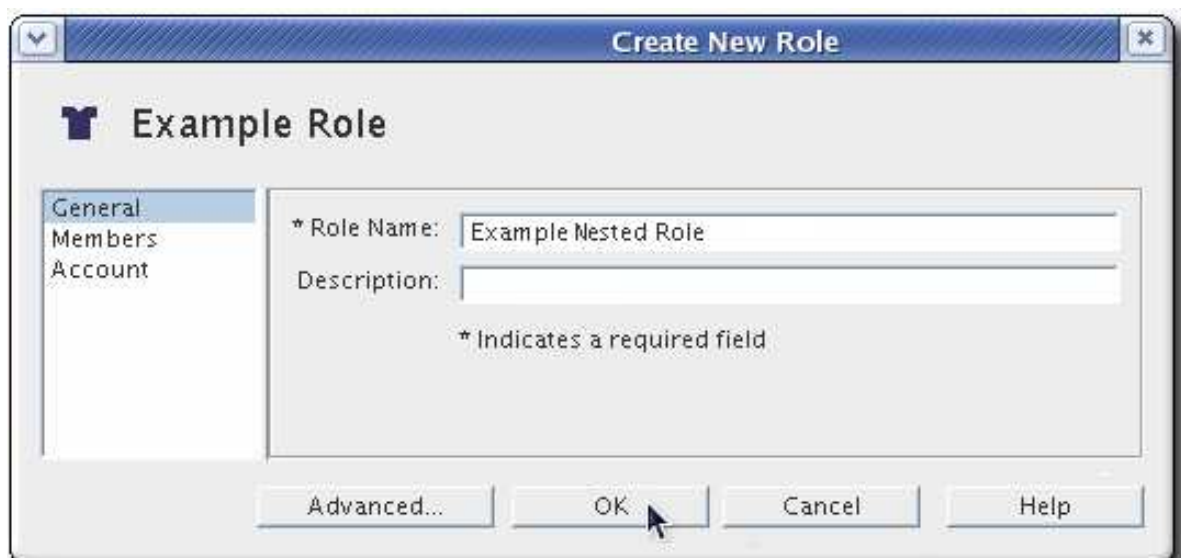
8.2.4.1. Creating a Nested Role in the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the tree in the left navigation pane, and select the parent entry for the new role.
3. Go to the **Object** menu, and select **New > Role**.

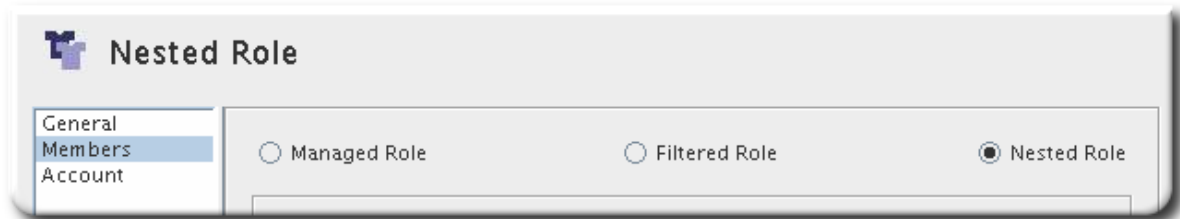


Alternatively, right-click the entry and select **New > Role**.

- Click **General** in the left pane. Type a name for the new role in the **Role Name** field. The role name is required.



- Click **Members** in the left pane.
- In the right pane, select **Nested Role**.



7. Click **Add** to add roles to the list. The members of the nested role are members of other existing roles.
8. Select a role from the **Available roles** list, and click **OK**.



8.2.4.2. Creating Nested Role through the Command Line

Roles inherit from the **ldapsubentry** object class, which is defined in the ITU X.509 standard. In addition, each nested role requires two object classes that inherit from the **nsRoleDefinition** object class:

- nsComplexRoleDefinition
- nsNestedRoleDefinition

A nested role entry also requires the **nsRoleDN** attribute to identify the roles to nest within the container role. Optionally, the role can take a **description** attribute.

Members of a nested role are members of the roles specified in the **nsRoleDN** attributes of the nested role definition entry.

This example creates a single role out of the managed marketing role and filtered sales manager role.

1. Run **ldapmodify** with the **-a** option to add a new entry.
2. Create the nested role entry. The nested role has four object classes:
 - **nsNestedRoleDefinition**
 - **LDAPsubentry** (inherited)
 - **nsRoleDefinition** (inherited)
 - **nsComplexRoleDefinition** (inherited)

The **nsRoleDN** attributes contain the DNs for both the marketing managed role and the sales managers filtered role.

```
dn: cn=MarketingSales,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: LDAPsubentry
objectclass: nsRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsComplexRoleDefinition
objectclass: nsNestedRoleDefinition
cn: MarketingSales
nsRoleDN: cn=SalesManagerFilter,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsRoleDN: cn=Marketing,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
```

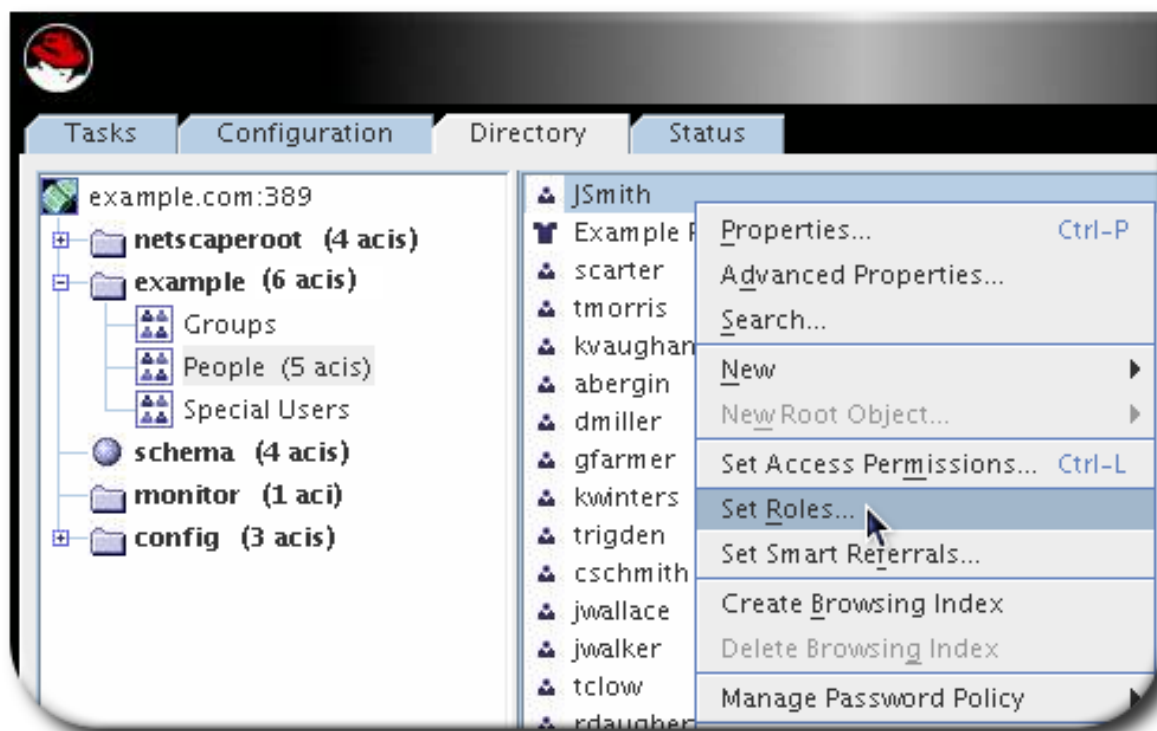
Both of the users in the previous examples, Bob and Pat, are members of this new nested role.

8.2.5. Editing and Assigning Roles to an Entry

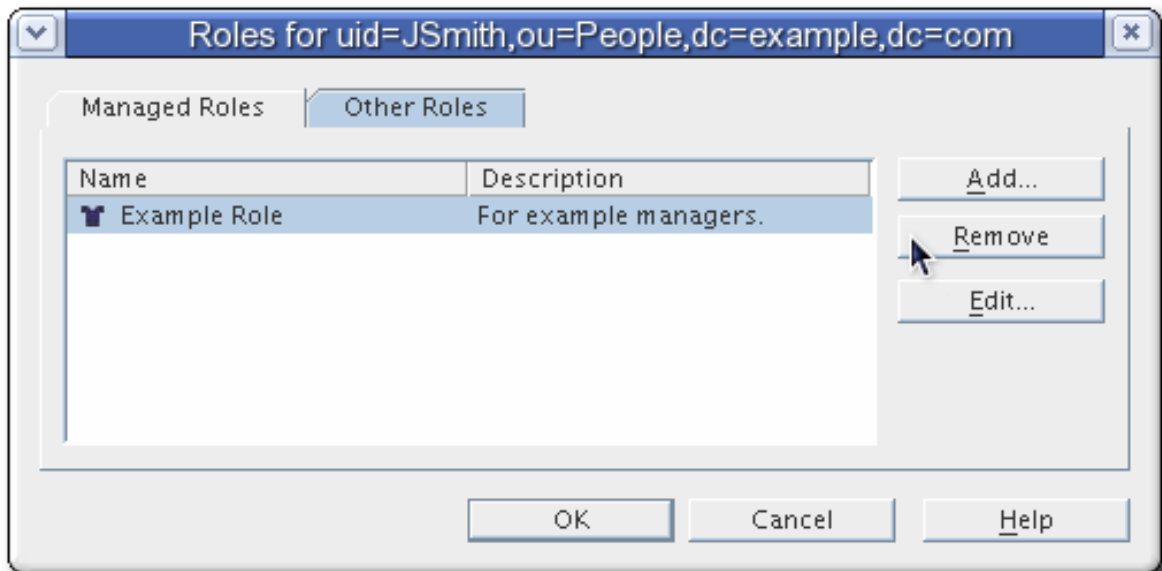
The entries which belong to a role are assigned on the role entry itself. For managed roles, user entries are added explicitly; for filtered roles, they are added through the results of an LDAP filter.

User entries are assigned to the role through the command line by editing the role entry, either by adding the entry as a member or adjusting the filter so it is included. In the Directory Server Console, however, there is a shortcut to add entries to a role by apparently editing the required user entry (but, functionally, this really edits the role entry).

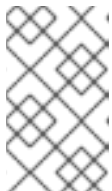
1. Select the **Directory** tab.
2. In the left navigation pane, browse the tree, and select the entry for which to view or edit a role.
3. Select **Set Roles** from the **Object** menu.



4. Select the **Managed Roles** tab to display the managed roles to which this entry belongs.



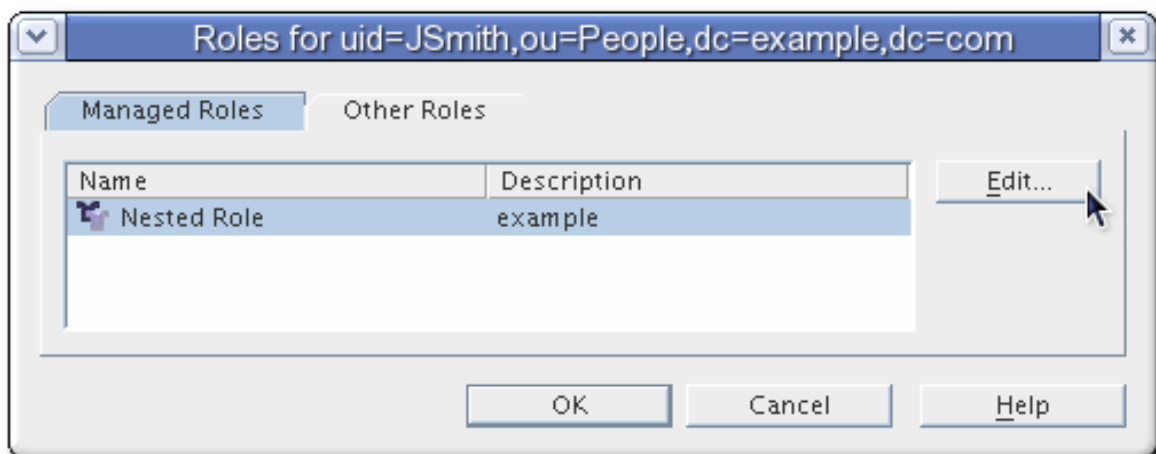
- To add a new managed role, click **Add**, and select an available role from the **Role Selector** window.



NOTE

The configuration for a managed role associated with an entry can be edited by clicking the **Edit** button. The **Edit Entry** dialog box opens, and the general information or members for the role can be changed.

- Select the **Other Roles** tab to view the filtered or nested roles to which this entry belongs.



Click **Edit** to make changes to any filtered or nested roles associated with the entry.

8.2.6. Viewing Roles for an Entry through the Command Line

Role assignments are always visible for an entry when it is displayed in the Directory Server Console. Role assignments are not returned automatically through the command line, however.

The nsRole attribute is an operational attribute. In LDAP, operational attributes must be requested explicitly. They are not returned by default with the regular attributes in the schema of the entry. You can either explicitly request single operational attributes by listing them or use **+** to output all operational

attributes for result objects. For example, this **ldapsearch** command returns the list of roles of which **uid=scarter** is a member, in addition to the regular attributes for the entry:

```
# ldapsearch -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -b "dc=example,dc=com"
-s sub -x "(uid=scarter)" \* nsRole

dn: uid=scarter,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectClass: inetorgperson
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
uid: scarter
cn: Sam Carter
sn: Carter
givenName: Sam
mail: scarter@example.com
userPassword: {SSHA}6BE31mhTfcYyIQF60kWIInEL8slvPZ59hvFTRKw==
manager: uid=lbrown,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsRole: cn=Role for Managers,dc=example,dc=com
nsRole: cn=Role for Accounting,dc=example,dc=com
```



IMPORTANT

Be sure to use the **nsRole** attribute, not the **nsRoleDN** attribute, to evaluate role membership.

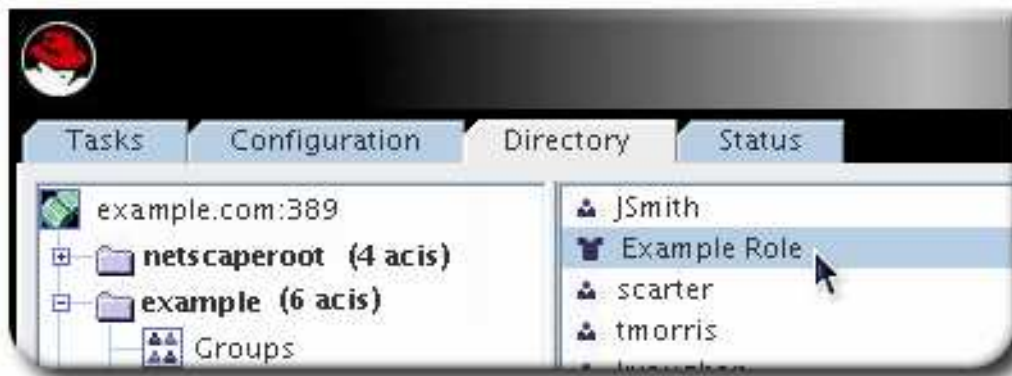
8.2.7. Making a Role Inactive or Active

The concept of activating/inactivating roles allows entire groups of entries to be activated or inactivated in just one operation. That is, the members of a role can be temporarily disabled by inactivating the role to which they belong.

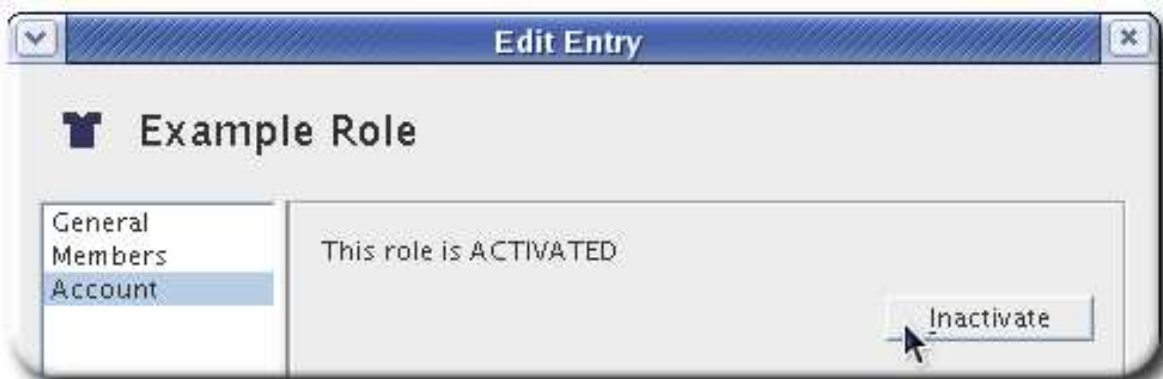
When a role is inactivated, it does not mean that the user cannot bind to the server using that role entry. The meaning of an inactivated role is that the user cannot bind to the server using any of the entries that belong to that role; the entries that belong to an inactivated role will have the **nsAccountLock** attribute set to **true**.

Members of a role can be temporarily disabled by inactivating the role to which they belong. Inactivating a role inactivates the entries possessed by the role, not the role itself.

1. Select the **Directory** tab.
2. Browse the navigation tree in the left pane to locate the base DN for the role. Roles appear in the right pane with other entries.



3. Double-click the role, open the **Account** tab, and click the **Inactivate** button.



Alternatively, select the role. Right-click the role and select **Inactivate** from the menu.

The role is inactivated.

To reactivate a disabled role, re-open the role configuration or open the **Object** menu, and select **Activate**. All of the members of the role are re-enabled.

8.2.8. Viewing the Activation Status for Entries

When a nested role is inactivated, a user cannot bind to the server if it is a member of any role within the nested role. All the entries that belong to a role that directly or indirectly are members of the nested role have **nsAccountLock** set to **true**. There can be several layers of nested roles, and inactivating a nested role at any point in the nesting will inactivate all roles and users beneath it.

The Directory Server Console automatically shows the active or inactive status of entries.

To see the inactivated entries, select **Inactivation State** from the **View** menu. Members of an inactivated role have a red slash through them. For example, John Smith is a member of the inactive Example Role.



The **nsAccountLock** attribute is an operational attribute and must be explicitly requested in the search command in the list of search attributes or specify **+** to request all operational attributes. For example:

```
# ldapsearch -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -b "dc=example,dc=com"
-s sub -x "(uid=scarter)" nsAccountLock
```

8.2.9. About Deleting Roles

Deleting a role deletes the role entry but does not delete the **nsRoleDN** attribute for each role member. To delete the **nsRoleDN** attribute for each role member, enable the Referential Integrity plug-in, and configure it to manage the **nsRoleDN** attribute. For more information on the Referential Integrity plug-in, see [Chapter 5, Maintaining Referential Integrity](#).

8.2.10. Using Roles Securely

Not every role is suitable for use in a security context. When creating a new role, consider how easily the role can be assigned to and removed from an entry. Sometimes it is appropriate for users to be able to add or remove themselves easily from a role. For example, if there is an interest group role called **Mountain Biking**, interested users should be able to add themselves or remove themselves easily.

However, it is inappropriate to have such open roles for some security situations. One potential security risk is inactivating user accounts by inactivating roles. Inactive roles have special ACIs defined for their suffix. If an administrator allows users to add and remove themselves from roles freely, then in some circumstance, they may be able to remove themselves from an inactive role to prevent their accounts from being locked.

For example, user A possesses the managed role, **MR**. The **MR** role has been locked using account inactivation. This means that user A cannot bind to the server because the **nsAccountLock** attribute is computed as **true** for that user. However, if user A was already bound to Directory Server and noticed that he is now locked through the MR role, the user can remove the **nsRoleDN** attribute from his entry and unlock himself if there are no ACIs preventing him.

To prevent users from removing the **nsRoleDN** attribute, use the following ACIs depending upon the type of role being used.

- *Managed roles.* For entries that are members of a managed role, use the following ACI to prevent users from unlocking themselves by removing the appropriate **nsRoleDN**:

```
aci: (targetattr="nsRoleDN") (targetfilters= add=nsRoleDN:(!
(nsRoleDN=cn=AdministratorRole,dc=example,dc=com)), del=nsRoleDN:(!
(nsRoleDN=cn=nsManagedDisabledRole,dc=example,dc=com))) (version3.0;acl "allow mod
of nsRoleDN by self but not to critical values"; allow(write) userdn=ldap:///self;)
```

- *Filtered roles.* The attributes that are part of the filter should be protected so that the user cannot relinquish the filtered role by modifying an attribute. The user should not be allowed to add, delete, or modify the attribute used by the filtered role. If the value of the filter attribute is computed, then all attributes that can modify the value of the filter attribute should be protected in the same way.
- *Nested roles.* A nested role is comprised of filtered and managed roles, so both ACIs should be considered for modifying the attributes (**nsRoleDN** or something else) of the roles that comprise the nested role.

For more information about account inactivation, see [Section 19.15, "Manually Inactivating Users and Roles"](#).

8.3. AUTOMATICALLY CREATING DUAL ENTRIES

Some clients and integration with Red Hat Directory Server require dual entries. For example, both Posix systems typically have a group for each user. The Directory Server's *Managed Entries Plug-in* creates a new managed entry, with accurate and specific values for attributes, automatically whenever an appropriate origin entry is created.

8.3.1. About Managed Entries

The basic idea behind the Managed Entries Plug-in is that there are situations when Entry A is created and there should automatically be an Entry B with related attribute values. For example, when a Posix user (**posixAccount** entry) is created, a corresponding group entry (**posixGroup** entry) should also be created. An instance of the Managed Entries Plug-in identifies what entry (the *origin entry*) triggers the plug-in to automatically generate a new entry (the *managed entry*).

The plug-in works within a defined scope of the directory tree, so only entries within that subtree and that match the given search filter trigger a Managed Entries operation.

Much like configuring a class of service, a managed entry is configured through two entries:

- A definition entry, that identifies the scope of the plug-in instance and the template to use
- A template entry, that models what the final managed entry will look like

8.3.1.1. About the Instance Definition Entry

As with the Linked Attributes and DNA Plug-ins, the Managed Entries Plug-in has a container entry in **cn=plugins,cn=config**, and each unique configuration instance of the plug-in has a definition entry beneath that container.

An instance of the Managed Entries Plug-in defines three things:

- The search criteria to identify the origin entries (using a search scope and a search filter)
- The subtree under which to create the managed entries (the new entry location)
- The template entry to use for the managed entries

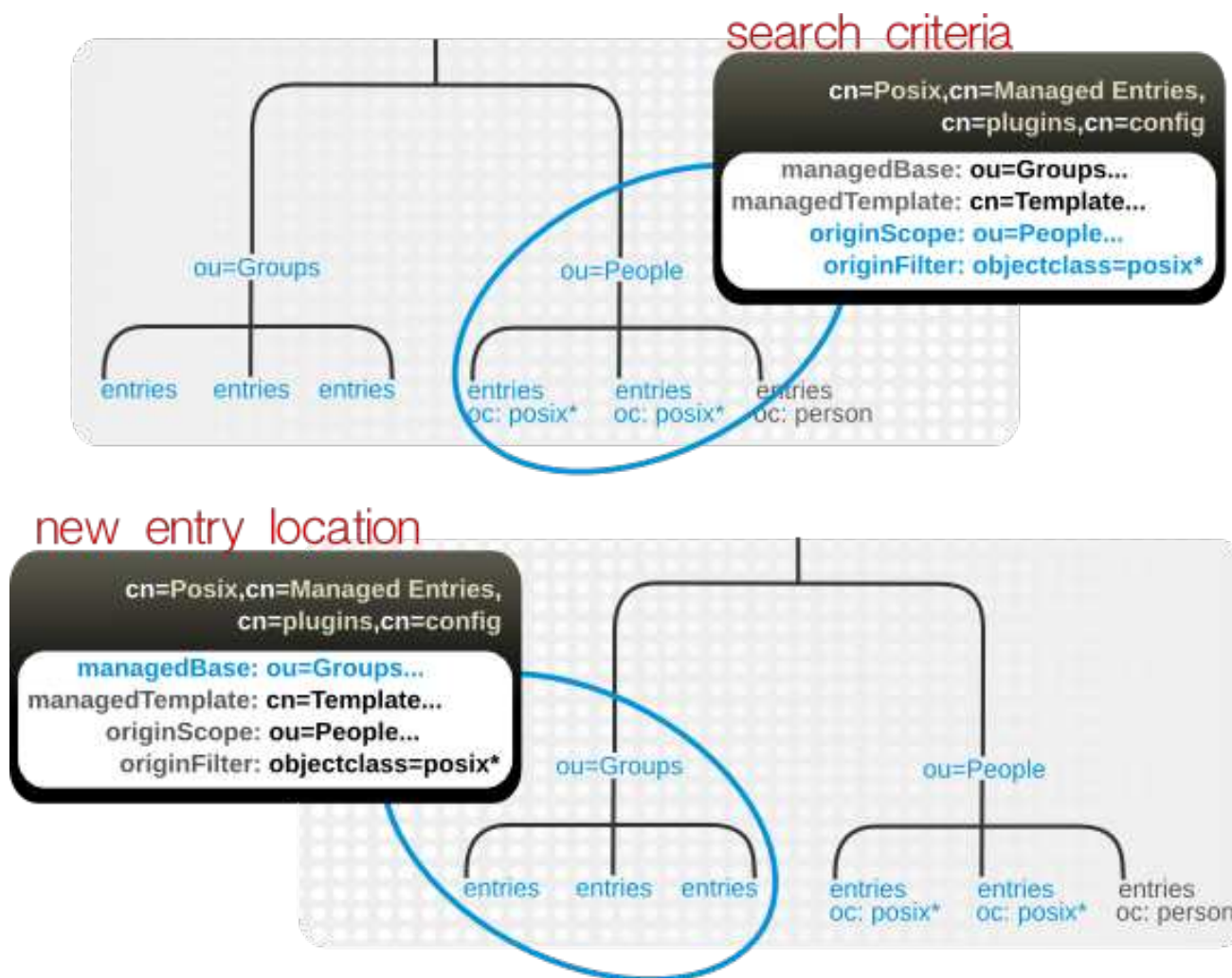


Figure 8.2. Defining Managed Entries

For example:

```
dn: cn=Posix User-Group,cn=Managed Entries,cn=plugins,cn=config
objectclass: extensibleObject
cn: Posix User-Group
originScope: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
originFilter: objectclass=posixAccount
managedBase: ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
managedTemplate: cn=Posix User-Group Template,ou=Templates,dc=example,dc=com
```

The origin entry does not have to have any special configuration or settings to create a managed entry; it simply has to be created within the scope of the plug-in and match the given search filter.

8.3.1.2. About the Template Entry

Each instance of the plug-in uses a template entry which defines the managed entry configuration. The template effectively lays out the entry, from the object classes to the entry values.



NOTE

Since the template is referenced in the definition entry, it can be located anywhere in the directory. However, it is recommended that the template entry be under the replicated suffix so that any other masters in multi-master replication all use the same template for their local instances of the Managed Entries Plug-in.

The concept of a template entry is similar to the templates used in CoS, but there are some important differences. The managed entry template is slightly different than the type of template used for a class of service. For a class of service, the template contains a single attribute with a specific value that is fed into all of the entries which belong to that CoS. Any changes to the class of service are immediately reflected in the associated entries, because the CoS attributes in those entries are virtual attributes, not truly attributes set on the entry.

The template entry for the Managed Entries Plug-in, on the other hand, is not a central entry that supplies values to associated entries. It is a true template – it lays out what is in the entry. The template entry can contain both static attributes (ones with pre-defined values, similar to a CoS) and mapped attributes (attributes that pull their values or parts of values from the origin entry). The template is referenced when the managed entry is created and then any changes are applied to the managed entry *only* when the origin entry is changed and the template is evaluated again by the plug-in to apply those updates.

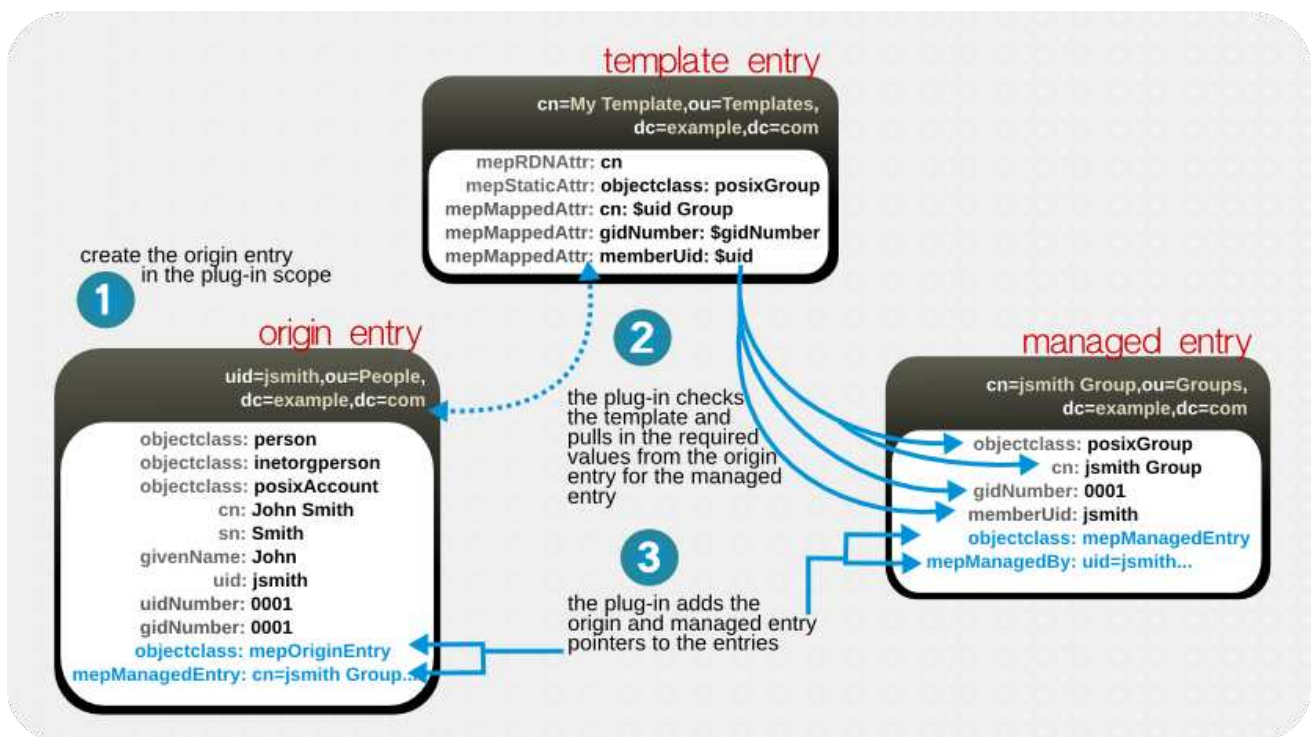


Figure 8.3. Templates, Managed Entries, and Origin Entries

The template can provide a specific value for an attribute in the managed entry by using a *static* attribute in the template. The template can also use a value that is derived from some attribute in the origin entry, so the value may be different from entry to entry; that is a *mapped* attribute, because it references the attribute type in the origin entry, not a value.

A mapped value use a combination of token (dynamic values) and static values, but it can only use *one token in a mapped attribute*.

```
dn: cn=Posix User-Group Template,ou=Templates,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: mepTemplateEntry
```



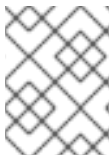
```

cn: Posix User-Group Template
mepRDNAttr: cn
mepStaticAttr: objectclass: posixGroup
mepMappedAttr: cn: $cn Group Entry
mepMappedAttr: gidNumber: $gidNumber
mepMappedAttr: memberUid: $uid

```

The mapped attributes in the template use tokens, prepended by a dollar sign (\$), to pull in values from the origin entry and use it in the managed entry. (If a dollar sign is actually in the managed attribute value, then the dollar sign can be escaped by using two dollar signs in a row.)

A mapped attribute definition can be quoted with curly braces, such as **Attr: \${cn}test**. Quoting a token value is not required if the token name is not immediately followed by a character that is valid in an attribute name, such as a space or comma. For example, **\$cn test** is acceptable in an attribute definition because a space character immediately follow the attribute name, but **\$cntest** is not valid because the Managed Entries Plug-in attempts to look for an attribute named **cntest** in the origin entry. Using curly braces identifies the attribute token name.



NOTE

Make sure that the values given for static and mapped attributes comply with the required attribute syntax.

8.3.1.3. Entry Attributes Written by the Managed Entries Plug-in

Both the origin entry and the managed entry have special managed entries attributes which indicate that they are being managed by an instance of the Managed Entries Plug-in. For the origin entry, the plug-in adds links to associated managed entries.

```

dn: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: mepOriginEntry
objectclass: posixAccount
...
sn: Smith
mail: jsmith@example.com
mepManagedEntry: cn=jsmith Posix Group,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com

```

On the managed entry, the plug-in adds attributes that point back to the origin entry, in addition to the attributes defined in the template.

```

dn: cn=jsmith Posix Group,ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: mepManagedEntry
objectclass: posixGroup
...
mepManagedBy: uid=jsmith,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com

```

Using special attributes to indicate managed and origin entries makes it easy to identify the related entries and to assess changes made by the Managed Entries Plug-in.

8.3.1.4. Managed Entries Plug-in and Directory Server Operations

The Managed Entries Plug-in has some impact on how the Directory Server carries out common operations, like add and delete operations.

Table 8.4. Managed Entries Plug-in and Directory Server Operations

Operation	Effect by the Managed Entries Plug-in
Add	<p>With every add operation, the server checks to see if the new entry is within the scope of any Managed Entries Plug-in instance. If it meets the criteria for an origin entry, then a managed entry is created and managed entry-related attributes are added to both the origin and managed entry.</p>
Modify	<p>If an origin entry is modified, it triggers the plug-in to update the managed entry. Changing a <i>template</i> entry, however, does not update the managed entry automatically. Any changes to the template entry are not reflected in the managed entry until after the next time the origin entry is modified.</p> <p>The mapped managed attributes <i>within</i> a managed entry cannot be modified manually, only by the Managed Entry Plug-in. Other attributes in the managed entry (including static attributes added by the Managed Entry Plug-in) can be modified manually.</p>
Delete	<p>If an origin entry is deleted, then the Managed Entries Plug-in will also delete any managed entry associated with that entry. There are some limits on what entries can be deleted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A template entry cannot be deleted if it is currently referenced by a plug-in instance definition. ● A managed entry cannot be deleted except by the Managed Entries Plug-in.
Rename	<p>If an origin entry is renamed, then plug-in updates the corresponding managed entry. If the entry is moved <i>out</i> of the plug-in scope, then the managed entry is deleted, while if an entry is moved <i>into</i> the plug-in scope, it is treated like an add operation and a new managed entry is created. As with delete operations, there are limits on what entries can be renamed or moved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A configuration definition entry cannot be moved out of the Managed Entries Plug-in container entry. If the entry is removed, that plug-in instance is inactivated. ● If an entry is moved <i>into</i> the Managed Entries Plug-in container entry, then it is validated and treated as an active configuration definition. ● A template entry cannot be renamed or moved if it is currently referenced by a plug-in instance definition. ● A managed entry cannot be renamed or moved except by the Managed Entries Plug-in.
Replication	<p>The Managed Entries Plug-in operations <i>are not initiated by replication updates</i>. If an add or modify operation for an entry in the plug-in scope is replicated to another replica, that operation does not trigger the Managed Entries Plug-in instance on the replica to create or update an entry. The only way for updates for managed entries to be replicated is to replicate the final managed entry over to the replica.</p>

8.3.2. Creating the Managed Entries Template Entry

The first entry to create is the template entry. The template entry must contain all of the configuration required for the generated, managed entry. This is done by setting the attribute-value assertions in static and mapped attributes in the template:

```
mepStaticAttr: attribute: specific_value
mepMappedAttr: attribute: $token_value
```

The static attributes set an explicit value; mapped attributes pull some value from the originating entry is used to supply the given attribute. The values of these attributes will be tokens in the form *attribute:\$attr*. As long as the syntax of the expanded token of the attribute does not violate the required attribute syntax, then other terms and strings can be used in the attribute. For example:

```
mepMappedAttr: cn: Managed Group for $cn
```

There are some syntax rules that must be followed for the managed entries:

- A mapped value use a combination of token (dynamic values) and static values, but it can only use *one token per mapped attribute* .
- The mapped attributes in the template use tokens, prepended by a dollar sign (\$), to pull in values from the origin entry and use it in the managed entry. (If a dollar sign is actually in the managed attribute value, then the dollar sign can be escaped by using two dollar signs in a row.)
- A mapped attribute definition can be quoted with curly braces, such as **Attr: \${cn}test**. Quoting a token value is not required if the token name is not immediately followed by a character that is valid in an attribute name, such as a space or comma. For example, **\$cn test** is acceptable in an attribute definition because a space character immediately follow the attribute name, but **\$cntest** is not valid because the Managed Entries Plug-in attempts to look for an attribute named **cntest** in the origin entry. Using curly braces identifies the attribute token name.
- Make sure that the values given for static and mapped attributes comply with the required attribute syntax.



NOTE

Make sure that the values given for static and mapped attributes comply with the required attribute syntax. For example, if one of the mapped attributes is **gidNumber**, then the mapped value should be an integer.

Table 8.5. Attributes for the Managed Entry Template

Attribute	Description
mepTemplateEntry (object class)	Identifies the entry as a template.
cn	Gives the common name of the entry.
mepMappedAttr	Contains an attribute-token pair that the plug-in uses to create an attribute in the managed entry with a value taken from the originating entry.

Attribute	Description
mepRDNAAttr	Specifies which attribute to use as the naming attribute in the managed entry. The attribute used as the RDN must be a mapped attribute for the configuration to be valid.
mepStaticAttr	Contains an attribute-value pair that will be used, with that specified value, in the managed entry.

To create a template entry:

1. Run **ldapmodify** to add the entry. This entry can be located anywhere in the directory tree.

```
dn: cn=Posix User Template,ou=templates,dc=example,dc=com
cn: Posix User Template
...
```

You can also use the Directory Server Console to create the entry, as described in [Section 3.2.2, "Creating Directory Entries"](#).

2. Give it the **mepTemplateEntry** object class to indicate that it is a template entry.

```
objectClass: top
objectclass: mepTemplateEntry
...
```

3. Set the attributes for the entry; these are described in [Table 8.5, "Attributes for the Managed Entry Template"](#). The RDN attribute (**mepRDNAAttr**) is required. The attribute parameters are optional and the values depend on the type of entry that the plug-in will create. Make sure that whatever attribute you use for the naming attribute is also contained in the template entry as a mapped attribute.



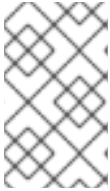
NOTE

Attributes which will be the same for each managed entry – like the object class for the entries – should use the **mepStaticAttr** attribute to set the values manually.

```
mepRDNAAttr: cn
mepStaticAttr: objectclass: posixGroup
mepMappedAttr: cn: $cn Group Entry
mepMappedAttr: gidNumber: $gidNumber
mepMappedAttr: memberUid: $uid
```

8.3.3. Creating the Managed Entries Instance Definition

Once the template entry is created, then it is possible to create a definition entry that points to that template. The definition entry is an instance of the Managed Entries Plug-in.

**NOTE**

When the definition is created, the server checks to see if the specified template entry exists. If the template does not exist, then the server returns a warning that the definition configuration is invalid.

The definition entry must define the parameters to recognize the potential origin entry and the information to create the managed entry. The attributes available for the plug-in instance are listed in [Table 8.6, "Attributes for the Managed Entries Definition Entry"](#).

Table 8.6. Attributes for the Managed Entries Definition Entry

Attribute Name	Description
originFilter	The search filter to use to search for and identify the entries within the subtree which require a managed entry. The syntax is the same as a regular search filter.
originScope	The base subtree which contains the potential origin entries for the plug-in to monitor.
managedTemplate	Identifies the template entry to use to create the managed entry. This entry can be located anywhere in the directory tree.
managedBase	The subtree under which to create the managed entries.

**NOTE**

The Managed Entries Plug-in is enabled by default. If this plug-in is disabled, then re-enable it as described in [Section 1.9.2.2, "Enabling Plug-ins in the Directory Server Console"](#).

To create an instance:

1. Create the new plug-in instance below the **cn=Managed Entries,cn=plugins,cn=config** container entry using **ldapmodify**.

```
dn: cn=instance,cn=Managed Entries,cn=plugins,cn=config
...
```

2. Set the scope and filter for the origin entry search, the location of the new managed entries, and the template entry to use. These required attributes are listed in [Table 8.6, "Attributes for the Managed Entries Definition Entry"](#).

```
objectClass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
cn: Posix User-Group
originScope: ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
originFilter: objectclass=posixAccount
managedBase: ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
managedTemplate: cn=Posix User-Group Template,ou=Templates,dc=example,dc=com
```

3. If the Directory Server is not configured to enable dynamic plug-ins, restart the server to load the modified new plug-in instance.

8.3.4. Putting Managed Entries Plug-in Configuration in a Replicated Database

As [Section 8.3.1, "About Managed Entries"](#) highlights, different instances of the Managed Entries Plug-in are created as children beneath the container plug-in entry in **cn=plugins,cn=com**. (This is common for plug-ins which allow multiple instances.) The drawback to this is that the configuration entries in **cn=plugins,cn=com** are not replicated, so the configuration has to be re-created on each Directory Server instance.

The Managed Entries Plug-in entry allows the **nsslapd-pluginConfigArea** attribute. This attribute to another container entry, in the main database area, which contains the plug-in instance entries. This container entry can be in a replicated database, which allows the plug-in configuration to be replicated.

1. Using **ldapmodify**, create a container entry in a subtree that is replicated.

```
dn: cn=managed entries container,ou=containers,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectClass: extensibleObject
objectClass: nsContainer
cn: managed entries container
```

2. Using **ldapmodify**, add the **nsslapd-pluginConfigArea** attribute to the Managed Entries Plug-in entry that points back to the container entry.

```
dn: cn=Managed Entries,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsslapd-pluginConfigArea
nsslapd-pluginConfigArea: cn=managed entries
container,ou=containers,dc=example,dc=com
```

3. Move or create the definition ([Section 8.3.3, "Creating the Managed Entries Instance Definition"](#)) and template ([Section 8.3.2, "Creating the Managed Entries Template Entry"](#)) entries under the new container entry.

8.4. USING VIEWS

Virtual directory tree views, or *views*, create a virtual directory hierarchy, so it is easy to navigate entries, without having to make sure those entries physically exist in any particular place. The view uses information about the entries to place them in the view hierarchy, similarly to members of a filtered role or a dynamic group. Views superimpose a DIT hierarchy over a set of entries, and to client applications, views appear as ordinary container hierarchies.

8.4.1. About Views

Views create a directory tree similar to the regular hierarchy, such as using organizational unit entries for subtrees, but views entries have an additional object class (**nsview**) and a filter attribute (**nsviewfilter**) that set up a filter for the entries which belong in that view. Once the view container entry is added, all of the entries that match the view filter instantly populate the view. The target entries only *appear* to exist in the view; their true location never changes. For example, a view may be created as **ou=Location Views**, and a filter is set for **l=Mountain View**. Every entry, such as **cn=Jane Smith,l=Mountain View,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**, is immediately listed under the **ou=Location Views** entry, but the real **cn=Jane Smith** entry remains in the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** subtree.



Figure 8.4. A Directory Tree with a Virtual DIT View hierarchy

Virtual DIT views behave like normal DITs in that a subtree or a one-level search can be performed with the expected results being returned.



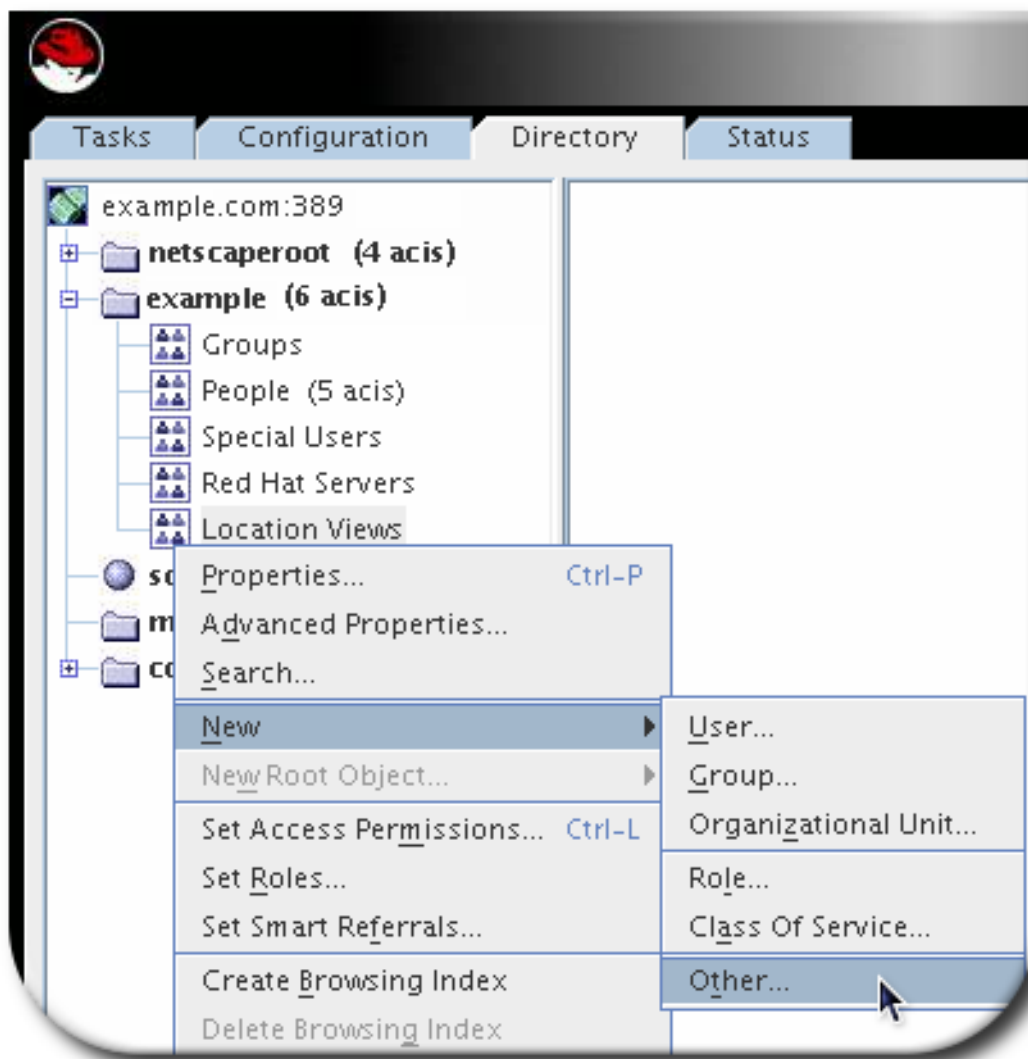
NOTE

There is a sample LDIF file with example views entries, **Example-views.ldif**, installed with Directory Server. This file is in the `/usr/share/dirsrv/data/` directory on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7. The sections in this chapter assume **Example-views.ldif** is imported to the server.

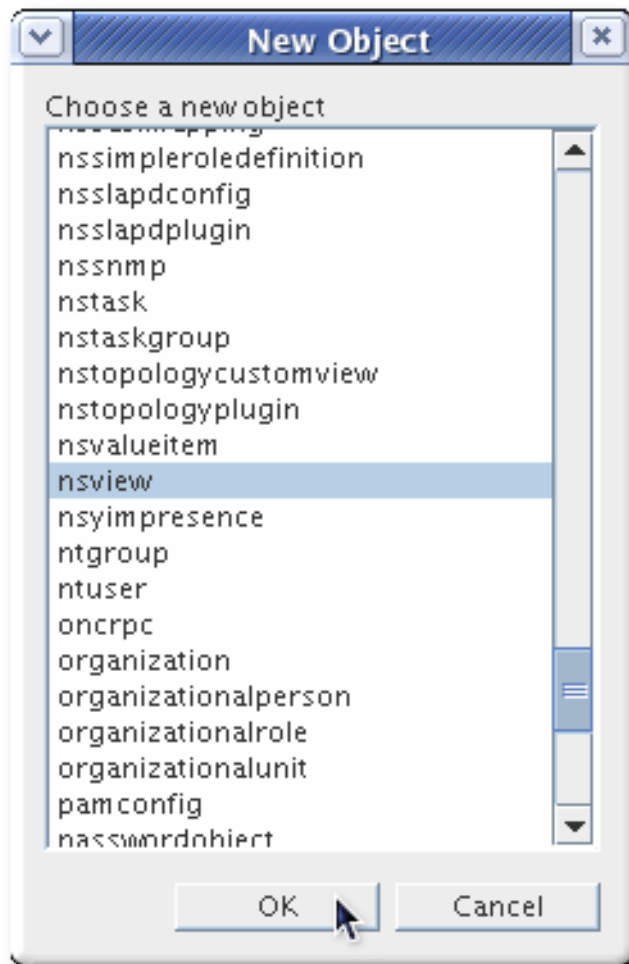
The *Red Hat Directory Server Deployment Guide* has more information on how to integrate views with the directory tree hierarchy.

8.4.2. Creating Views in the Console

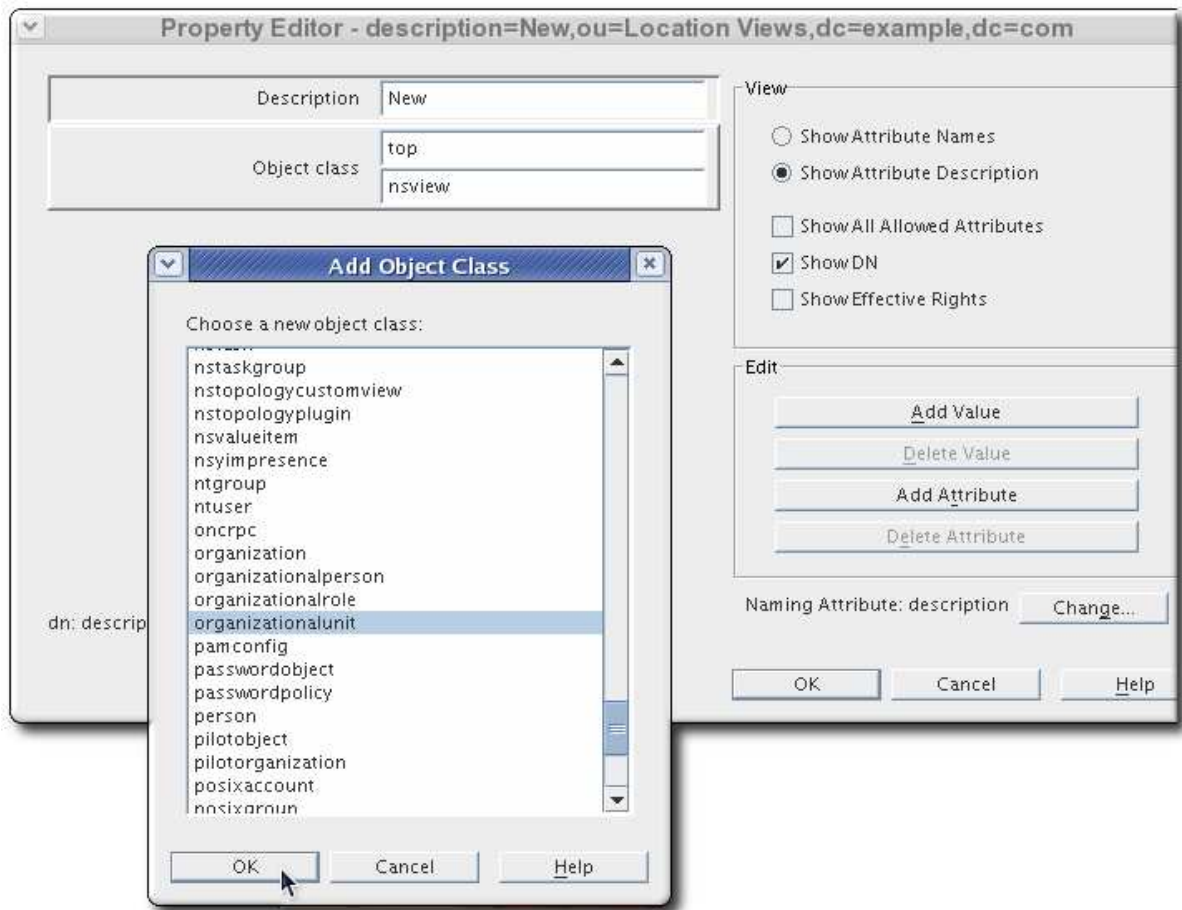
1. Select the **Directory** tab.
2. In the left navigation tree, create an organizational unit suffix to hold the views. For instance, for views based on the locality (**l**) attribute, name this organizational unit **Location Views**. Creating sub suffixes is described in [Section 2.1.1.2, "Creating a New Sub Suffix Using the Console"](#).
3. Right-click **ou=Location Views**, and select **New > Other**.



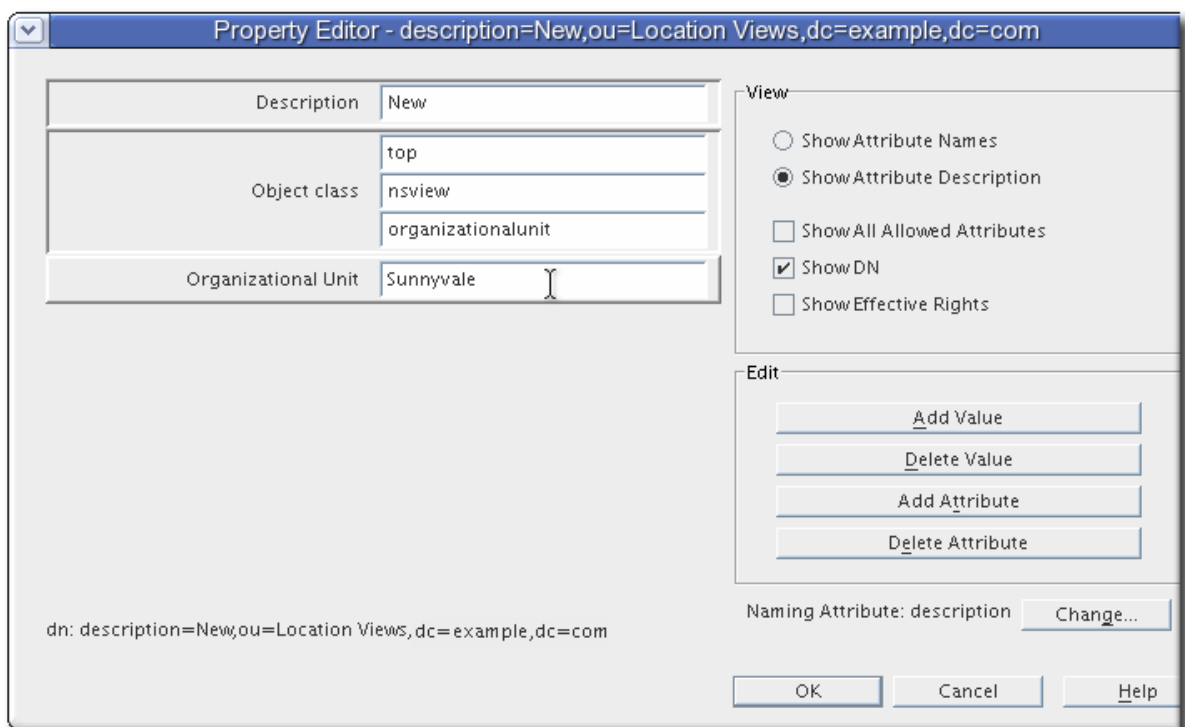
4. Select **nsview** from the **New Object** menu, and click **OK**.



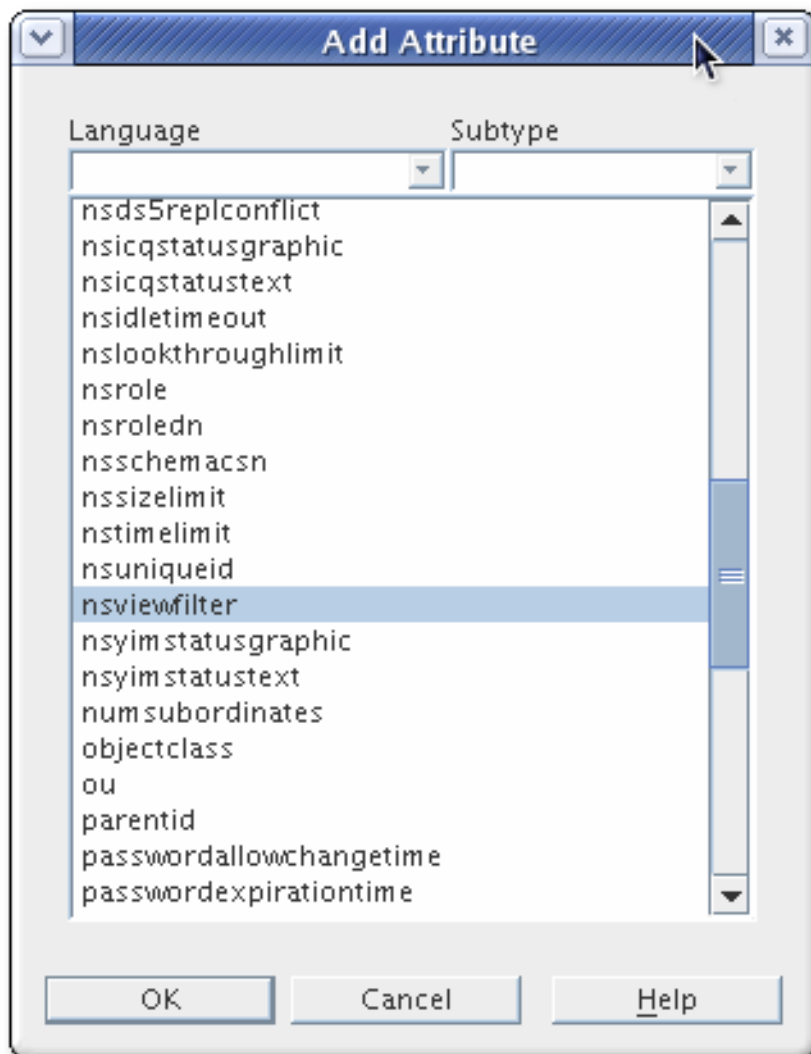
5. In the **Property Editor** window, click the **Add Value** button, and add the organization unit object class.



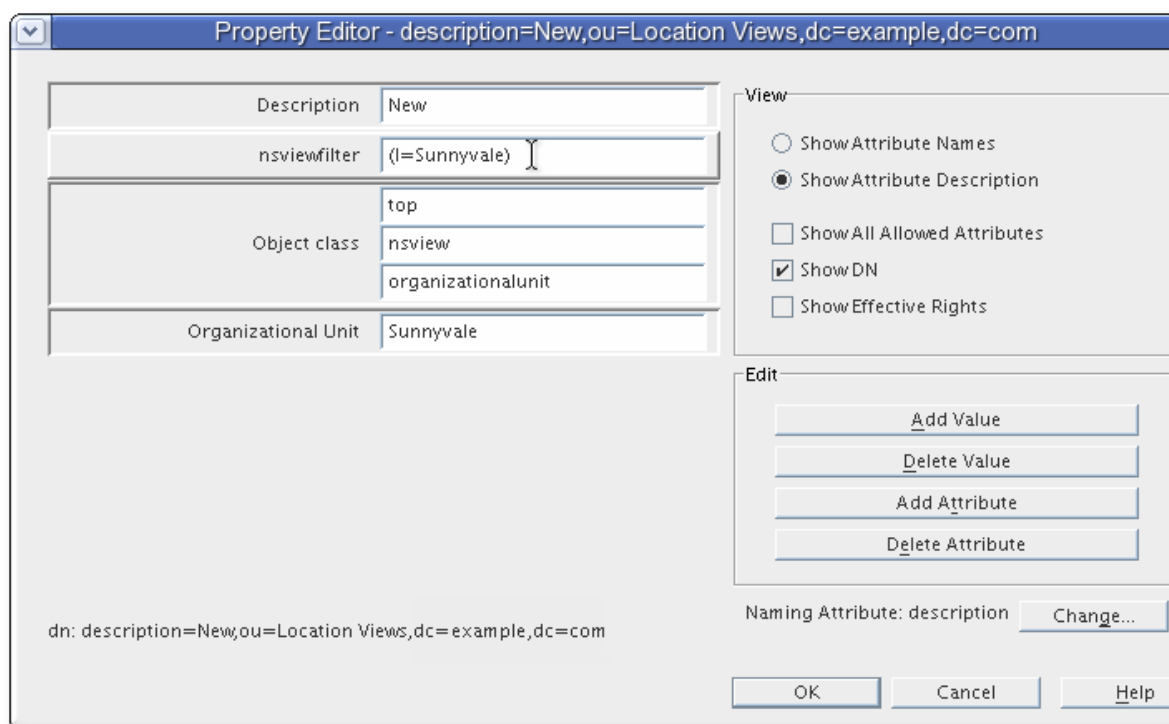
6. Name the organization unit according to how to organize the views. For instance, **ou=Sunnyvale**. Make the **ou** attribute the naming attribute.



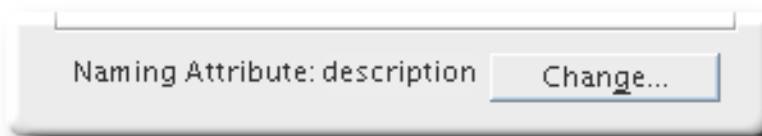
7. Click the **Add Attribute** button, and add the **nsviewfilter** attribute.



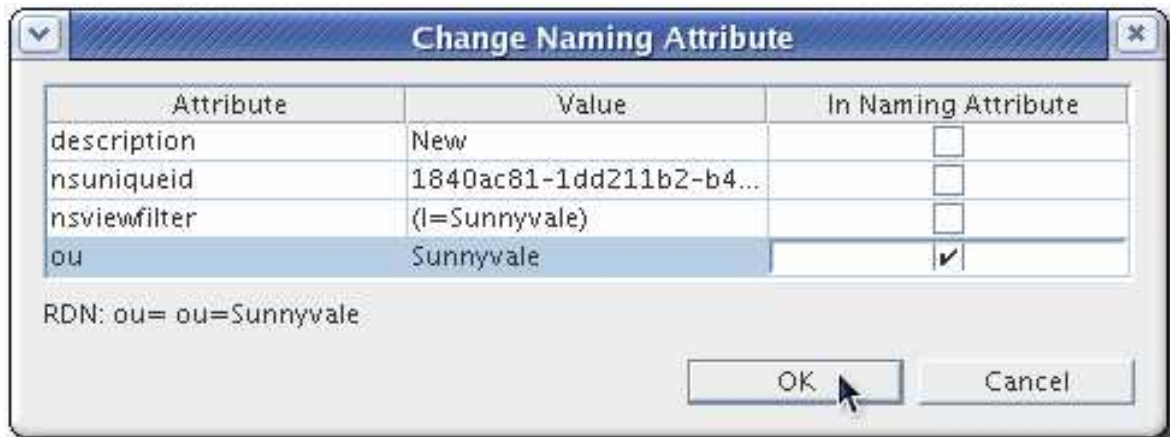
8. Create a filter that reflects the views, such as **(!Sunnyvale)**.



- Click the **Change** button in the lower right corner to change the naming attribute.



Use the **ou** of the entry as the naming attribute instead of **description**.



- Click **OK** to close the attributes box, and click **OK** again to save the new view entry.

The new view is immediately populated with any entries matching the search filter, and any new entries added to directory are automatically included in the view.

8.4.3. Creating Views from the Command Line

- Use the **ldapmodify** utility to bind to the server and prepare it to add the new view entry to the configuration file.
- Assuming the view container **ou=Location Views,dc=example,dc=com** from the **Example-views.ldif** file is in the Directory Server, add the new views container entry, in this example, under the **dc=example,dc=com** root suffix. This entry must have the **nsview** object class and the **nsViewFilter** attribute. The **nsViewFilter** attribute sets the attribute-value which identifies entries that belong in the view.

```
dn: ou=Mountain View,ou=Location Views,dc=example,dc=com
changetype: add
objectClass: top
objectClass: organizationalUnit
objectClass: nsview
ou: Mountain View
nsViewFilter: l=Mountain View
description: views categorized by location
```

8.4.4. Improving Views Performance

As [Section 8.4.1, "About Views"](#) describes, views are derived from search results based on a given filter. Part of the filter is the attribute defined in the **nsViewFilter** attribute; the rest of the filter is based on the entry hierarchy, looking for the **entryid** and **parentid** of the real entries included in the view.

```
(|(parentid=search_base_id)(entryid=search_base_id)
```

If any of the searched-for attributes – **entryid**, **parentid**, or the attribute set in **nsViewFilter** – are not indexed, then the views search becomes an unindexed search because the views operation searches the entire tree for matching entries.

To improve views performance, create equality indexes for **entryid, **parentid**, and the attribute set in **nsViewFilter**.**

Creating equality indexes is covered in [Section 13.2, “Creating Standard Indexes”](#), and updating existing indexes to include new attributes is covered in [Section 13.3, “Generating New Indexes to Existing Databases”](#).

CHAPTER 9. CONFIGURING SECURE CONNECTIONS

By default, clients and users connect to the Red Hat Directory Server over a standard connection. Standard connections do not use any encryption, so information is sent back and forth between the server and client in the clear.

Directory Server supports TLS connections, **StartTLS** connection, and SASL authentication, which provide layers of encryption and security that protect directory data from being read even if it is intercepted.

9.1. REQUIRING SECURE CONNECTIONS

Directory Server provides the following ways of using encrypted connections:

LDAPS

When you use the LDAPS protocol, the connection starts using encryption and either succeeds or fails. However, no unencrypted data is ever sent over the network. For this reason, prefer LDAPS instead of using **StartTLS** over unencrypted LDAP.

StartTLS over LDAP

Clients establish an unencrypted connection over the LDAP protocol and then send the **StartTLS** command. If the command succeeds, all further communication is encrypted.



WARNING

If the **StartTLS** command fails and the client does not cancel the connection, all further data, including authentication information, is sent unencrypted over the network.

SASL

Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) enables you to authenticate a user using external authentication methods, such as Kerberos. For details, see [Section 9.9, “Setting up SASL Identity Mapping”](#).

9.2. SETTING A MINIMUM STRENGTH FACTOR

For additional security, the Directory Server can be configured to require a certain level of encryption before it allows a connection. The Directory Server can define and require a specific Security Strength Factor (SSF) for any connection. The SSF sets a minimum encryption level, defined by its key strength, for any connection or operation.

To require a minimum SSF for any and all directory operations, set the **nsslapd-minssf** configuration attribute. When enforcing a minimum SSF, Directory Server looks at each available encryption type for an operation – TLS or SASL – and determines which has the higher SSF value and then compares the higher value to the minimum SSF. It is possible for both SASL authentication and TLS to be configured for some server-to-server connections, such as replication.

**NOTE**

Alternatively, use the ***nsslapd-minssf-exclude-rootdse*** configuration attribute. This sets a minimum SSF setting for all connections to the Directory Server *except* for queries against the root DSE. A client may need to obtain information about the server configuration, like its default naming context, before initiating an operation. The ***nsslapd-minssf-exclude-rootdse*** attribute allows the client to get that information without having to establish a secure connection first.

The SSF for a connection is evaluated when the first operation is initiated on a connection. This allows **StartTLS** and SASL binds to succeed, even though those two connections initially open a regular connection. After the TLS or SASL session is opened, then the SSF is evaluated. Any connection which does not meet the SSF requirements is closed with an LDAP unwilling to perform error.

Set a minimum SSF to disable insecure connections to a directory.

**WARNING**

If you connect to the directory using the unencrypted LDAP protocol without SASL, the first LDAP message can contain the bind request. In this case, the credentials are sent unencrypted over the network before the server cancels the connection, because the SSF did not meet the minimum value set.

Use the LDAPS protocol or SASL binds to ensure that the credentials are never sent unencrypted.

The default ***nsslapd-minssf*** attribute value is 0, which means there is no minimum SSF for server connections. The value can be set to any reasonable positive integer. The value represents the required key strength for any secure connection.

The following example adds the ***nsslapd-minssf*** attribute to the **cn=config** entry:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-minssf
nsslapd-minssf: 128
```

**NOTE**

An ACL can be set to require an SSF for a specific type of operation, as in [Section 18.13.2.4, "Requiring a Certain Level of Security in Connections"](#).

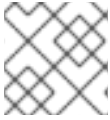
Secure connections can be required for bind operations by turning on the ***nsslapd-require-secure-binds*** attribute, as in [Section 19.11.1, "Requiring Secure Binds"](#).

9.3. MANAGING THE NSS DATABASE USED BY DIRECTORY SERVER

When you set up TLS encryption or certificate-based authentication, you must manage the certificates which are stored in a Network Security Services (NSS). This section describes the most frequent actions about managing the Directory Server's NSS database.

9.3.1. Creating the NSS Database for a Directory Server Instance

Directory Server stores the certificates in an NSS database in the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name` directory. Before you can manage the certificates, you must create the database.



NOTE

For security reasons, Red Hat recommends setting a strong password on the database.

9.3.1.1. Creating the NSS Database Using the Command Line

To create the NSS database using the command line:

1. Create the NSS database and set a password:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -N
Enter a password which will be used to encrypt your keys.
The password should be at least 8 characters long,
and should contain at least one non-alphabetic character.
```

```
Enter new password:
Re-enter password:
```

2. Set the permissions:

```
# chown dirsrv:dirsrv /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/*.db
# chown dirsrv:dirsrv /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/pkcs11.txt
# chmod 600 /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/*.db
# chmod 600 /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/pkcs11.txt
```

9.3.1.2. Creating the NSS Database Using the Console

Directory Server automatically creates the NSS database when you open the **Manage Certificates** task entry in the Directory Server Console the first time.

To open the **Manage Certificates** task entry:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**, and set a password to protect the database.



9.3.2. Creating a Certificate Signing Request

The Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a request to the Certificate Authority (CA) to sign the key of the server. This section describes how to create the CSR including the private key.

9.3.2.1. Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Command Line

To create the key and a CSR, use the **certutil** utility:

```
# certutil -d instance_directory -R -g key_size -a \
-o output_file -8 FQDN -s "certificate_subject"
```

Example 9.1. Creating a Private Key and CSR for a Single Host Name

The following command generates a 4096 bit private key for the **server.example.com** host and stores the CSR in the **/root/instance_name.csr** file:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -R -g 4096 -a \
-o /root/instance_name.csr -8 server.example.com \
-s "CN=server.example.com,O=example_organization,OU=IT,ST=North Carolina,C=US"
```

The **-8 server.example.com** option adds the subject alternative name (SAN) extension with the **DNS:server.example.com** entry to the CSR. The string specified in the **-s** parameter must be a valid subject name according to [RFC 1485](#). The **CN** field is required, and you must set it to the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server. The other fields are optional.

Example 9.2. Creating a Private Key and CSR for a Multi-homed Host

If a Directory Server host has multiple names, create a CSR with all host names in the SAN extension of the CSR. The following command generates a 4096 bit private key and a CSR for the **server.example.com** and **server.example.net** host names. The command stores the CSR in the **/root/instance_name.csr** file.

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -R -g 4096 -a \
-o /root/instance_name.csr -8 server.example.com,server.example.net \
-s "CN=server.example.com,O=example_organization,OU=IT,ST=North Carolina,C=US"
```

The **-8 *server.example.com,server.example.net*** option adds the SAN extension with the **DNS:*server.example.com*, DNS:*server.example.net*** entries to the CSR. The string specified in the **-s** parameter must be a valid subject name according to [RFC 1485](#). The **CN** field is required, and you must set it to one of the FQDNs of the server. The other fields are optional.

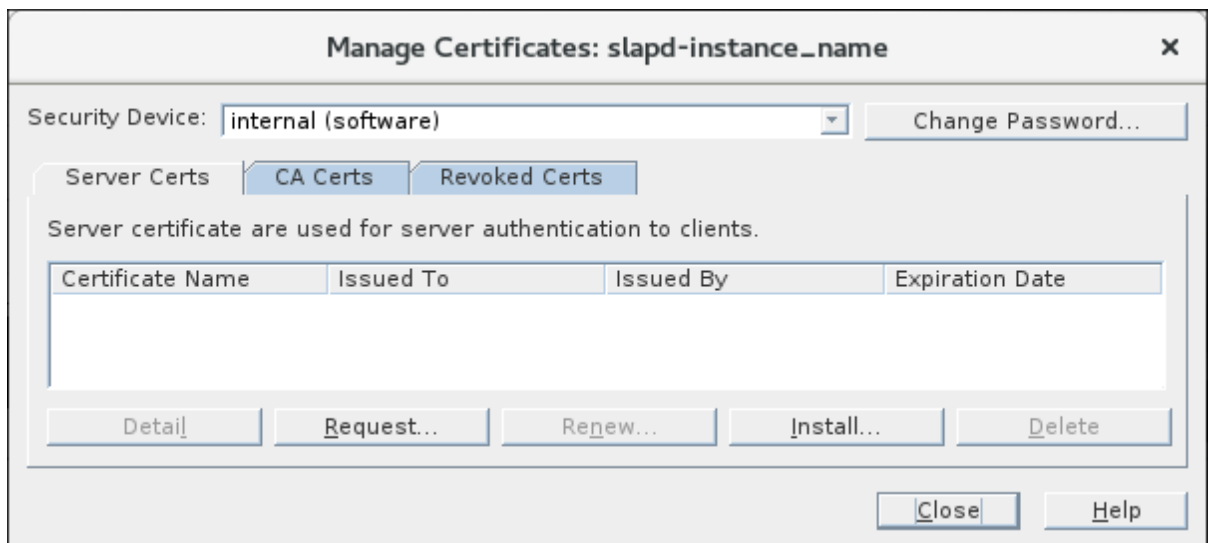
For further details about **certutil** and extended usage information, see the `certutil(1)` man page.

After you have generated the CSR, submit it to the CA to get a certificate issued. For further details, see your CA's documentation.

9.3.2.2. Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Console

To create the keys and a CSR using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. On the **Server Certs** tab, click the **Request** button.



4. Select if you want to request the certificate manually or from one of the displayed CAs and click **Next**.
5. Enter the requested information and click **Next**.

Certificate Request Wizard x

Requestor Information 2 of 5

Server name:

Organization:

Organizational unit:

City/locality:

State/province:

Country/region:

**IMPORTANT**

Enter the Fully-qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server into the **Server name** field.

- Select the key size and signing algorithm. Click **Next**.

Certificate Request Wizard x

Key and Signing Info 3 of 4

RSA Key Size:

Signing Algorithm:

For security reasons:

- an RSA key size of **2048** bits or higher
- a strong signing algorithm, such as **SHA-256** or higher

- Enter the password of the Network Security Services (NSS) database and click **Done**.

Certificate Request Wizard x

Token Password 4 of 5

Before certificate can be installed on the server, it must be verified using the private key for this server.

The private key is stored in a token, which is protected by a password.

Active Encryption Token:

Enter the password to access the token:

If you use an Hardware Security Module (HSM) to store the certificates, the device is plugged in, and the module has been installed as described in [Section 9.7, "Using Hardware Security Modules"](#), then the module is available in the **Active Encryption Token** menu.

8. Copy the CSR to the clipboard or save it into a file.
9. Click **Done**.

After you generated the CSR, submit it to the CA to get a certificate issued. For further details, see your CA's documentation.

9.3.3. Installing a CA Certificate

To enable Directory Server to trust the Certificate Authority (CA) you must install the certificate of the CA into the Network Security Services (NSS) database. During this process, you must set which certificates issued by the CA should be trusted:

Table 9.1. CA Trust Options

Console Option	certutil Option	Description
Accepting connections from clients (Client Authentication)	T,,	The server trusts this CA certificate for issuing client certificates suitable for TLS EXTERNAL binds.
Accepting connections to other servers (Server Authentication)	C,,	The server verifies that certificates, used to establish an encrypted connection to a replication partner, have been issued by a trusted CA.

You can set both options for a CA. When you use **certutil**, pass the **-T "CT,,"** parameter to the utility.

9.3.3.1. Installing a CA Certificate Using the Command Line

To install a CA certificate in the Directory Server's NSS database, use the **certutil** utility. For example, to import the CA certificate stored in the **/etc/pki/CA/nss/ca.crt** file:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name -A -n "certificate_nickname" \
-t "C,," -i /etc/pki/CA/nss/ca.crt
```

The **-t trust_options** parameter sets which certificates issued by the CA should be trusted. See [Table 9.1, "CA Trust Options"](#).

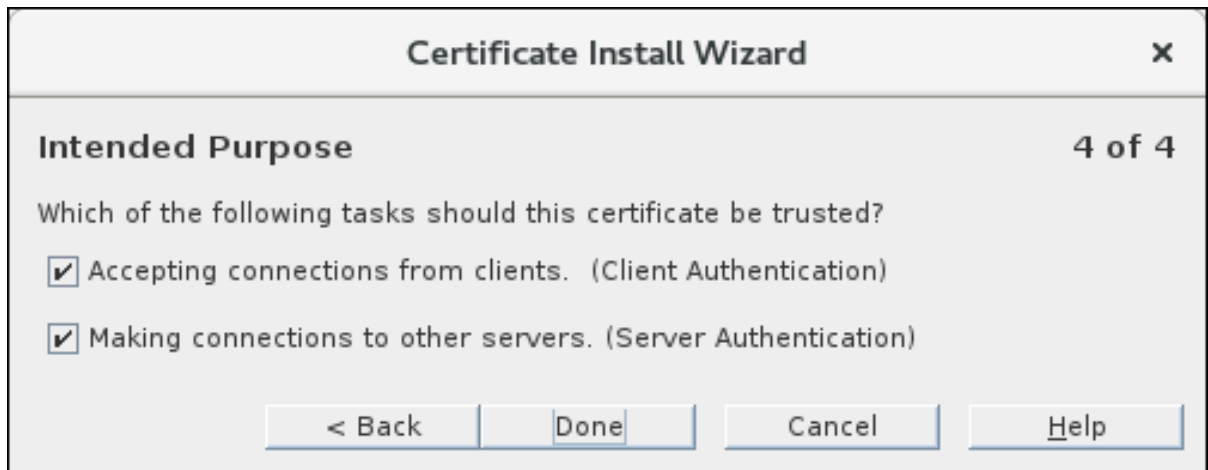
For further details about the parameters used in the previous command, see the `certutil(1)` man page.

9.3.3.2. Installing a CA Certificate Using the Console

To install a CA certificate using the Directory Server Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. Select the **CA Certs** tab and click the **Install** button.
4. Either select the file that contains the server certificate or paste the certificate into the field. Click **Next**.

5. Verify the certificate details and click **Next**.
6. Verify the certificate nickname and click **Next**.
7. Set which certificates issued by the CA should be trusted. You can select one or both of the options. See [Table 9.1, "CA Trust Options"](#).



9.3.4. Installing a Certificate

After the Certificate Authority (CA) issued the requested certificate, you must install it in the Network Security Services (NSS) database.

9.3.4.1. Installing a Server Certificate Using the Command Line

To install a server certificate in the Directory Server's NSS database, use the **certutil** utility. For example:

1. Install the CA certificate. See [Section 9.3.3, "Installing a CA Certificate"](#).
2. Import the certificate. For example to import the certificate stored in the **/root/instance_name.crt** file:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name/ -A \
-n "server-cert" -t ",," -a -i /root/instance_name.crt
```

3. Optionally, verify the certificate:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name/ -V -n "server-cert" -u V
```

For further details about the parameters used in the previous **certutil** commands, see the **certutil(1)** man page.

9.3.4.2. Installing a Certificate Using the Console

To install a server certificate using the Console:

1. Install the CA certificate. See [Section 9.3.3, "Installing a CA Certificate"](#).
2. Open the Directory Server Console.
3. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
4. Click the **Install** button.
5. Select the file that contains the server certificate or, alternatively, paste the certificate into the field. Click **Next**.

6. Verify the certificate details and click **Next**.
7. Set a certificate nickname and click **Next**.



NOTE

The Directory Server Console does not support installing a certificate that uses the same nickname as an existing one. To work around the problem, install the certificate using the command line. See [Section 9.3.4.1, "Installing a Server Certificate Using the Command Line"](#).

8. Enter the password of the NSS database and click **Done**.

9.3.5. Generating and Installing a Self-signed Certificate

In certain situations, administrators want to use a self-signed certificate for encrypted connections to Directory Server.



NOTE

You can only perform this operation using the command line.

To create and install a self-signed certificate:

1. Verify if the Network Security Services (NSS) database is already initialized:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name -L
```

If the command fails, initialize the database. For details, see [Section 9.3.1, "Creating the NSS Database for a Directory Server Instance"](#).

2. Generate a noise file with random data. For example, to generate a file with a size of 4096 bits:

```
# openssl rand -out /tmp/noise.bin 4096
```

3. Create the self-signed certificate and add it to the NSS database:

```
# certutil -S -x -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -z /tmp/noise.bin \  
-n "server-cert" -s "CN=$HOSTNAME" -t "CT,C,C" -m $RANDOM \  
--keyUsage digitalSignature,nonRepudiation,keyEncipherment,dataEncipherment
```

Red Hat Enterprise Linux automatically replaces the **\$HOSTNAME** variable with the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) and **\$RANDOM** with a randomly-generated number. For further details about the parameters used in the previous commands, see the `certutil(1)` man page.

4. Optionally, verify that the generated certificate is self-signed:

```
# certutil -L -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -n "server-cert" | egrep "Issuer|Subject"  
Issuer: "CN=server.example.com"  
Subject: "CN=server.example.com"
```

The output of this command must display the FQDN of the Directory Server host for both the issuer and subject of the certificate.

9.3.6. Renewing a Certificate

If a certificate will expire in the near future, you must renew it in time to continue establishing secure connections.

9.3.6.1. Renewing a Certificate Using the Command Line

To renew a certificate:

1. Create a new Certificate Signing Request (CSR) with the same options, such as key size, host name, and subject. For details about creating a CSR, see [Section 9.3.2.1, "Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Command Line"](#)
2. After you received the issued certificate from your CA, install it in the database using the same nickname. See [Section 9.3.3.1, "Installing a CA Certificate Using the Command Line"](#).

Directory Server will automatically use the newer issued certificate.

9.3.6.2. Renewing a Certificate Using the Console

The process for renewing is similar to generating a Certificate Signing Request (CSR). Follow the procedure in [Section 9.3.3.2, "Installing a CA Certificate Using the Console"](#), but click the **Renew** instead of the **Request** button in the **Manage Certificates** task.

9.3.7. Removing a Certificate

If a certificate is no longer needed, for example, because it has been exposed, remove it from the database.

9.3.7.1. Removing a Certificate Using the Command Line

To remove a certificate using the command line:

1. Remove the private key. See [Section 9.3.8, "Removing a Private Key"](#).

2. Optionally, display the certificates in the database:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -L
Certificate Nickname           Trust Attributes
                               SSL,S/MIME,JAR/XPI

Example CA                     CT,,
server-cert                    u,u,u
```

3. Remove the certificate. For example, to remove the certificate with the *server-cert* nickname:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -D -n "server-cert"
```

9.3.7.2. Removing a Certificate Using the Console

To remove a certificate using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. On the **Server Certs** tab, select the certificate and click the **Delete** button.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm.

9.3.8. Removing a Private Key

If a private key is no longer needed, for example, because you created a stronger key, remove it from the database.



WARNING

If you remove a private key, certificates based on this key are no longer working.

9.3.8.1. Removing a Private Key Using the Command Line

To remove a private key:

1. Remove all certificates based on the key you want to delete. See [Section 9.3.7, "Removing a Certificate"](#).
2. Optionally, display the keys in the database:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -K
certutil: Checking token "NSS Certificate DB" in slot "NSS User Private Key and Certificate
Services"
Enter Password or Pin for "NSS Certificate DB":
< 0> rsa    7a2fb6c269d83c4036eac7e4edb6aaf2ed08bc4a  server-cert
< 1> rsa    662b826aa3dd4ca7fd7e6883558cf3866c42f4e2  example-cert
```

3. Remove the private key. For example, to remove the private key with the *example-cert* nickname:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -F -n "example-cert"
```

9.3.8.2. Removing a Private Key Using the Console

Removing a private key using the Console is not supported. However, if you request a new certificate using the Console according to [Section 9.3.2.2, "Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Console"](#), the Console automatically generates a new private key and uses it.

9.3.9. Changing the CA Trust Options

In certain situations you need to update the trust option of a Certificate Authority (CA). This section describes this procedure.

9.3.9.1. Changing the CA Trust Options Using the Command Line

To change the trust options of a CA, pass the new options in the **-t** parameter to the **certutil** utility.

For example, to set that Directory Server trusts only client authentication certificates issued by the CA named **example-CA**:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -M -t "T,," -n "example-CA"
```

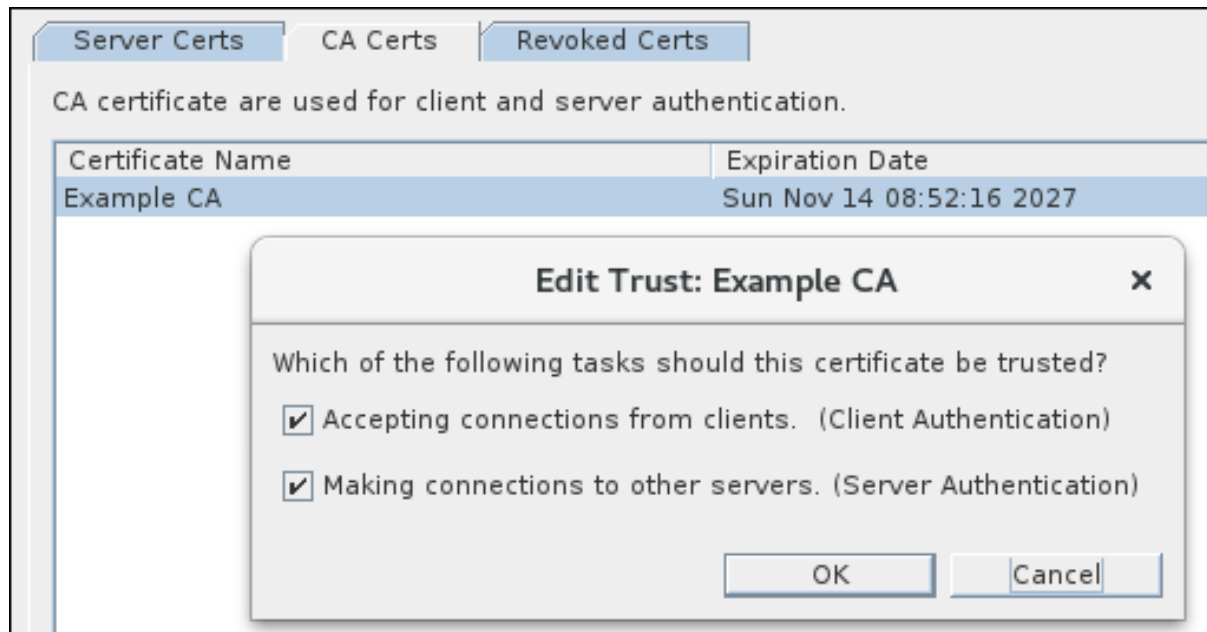
The **-t trust_options** parameter sets which certificates issued by the CA should be trusted. See [Table 9.1, "CA Trust Options"](#).

For further details about the parameters and trust options, see the `certutil(1)` man page.

9.3.9.2. Changing the CA Trust Options Using the Console

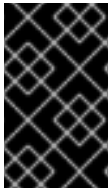
To change the trust options of a CA using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. Select the **CA Certs** tab.
4. Select the CA to edit, click the **Edit Trust** button, and set which certificates issued by the CA should be trusted. You can select one or both of the options. See [Table 9.1, "CA Trust Options"](#).



9.3.10. Changing the Password of the NSS Database

In certain situations, administrators want to change the password of the Network Security Services (NSS) database. This section describes this process.



IMPORTANT

If you use a password file to enable Directory Server to automatically open the Network Security Services (NSS) database, you must update the file after you set the new password. See [Section 9.4.1.5, "Creating a Password File for Directory Server"](#).

9.3.10.1. Changing the Password of the NSS Database Using the Command Line

To change the password of the NSS database:

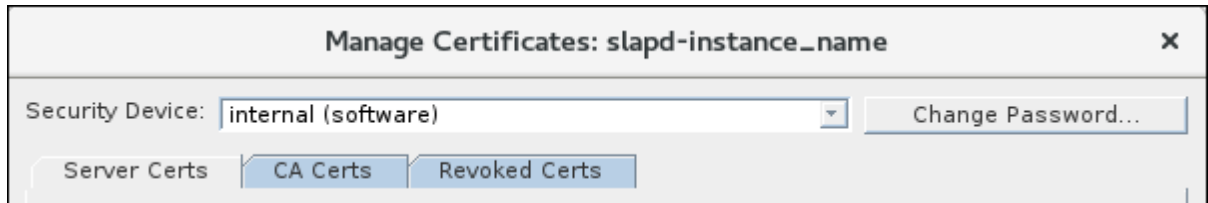
```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slappd-instance_name -W
Enter Password or Pin for "NSS Certificate DB":
Enter a password which will be used to encrypt your keys.
The password should be at least 8 characters long,
and should contain at least one non-alphabetic character.

Enter new password:
Re-enter password:
Password changed successfully.
```

9.3.10.2. Changing the Password of the NSS Database Using the Console

To change the password of the NSS database using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. Click the **Change Password** button.



4. Enter the current and the new password and click **OK**

9.3.11. Adding a Certificate Revocation List

If a Certificate Authority (CA) revokes a certificate, the CA adds the certificate to its Certificate Revocation Lists (CRL). Directory Server can use this list to identify which certificates are no longer trusted by the CA and to deny access.

9.3.11.1. Adding a Certificate Revocation List Using the Command Line

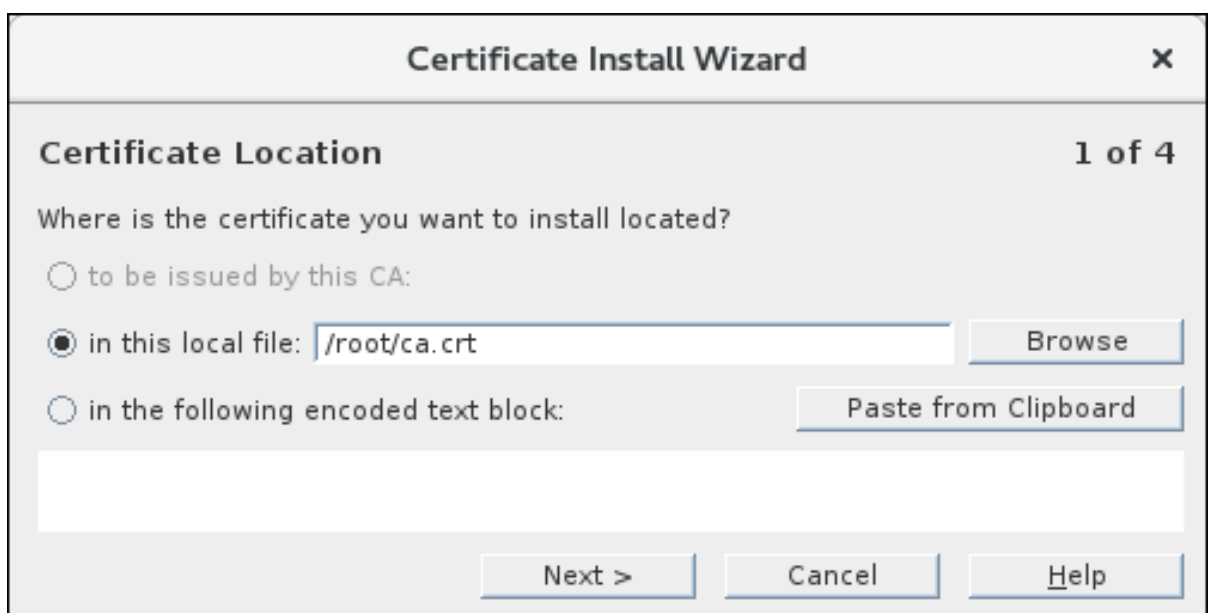
To add a CRL using **certutil**, pass the **-4 URL_to_CRL_file** parameter to the utility when you install the CA certificate.

For details about installing a CA certificate, see [Section 9.3.3.1, "Installing a CA Certificate Using the Command Line"](#).

9.3.11.2. Adding a Certificate Revocation List Using the Console

To add a CRL using the Console:

1. Open the Directory Server Console.
2. On the **Tasks** tab, click **Manage Certificates**.
3. Select the **Revoked Certs** tab and click the **Add** button.
4. Enter the path to the file, select the list format, and click **OK**.



9.4. ENABLING TLS

Directory Server supports encrypted connections between clients and the server, as well as between servers in a replication environment. For this, Directory Server supports:

- The LDAPS protocol: TLS encryption is used directly after the connection has been established.
- The **STARTTLS** command over the LDAP protocol: The connection is unencrypted until the client sends the **STARTTLS** command.



IMPORTANT

For security reasons, Red Hat recommends enabling TLS encryption.

You can use TLS with simple authentication using a bind Distinguished Name (DN) and password, or using certificate-based authentication.

Directory Server's cryptographic services are provided by Mozilla Network Security Services (NSS), a library of TLS and base cryptographic functions. NSS includes a software-based cryptographic token which is Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 certified.

9.4.1. Enabling TLS in Directory Server

This section describes how to enable TLS in Directory Server.

9.4.1.1. Enabling TLS in Directory Server Using the Command Line

To enable TLS using the command line:

1. Verify if the NSS database for Directory Server already exists:

```
# ls -l /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/*.db
```

Create the databases if they do not exist. See [Section 9.3.1.1, "Creating the NSS Database Using the Command Line"](#).

2. Request and install the certificate:

- For a certificate issued by a Certificate Authority (CA):
 1. Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR). See [Section 9.3.2.1, "Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Command Line"](#)
 2. Import the CA certificate. See [Section 9.3.3.1, "Installing a CA Certificate Using the Command Line"](#).
 3. Import the server certificate issued by the CA. See [Section 9.3.4.1, "Installing a Server Certificate Using the Command Line"](#).
- For a self-signed certificate, see [Section 9.3.5, "Generating and Installing a Self-signed Certificate"](#).

3. Enable TLS and set the LDAPS port:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
```

```
replace: nsslapd-securePort
nsslapd-securePort: 636
-
replace: nsslapd-security
nsslapd-security: on
```

4. Display the nickname of the server certificate in the NSS database:

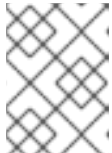
```
# certutil -L -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/
Certificate Nickname      Trust Attributes
                        SSL,S/MIME,JAR/XPI

Example CA                CT,,
server-cert              u,u,u
```

You need the nickname in the next step.

5. To enable the RSA cipher family, setting the NSS database security device, and the server certificate nickname, add the following entry to the directory:

```
# ldapadd -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=RSA,cn=encryption,cn=config
cn: RSA
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsEncryptionModule
nsSSLToken: internal (software)
nsSSLPersonalitySSL: server-cert
nsSSLActivation: on
```



NOTE

By default, the name of the security device in the NSS database is **internal (software)**.

If the previous command fails, because the **cn=RSA,cn=encryption,cn=config** entry already exists, update the corresponding attributes:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=RSA,cn=encryption,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsSSLToken
nsSSLToken: internal (software)
-
replace: nsSSLPersonalitySSL
nsSSLPersonalitySSL: server-cert
-
replace: nsSSLActivation
nsSSLActivation: on
```

6. Optionally, update the list of ciphers Directory Server supports. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.3.1, "Displaying and Setting the Ciphers Used by Directory Server Using the Command Line"](#).

7. Optionally, enable certificate-based authentication. For details, see [Section 9.8, “Using Certificate-based Client Authentication”](#).
8. Optionally, create a password file to enable Directory Server to start without prompting for the password of the NSS database. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.5, “Creating a Password File for Directory Server”](#).
9. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

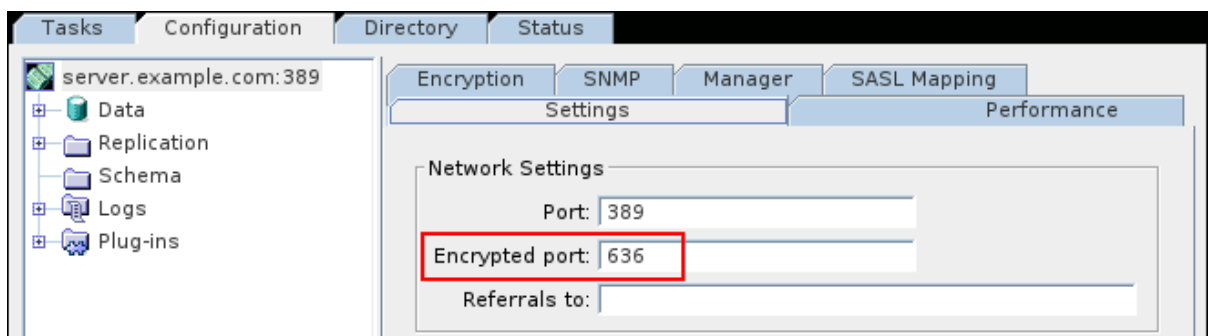
If you set a password on the NSS database and did not create a password file, Directory Server prompts for the password of the NSS database. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.4, “Starting Directory Server Without a Password File”](#).

10. Optionally, enable the Directory Server Console to use TLS when connecting to the server. See [Section 9.4.2.1, “Enabling TLS for Connections from the Console to Directory Server Using the Command Line”](#).
11. Optionally, enable TLS for the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** to use TLS. See [Section 9.4.3, “Enabling TLS in the Administration Server”](#).

9.4.1.2. Enabling TLS in Directory Server Using the Console

To enable TLS in Directory Server using the Console:

1. Create a CSR. See [Section 9.3.2.2, “Creating a Certificate Signing Request Using the Console”](#).
2. Import the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate. See [Section 9.3.3.2, “Installing a CA Certificate Using the Console”](#).
3. Import the server certificate issued by the CA. See [Section 9.3.4.2, “Installing a Certificate Using the Console”](#).
4. Open the Directory Server Console and select the host name on the **Configuration** tab.
5. On the **Settings** tab in the right pane, enter the LDAPS port into the **Encrypted port** field and click the **Save** button.



The default port for LDAPS is **636**.



NOTE

The LDAPS port must be different to the one set for unencrypted connections in the **Port** field.

6. On the **Encryption** tab in the right pane:
 - a. Select **Enable SSL for this server**.
 - b. Enable **Use this cipher family: RSA**, select the security device and certificate from the list.

- c. Optionally, click the **Settings** button to update the list of ciphers Directory Server supports. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.3.2, “Displaying and Setting the Ciphers Used by Directory Server Using the Console”](#).
 - d. Optionally, enable users to authenticate using certificates. For details, see [Section 9.8, “Using Certificate-based Client Authentication”](#).



IMPORTANT

If TLS is only enabled in Directory Server and not in the Directory Server Console, do not select **Require client authentication**.

- e. Select the **Check host name against name in certificate for outbound SSL connections** option to verify that the host name matches the **cn** attribute in the subject name of the certificate the client presents to the server for authentication.



IMPORTANT

Red Hat recommends enabling this option in a replication environment to protect outgoing TLS connections against a man-in-the-middle attack (MITM).

- f. Make sure that the **Use SSL in Console** option is not selected.

**WARNING**

Do not enable the **Use SSL in Console** option before you finished this procedure, because it takes effect immediately after you save the setting. As a consequence, the Console fails to connect to the server.

If you accidentally enabled this option and the Console fails to connect to the server, disable the option using the command line:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h
server.example.com -x
dn: cn=slapd-instance_name,cn=Red Hat Directory Server,
cn=Server
Group,cn=server.example.com,ou=example.com,o=NetscapeRoot
changetype: modify
replace: nsServerSecurity
nsServerSecurity: off
```

- g. Click **Save**.
7. Optionally, create a password file to enable Directory Server to start without prompting for the password of the NSS database. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.5, "Creating a Password File for Directory Server"](#).
8. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

If you set a password on the NSS database and did not create a password file, Directory Server prompts for the password of the NSS database. For details, see [Section 9.4.1.4, "Starting Directory Server Without a Password File"](#).

9. Optionally, enable the Directory Server Console to use TLS when connecting to the server. See [Section 9.4.2.2, "Enabling TLS for Connections from the Console to Directory Server Using the Console"](#).
10. Optionally, enable that the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** uses TLS. See [Section 9.4.3, "Enabling TLS in the Administration Server"](#).

9.4.1.3. Setting Encryption Ciphers

Directory Server supports different ciphers, and you can enable or disable them. A cipher is the algorithm used in encryption. When a client initiates a TLS connection with a server, the client tells the server what ciphers it prefers to encrypt information. If the server supports at least one of these ciphers, the encrypted connection can be established using this algorithm.

If you enabled encryption according to [Section 9.4, "Enabling TLS"](#), you can display and update the ciphers Directory Server uses.

9.4.1.3.1. Displaying and Setting the Ciphers Used by Directory Server Using the Command Line

Displaying all Available Ciphers

To display the list of all available ciphers supported in Directory Server:

```
# ldapsearch -xLLL -H ldap://server.example.com:389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W \
  -b 'cn=encryption,cn=config' -s base nsSSLSupportedCiphers -o ldif-wrap=no

dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
nsSSLSupportedCiphers: TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256::AES-
GCM::AEAD::128
...
nsSSLSupportedCiphers: SSL CK RC2_128_CBC_EXPORT40_WITH_MD5::RC2::MD5::128
```

This is only a list of available ciphers you can enable or disable. The list does not display the ciphers Directory Server currently uses.

Displaying the Ciphers Directory Server Uses

The ciphers Directory Server currently uses are stored in the ***nsSSEnabledCiphers*** read-only attribute. To display them:

```
# ldapsearch -xLLL -H ldap://server.example.com:389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W \
  -b 'cn=encryption,cn=config' -s base nsSSEnabledCiphers -o ldif-wrap=no

dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
nsSSEnabledCiphers: TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA::AES::SHA1::256
nsSSEnabledCiphers: TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA::AES::SHA1::128
...
```

Additionally, you can display the ciphers which are configured to be enabled and disabled:

```
# ldapsearch -xLLL -H ldap://server.example.com:389 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W \
  -b 'cn=encryption,cn=config' -s base nsSSL3Ciphers -o ldif-wrap=no

dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
nsSSL3Ciphers: -all,+tls_rsa_aes_128_sha,+tls_rsa_aes_256_sha,...
```



IMPORTANT

Directory Server uses the settings from the ***nsSSL3Ciphers*** attribute to generate the list of ciphers which are actually used. However, if you enabled weak ciphers in ***nsSSL3Ciphers***, but set the ***allowWeakCiphers*** parameter to **off**, which is the default, Directory Server only uses the strong ciphers and displays them in the ***nsSSLSupportedCiphers*** read-only attribute.

Updating the List of Enabled Ciphers

To update the list of enabled ciphers:

1. Display the list of currently enabled ciphers. See [the section called “Displaying the Ciphers Directory Server Uses”](#).
2. To enable only specific ciphers, update the ***nsSSL3Ciphers*** attribute. For example, to enable only the **TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256** cipher:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
changetype: modify
add: nsSSL3Ciphers
nsSSL3Ciphers: -all,+TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
```

- Restart the Directory Server instance:

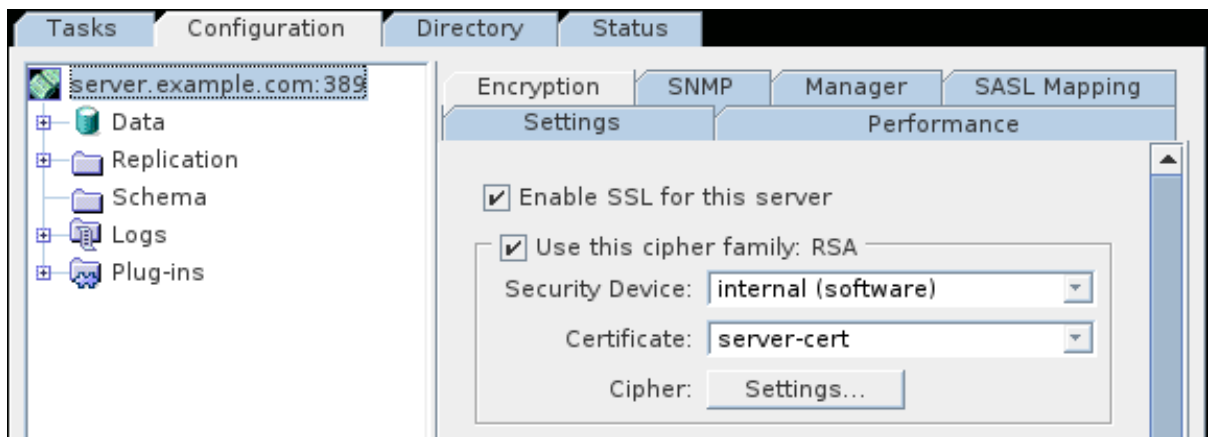
```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

- Optionally, display the list of enabled ciphers to verify the result. See [the section called “Displaying the Ciphers Directory Server Uses”](#).

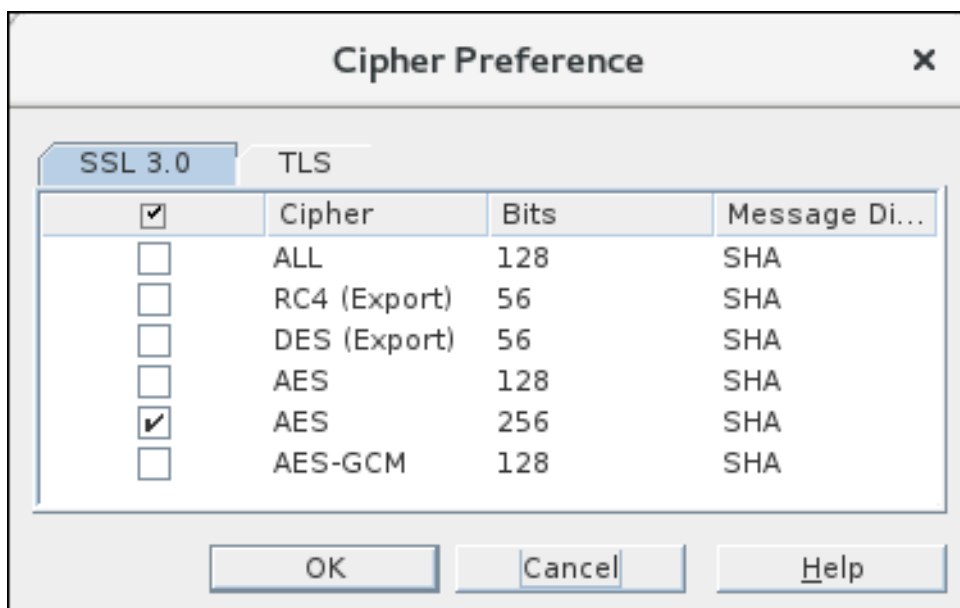
9.4.1.3.2. Displaying and Setting the Ciphers Used by Directory Server Using the Console

To select and optionally update the ciphers using the Console:

- Open the Directory Server Console.
- On the **Configuration** tab, select the server name.
- Select the **Encryption** tab in the right pane and click the **Settings** button.



- Optionally, update the list of ciphers. For example:



5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Save**.
7. If you updated the list of ciphers, restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

9.4.1.4. Starting Directory Server Without a Password File

If you start Directory Server with encryption enabled and a password set on the NSS database:

- If the **ns-slapd** Directory Server process is started by the **systemctl** command, **systemd** prompts for the password and automatically passes the input to the **systemd-tty-ask-password-agent** utility. For example:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv
Enter PIN for Internal (Software) Token:
```

- In rare cases, when the **ns-slapd** Directory Server process is not started by the **systemctl** utility and is detached from the terminal, a message is send to all terminals using the **wall** command. For example:

```
Broadcast message from root@server (Fri 2017-01-01 06:00:00 CET):

Password entry required for 'Enter PIN for Internal (Software) Token:' (PID 1234).
Please enter password with the systemd-tty-ask-password-agent tool!
```

To enter the password, run:

```
# systemd-tty-ask-password-agent
Enter PIN for Internal (Software) Token:
```

9.4.1.5. Creating a Password File for Directory Server

If encryption is enabled and a password set on the NSS database, Directory Server prompts for this password when the service starts. See [Section 9.4.1.4, "Starting Directory Server Without a Password File"](#).

To bypass this prompt, you can store the NSS database password in the **/etc/dirsrv/slapd-*instance_name*/pin.txt** file. This enables Directory Server to start automatically without prompting for this password.



WARNING

The password is stored in clear text. Do not use a password file if the server is running in an unsecured environment.

To create the password file:

1. Create the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/pin.txt` file with the following content:

- If you use the NSS software cryptography module, which is the default:

```
Internal (Software) Token:password
```

- If you use a Hardware Security Module (HSM):

```
name_of_the_token:password
```

2. Set the permissions:

```
# chown dirsrv:dirsrv /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/pin.txt
# chmod 400 /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/pin.txt
```

9.4.1.6. Managing How Directory Server Behaves If the Certificate Has Been Expired

By default, if encryption is enabled and the certificate has expired, Directory Server logs a warning and the service starts. To change this behavior, set the `nsslapd-validate-cert` attribute in the `cn=config` entry. You can set it to the following values:

- **warn:** The Directory Server instance starts and log a warning about the expired certificate into the `/var/log/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/error` log file. This is the default setting.
- **on:** Directory Server validates the certificate and the instance fails to start if the certificate has expired.
- **off:** Directory Server does not validate the certificate expiration date. The instance starts and no warning will be logged.

Example 9.3. Preventing Directory Server to Start If the Certificate Has Been Expired

To prevent Directory Server from starting if the certificate has expired:

1. Set the `nsslapd-validate-cert` attribute to **on**:

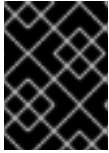
```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 636 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-validate-cert
nsslapd-validate-cert: on
```

2. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

9.4.2. Enabling TLS for Connections from the Console to Directory Server

This section describes how you configure the Directory Server Console to use TLS to access the directory.



IMPORTANT

Before you can enable TLS in the Console, enable encryption in Directory Server according to [Section 9.4.1, "Enabling TLS in Directory Server"](#) and restart the instance.

To configure an encrypted connection to the **Red Hat Identity Management Console**, see [Section 9.4.3, "Enabling TLS in the Administration Server"](#).

9.4.2.1. Enabling TLS for Connections from the Console to Directory Server Using the Command Line

To enable TLS for connections from the Console to Directory Server:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 636 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=slapd-instance_name,cn=Red Hat Directory Server,
  cn=Server Group,cn=server.example.com,ou=example.com,o=NetscapeRoot
changetype: modify
replace: nsServerSecurity
nsServerSecurity: on
```

When you start the Console the next time, it automatically uses TLS for connections to Directory Server.

9.4.2.2. Enabling TLS for Connections from the Console to Directory Server Using the Console

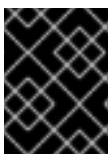
To enable TLS for connections from the Console to Directory Server:

1. Open the Directory Server Console and select the host name on the **Configuration** tab.
2. On the **Encryption** tab in the right pane:
 - a. Select **Use SSL in the Console**.
 - b. Click **Save**
3. Restart the Directory Server Console.

9.4.3. Enabling TLS in the Administration Server

This section describes how to:

- Enable the HTTPS protocol when connecting to the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** application
- Set that the Administration Server stores its data in the **o=NetscapeRoot** entry using an encrypted connection to Directory Server
- Enable the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** application to use the LDAPS protocol to manage users and groups stored in the directory



IMPORTANT

Before you can enable these features, enable encryption in Directory Server according to [Section 9.4.1, "Enabling TLS in Directory Server"](#) and restart the instance.

To enable TLS in the Administration Server:

1. Import the required certificates. Select one of the following ways:
 - To use the same private key and certificate for the Administration Server as for Directory Server, see [Section E.2.7.1.1, "Using the Directory Server Private Key and Certificate for the Admin Server"](#).
 - To use a separate key and certificate for Administration Server, see:
 1. [Section 9.3.2, "Creating a Certificate Signing Request"](#)
 2. [Section 9.3.3, "Installing a CA Certificate"](#)
 3. [Section 9.3.4, "Installing a Certificate"](#)



IMPORTANT

Perform the steps in the **Manage Certificates** menu of the Administration Server Console instead of the Directory Server Console.

The Administration Server and Directory Server must share at least one CA certificate to trust the other's non-shared certificates.

2. Open the Administration Server Console.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, select the **Administration Server** entry in the left pane.
4. Select the **Encryption** tab in the right pane to enable encryption for the **Red Hat Identity Management Console**:
 - a. Select **Enable SSL for this server**.
 - b. Enable **Use this cipher family: RSA**, select the security device and certificate from the list.



- c. Optionally, click the **Settings** button to update the list of ciphers the Administration Server supports.
 - d. Optionally, enable client authentication using certificates. For details, see [Section 9.8, "Using Certificate-based Client Authentication"](#).
 - e. Click **Save**.
5. Select the **Configuration DS** tab in the right pane to configure that the Administration Server stores its data in the **o=NetscapeRoot** entry using the LDAP protocol:

- a. Set the LDAPS port of the Directory Server instance that stores the **o=NetscapeRoot** entry. By default, LDAPS uses the **636** port.
- b. Select **Secure Connection**.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Directory' tab selected. It contains the following text and fields:

Configuration Directory

If you are switching to a new configuration directory, you must first migrate your server configuration from the current directory to the new one. See Directory Server documentation for more information.

If you choose to use LDAP with SSL, you must first install a Trusted CA certificate for each server involved. Use the Certificate Setup Wizard to install a Trusted CA certificate.

LDAP Host:

LDAP Port: Secure Connection

- c. Click **Save**.
6. Select the **User DS** tab in the right pane to configure that the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** uses an encrypted connection to manage users and groups:
 - a. Select **Set User Directory** and fill the fields. For encrypted connections, the **Secure Connections** option must be selected and the port specified in the **LDAP Host and Port** field must support LDAPS.

The screenshot shows the 'User Directory' tab selected. It contains the following text and fields:

User Directory

If you choose to use LDAP with SSL, you must first install a Trusted CA certificate for each server involved. Use the Certificate Setup Wizard to install a Trusted CA certificate.

Use Default User Directory
LDAP URL: ldap://server.example.com:389/dc=example,dc=com

Set User Directory
LDAP Host and Port:
Example: eastcoast.example.com:389

Secure Connection

User Directory Subtree:

Bind DN:

Bind Password:

- b. Click **Save**.
7. Optionally, set the minimum and maximum TLS version for connections from the Console to the server in the `~/redhat-idm-console/Console.version.Login.preferences` file. For example:

```
sslVersionMin: TLS1.1
sslVersionMax: TLS1.2
```


8. Optionally, create a password file to enable the Administration Server to start without prompting for the password of the Network Security Services (NSS) database. For details, see [Section E.2.7.3, "Creating a Password File for the Administration Server"](#).
9. Restart the Administration Server:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv-admin
```

If you did not create a password file, the system prompts for the password of the NSS database.

10. To configure that the Console trusts the certificate, see [Section 9.4.3.1, "Managing Certificates Used by the Directory Server Console"](#).

After you completed this procedure, you can connect to the **Red Hat Identity Management Console** using the HTTPS protocol. For example:

```
# redhat-idm-console -a https://server.example.com:9830
```

9.4.3.1. Managing Certificates Used by the Directory Server Console

The certificates and keys used by the server are stored in NSS security databases in the `/etc/dirsrv/slaped-instance_name` directory. The Directory Server Console itself also uses certificates and keys for TLS connections; these certificates are stored in a separate database in the user's home directory. If the Directory Server Console is used to connect to multiple instances of Directory Server over TLS, then it is necessary to trust every CA which issued the certificates for every Directory Server instance.

When TLS is enabled for the Directory Server Console, the Directory Server Console must have a copy of the issuing CA certificate for it to trust the server's client certificates. Otherwise, the Console will return errors about not trusting the CA which issued the certificate.



NOTE

Only the CA certificates for the CA which issued the server's certificate is required. The Directory Server Console does not require its own client certificate.

Importing a CA Certificate When Using the Console on Linux

For example, to add the CA certificate stored in the `/root/ca.crt` file to the database:

```
# certutil -d ~/.redhat-idm-console/ -A -n "Example CA" -t CT,, -a -i /root/ca.crt
```

Importing a CA Certificate When Using the Console on Windows

For example, to add the CA certificate stored in the `C:\ca.crt` file to the database:

```
> cd C:\Program Files\Red Hat Identity Management Console\
> certutil.exe -d "C:\Documents and Settings\user_name\389-console\" -A -n "Example CA" -t CT,, -a
-i C:\ca.crt
```

9.4.4. Adding the CA Certificate Used By Directory Server to the Trust Store of Red Hat Enterprise Linux

When you enabled TLS encryption in Directory Server, you configured the instance to use a certificate issued by a CA. If a client now establishes a connection to the server using the LDAPS protocol or the

STARTTLS command over LDAP, Directory Server uses this certificate to encrypt the connection. Client utilities use the CA certificate to verify if the server's certificate is valid. By default, these utilities cancel the connection if they do not trust the certificate of the server.

Example 9.4. Possible Connection Error If a Client Utility Does Not Use the CA Certificate

If client utilities do not use the CA certificate, the utilities cannot validate the server's certificate when using TLS encryption. As a consequence, the connection to the server fails. For example:

```
# ldapsearch -H ldaps://server.example.com:636 -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -b
"dc=example,dc=com" -x
Enter LDAP Password:
ldap_sasl_bind(SIMPLE): Can't contact LDAP server (-1)
```

To enable client utilities on Red Hat Enterprise Linux to verify the certificate that Directory Server uses, add the CA certificate to the trust store of the operating system:

1. If you do not have a local copy of the CA certificate used by Directory Server:

- a. List the certificates in the server's NSS database:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -L

Certificate Nickname           Trust Attributes
                               SSL,S/MIME,JAR/XPI

Example CA                     C,,
server-cert                    u,u,u
```

- b. Use the nickname of the CA certificate in the NSS database to export the CA certificate:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -L -n "Example CA" -a > /tmp/ds-ca.crt
```

2. Copy the CA certificate to the **/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/** directory. For example:

```
# cp /tmp/ds-ca.crt /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

3. Rebuild the CA trust database:

```
# update-ca-trust
```

9.5. DISPLAYING THE ENCRYPTION PROTOCOLS ENABLED IN DIRECTORY SERVER

To display the enabled encryption protocols in Directory Server:

```
# ldapsearch -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x \
-s base -b 'cn=encryption,cn=config' sslVersionMin sslVersionMax
```

```
dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
sslVersionMin: TLS1.0
sslVersionMax: TLS1.2
```

The ***sslVersionMin*** and ***sslVersionMax*** parameter control which encryption protocol versions Directory Server uses. By default, only TLS 1.0 and later versions of the protocol are enabled.



IMPORTANT

For security reasons, none of the parameters should be set to the insecure **SSL2** or **SSL3** protocol versions.

9.6. SETTING THE ENCRYPTION PROTOCOL VERSIONS

Update the ***sslVersionMin*** and ***sslVersionMax*** parameters to set which encryption protocols Directory Server uses.



IMPORTANT

To always use the strongest supported encryption protocol version in the ***sslVersionMax*** parameter, do not set this parameter. See [Section 9.6.1, “Automatically Using the Strongest Protocol in the ***sslVersionMax*** Parameter”](#).

For example, to enable only TLS 1.1 and 1.2:

1. Update the ***sslVersionMin*** and ***sslVersionMax*** parameters:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: sslVersionMin
sslVersionMin: TLS1.1
-
replace: sslVersionMax
sslVersionMax: TLS1.2
```

2. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

9.6.1. Automatically Using the Strongest Protocol in the ***sslVersionMax*** Parameter

If the ***sslVersionMax*** parameter is not set, which is the default, Directory Server uses the strongest supported encryption protocol version for this parameter. This enables you to always have the strongest protocol version enabled after an update.

Identifying if ***sslVersionMax*** is Not Set

Even if ***sslVersionMax*** is not set, the parameter is returned in a search. To identify if the parameter is not set:

```
# grep sslVersionMax /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif
```

If the command displays no output, the parameter is not set and uses the default, which is the strongest supported encryption protocol.

Removing the *sslVersionMax* Parameter

Remove the *sslVersionMax* parameter to use its default setting:

1. Remove the *sslVersionMax* parameter:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
changetype: modify
delete: sslVersionMax
```

2. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

9.7. USING HARDWARE SECURITY MODULES

A security module serves as a medium between the Directory Server and the TLS layer. The module stores the keys and certificates used for encryption and decryption. The standard which defines these modules is Public Key Cryptography Standard (PKCS) #11, so these modules are PKCS#11 modules.

By default, Directory Server uses built-in security databases, **key3.db** and **cert8.db**, to store the keys and certificates used by the servers.

It is also possible to use external security devices to store Directory Server certificates and keys. For Directory Server to use an external PKCS#11 module, the module's drivers must be installed in Directory Server.

For more information, consult the documentation for your hardware security module.

9.8. USING CERTIFICATE-BASED CLIENT AUTHENTICATION

Directory Server supports certificate-based authentication of LDAP clients and for server-to-server connection, such as replication.

Depending on the configuration, the client can or must authenticate using a certificate, if you enabled certificate-based authentication. After verifying the certificate, the server searches for the user in the directory, based on the attributes in the **subject** field of the certificate. If the search return exactly one user entry, Directory Server uses this user for all further operations. Optionally, you can configure that the certificate used for authentication must match the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER)-formatted certificate stored in the *userCertificate* attribute of the user.

Benefits of using certificate-based authentication:

- Improved efficiency. When using applications that prompt once for the certificate database password and then use that certificate for all subsequent bind or authentication operations, it is more efficient than continuously providing a bind DN and password.
- Improved security. The use of certificate-based authentication is more secure than non-certificate bind operations because certificate-based authentication uses public-key cryptography. Bind credentials cannot be intercepted across the network. If the certificate or

device is lost, it is useless without the PIN, so it is immune from third-party interference like phishing attacks.

9.8.1. Setting up Certificate-based Authentication

To enable certificate-based authentication:

1. Enable encrypted connections. For details, see [Section 9.4, “Enabling TLS”](#).
2. Install the CA certificate and set the trust options for client and server connections. See [Section 9.3.3, “Installing a CA Certificate”](#).
3. Optionally, verify that the **CT,,** trust options for client and server are set for the CA certificate:

```
# certutil -d /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/ -L
Certificate Nickname          Trust Attributes
                             SSL,S/MIME,JAR/XPI

Example CA                    CT,,
```

4. Create the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/certmap.conf` file to map information from the certificate to Directory Server users. For example:

```
certmap default              default
default:DNComps             dc
default:FilterComps         mail,cn
default:VerifyCert          on

certmap example             o=Example Inc.,c=US
example:DNComps
```

This configures that for authenticating users who use a certificate that has the **o=Example Inc.,c=US** issuer Distinguished Name (DN) set, Directory Server does not generate a base DN from the subject of the certificate, because the **DNComps** parameter is set empty for this issuer. Additionally, the settings for the **FilterComps** and **VerifyCert** are inherited from the default entry.

Certificates that have a different issuer DN than the specified one will use the settings from the **default** entry and generate the base DN based on the **cn** attributes in the subject of the certificate. This enables Directory Server to start the search under a specific DN, without searching the whole directory.

For all certificates, Directory Server generates the search filter using the **mail** and the **cn** attribute from the certificate's subject. However, if the **mail** does not exist in the subject, Directory Server will automatically use the value of the certificate's **e** attribute in the subject.

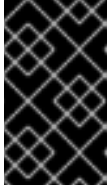
For further details and descriptions of the available parameters, see the description of the **certmap.conf** file in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

5. Enable client authentication. For example, to configure that client authentication is optional:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x -Z
dn: cn=encryption,cn=config
```

```
changetype: modify
replace: nsSSLClientAuth
nsSSLClientAuth: allowed
```

Alternatively, set the ***nsSSLClientAuth*** parameter to **required** to configure that clients must use a certificate to authenticate.



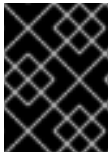
IMPORTANT

The Directory Server Console does not support client authentication. If you set ***nsSSLClientAuth*** to **required**, you cannot use the Console to manage the instance.

- If you enabled that the authenticating certificate must match the one stored in the ***userCertificate*** attribute of the user by setting ***alias_name:VerifyCert on*** in the ***/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/certmap.conf*** file, add the certificates to the user entries. See [Section 9.8.2, "Adding a Certificate to a User"](#).

9.8.2. Adding a Certificate to a User

When you set up certificate-based authentication, you can set that the certificate used to authenticate must match the one stored in the ***userCertificate*** binary attribute of the user. If you enabled this feature by setting ***alias_name:VerifyCert on*** in the ***/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/certmap.conf*** file, you must add the certificate of the affected users to their directory entry.



IMPORTANT

You must store the certificate in the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) format in the ***userCertificate*** attribute.

To store a certificate in the ***userCertificate*** attribute of a user:

- If the certificate is not DER-formatted, convert it. For example:

```
# openssl x509 -in /root/certificate.pem -out /root/certificate.der -outform DER
```

- Add the certificate to the user's ***userCertificate*** attribute. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

```
dn: uid=user_name,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

```
changetype: modify
```

```
add: userCertificate
```

```
userCertificate: < /root/example.der
```

For further details about using binary attributes, see [Section 3.1.8, "Using Binary Attributes"](#).

9.8.3. Forcing the EXTERNAL SASL Mechanism for Bind Requests

At the beginning of a TLS session, the client sends its certificate to the server. Then, it sends its bind request. Most clients issue the bind request using the **EXTERNAL SASL** mechanism, which signals Directory Server that it needs to use the identity in the certificate for the bind, instead of the credentials

in the bind request.

However, if a client uses simple authentication or anonymous credentials, this information is missing. In this case, the TLS session fails with invalid credentials, even if the certificate and the client identity in the certificate was valid.

To configure that Directory Server forces clients to use the **EXTERNAL** SASL mechanism and to ignore any other bind method in the request:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-force-sasl-external
nsslapd-force-sasl-external: on
```

9.8.4. Authenticating Using a Certificate

To use the OpenLDAP client tools, to authenticate to a Directory Server instance that supports authentication using a certificate:

1. Set the following environment variables to the corresponding paths for the CA certificate, the user key, and the user certificate. For example:

```
LDAPTLS_CACERT=/home/user_name/CA.crt
LDAPTLS_KEY=/home/user_name/user.key
LDAPTLS_CERT=/home/user_name/user.crt
```

Alternatively, set the **TLS_CACERT**, **TLS_KEY**, and **TLS_CERT** parameters in the `~/.ldaprc` file. For details, see the **TLS OPTIONS** section in the `ldap.conf(5)` man page.

2. Connect to the server. For example:

```
# ldapwhoami -H ldaps://server.example.com:636
```

If you use a different client, see the client application's documentation for how to connect using certificate-based authentication.

9.9. SETTING UP SASL IDENTITY MAPPING

Red Hat Directory Server supports LDAP client authentication through the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL), an alternative to TLS and a native way for some applications to share information securely.

Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) is an abstraction layer between protocols like LDAP and authentication methods like GSS-API which allows any protocol which can interact with SASL to utilize any authentication mechanism which can work with SASL. Simply put, SASL is an intermediary that makes authenticating to applications using different mechanisms easier. SASL can also be used to establish an encrypted session between a client and server.

The SASL framework allows different mechanisms to be used to authenticate a user to the server, depending on what mechanism is enabled in both client and server applications. SASL also creates a layer for encrypted (secure) sessions. Using GSS-API, Directory Server utilizes Kerberos tickets to authenticate sessions and encrypt data.

9.9.1. About SASL Identity Mapping

When processing a SASL bind request, the server matches, or maps, the SASL authentication ID used to authenticate to the Directory Server with an LDAP entry stored within the server. When using Kerberos, the SASL user ID usually has the format *userid@REALM*, such as **scarter@EXAMPLE.COM**. This ID must be converted into the DN of the user's Directory Server entry, such as **uid=scarter,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com**.

If the authentication ID clearly corresponds to the LDAP entry for a person, it is possible to configure the Directory Server to map the authentication ID automatically to the entry DN. Directory Server has some pre-configured default mappings which handle most common configurations, and customized maps can be created. By default, during a bind attempt, only the first matching mapping rule is applied if SASL mapping fallback is not enabled. For further details about SASL mapping fallback, see [Section 9.9.4, "Enabling SASL Mapping Fallback"](#).

Be sure to configure SASL maps so that only one mapping rule matches the authentication string.

SASL mappings are configured by entries under a container entry:

```
dn: cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsContainer
cn: sasl
```

SASL identity mapping entries are children of this entry:

```
dn: cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsContainer
cn: mapping
```

Mapping entries are defined by the following attributes:

- ***nsSaslMapRegexString***: The regular expression which is used to map the elements of the supplied *authid*.
- ***nsSaslMapFilterTemplate***: A template which applies the elements of the ***nsSaslMapRegexString*** to create the DN.
- ***nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate***: Provides the search base or a specific entry DN to match against the constructed DN.
- Optional: ***nsSaslMapPriority***: Sets the priority of this SASL mapping. The priority value is used, if ***nsslapd-sasl-mapping-fallback*** is enabled in ***cn=config***. For details, see [Section 9.9.4.1, "Setting SASL Mapping Priorities"](#).

For further details, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

For example:

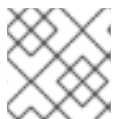
```
dn: cn=mymap,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectclass:top
objectclass:nsSaslMapping
cn: mymap
```



```
nsSaslMapRegexString: \(.*)@\(.*)\.\(.*)
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (objectclass=inetOrgPerson)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: uid=\1,ou=people,dc=\2,dc=\3
```

The ***nsSaslMapRegexString*** attribute sets variables of the form **\1**, **\2**, **\3** for bind IDs which are filled into the template attributes during a search. This example sets up a SASL identity mapping for any user in the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** subtree who belongs to the **inetOrgPerson** object class.

When a Directory Server receives a SASL bind request with **mconnors@EXAMPLE.COM** as the user ID (**authid**), the regular expression fills in the base DN template with **uid=mconnors,ou=people,dc=EXAMPLE,dc=COM** as the user ID, and authentication proceeds from there.



NOTE

The **dc** values are not case sensitive, so **dc=EXAMPLE** and **dc=example** are equivalent.

The Directory Server can also use a more inclusive mapping scheme, such as the following:

```
dn: cn=example map,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsSaslMapping
cn: example map
nsSaslMapRegexString: \(.*)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (cn=\1)
```

This matches any user ID and map it an entry under the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** subtree which meets the filter **cn=userId**.

Mappings can be confined to a single realm by specifying the realm in the ***nsSaslMapRegexString*** attribute. For example:

```
dn: cn=example map,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsSaslMapping
cn: example map
nsSaslMapRegexString: \(.*)@US.EXAMPLE.COM
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (cn=\1)
```

This mapping is identical to the previous mapping, except that it only applies to users authenticating from the **US.EXAMPLE.COM** realm. (Realms are described in [Section 9.10.2.1, "About Principals and Realms"](#).)

When a server connects to another server, such as during replication or with chaining, the default mappings for the will not properly map the identities. This is because the principal (SASL identity) for one server does not match the principal on the server where authentication is taking place, so it does not match the mapping entries.

To allow server to server authentication using SASL, create a mapping for the specific server principal to a specific user entry. For example, this mapping matches the **ldap1.example.com** server to the **cn=replication manager,cn=config** entry. The mapping entry itself is created on the second server, such as **ldap2.example.com**.

```
dn: cn=z,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsSaslMapping
cn: z
nsSaslMapRegexString: ldap/ldap1.example.com@EXAMPLE.COM
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: cn=replication manager,cn=config
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (objectclass=*)
```

Sometimes, the realm name is not included in the principal name in SASL GSS-API configuration. A second mapping can be created which is identical to the first, only without specifying the realm in the principal name. For example:

```
dn: cn=y,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsSaslMapping
cn: y
nsSaslMapRegexString: ldap/ldap1.example.com
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: cn=replication manager,cn=config
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (objectclass=*)
```

Because the realm is not specified, the second mapping is more general (meaning, it has the potential to match more entries than the first). The best practice is to have more specific mappings processed first and gradually progress through more general mappings.

If a priority is not set for a SASL mapping using the *nsSaslMapPriority* parameter, there is no way to specify the order that mappings are processed. However, there is a way to control how SASL mappings are processed: the name. The Directory Server processes SASL mappings in reverse ASCII order. In the past two example, then the **cn=z** mapping (the first example) is processed first. If there is no match, the server processes the **cn=y** mapping (the second example).



NOTE

SASL mappings can be added when an instance is created during a silent installation by specifying the mappings in an LDIF file and adding the LDIF file with the **ConfigFile** directive. Using silent installation is described in the *Installation Guide*.

9.9.2. Default SASL Mappings for Directory Server

The Directory Server has pre-defined SASL mapping rules to handle some of the most common usage.

Kerberos UID Mapping

This matches a Kerberos principal using a two part realm, such as **user@example.com**. The realm is then used to define the search base, and the user ID (**authid**) defines the filter. The search base is **dc=example,dc=com** and the filter of **(uid=user)**.

```
dn: cn=Kerberos uid mapping,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSaslMapping
cn: Kerberos uid mapping
nsSaslMapRegexString: \(.*)@\(.*)\.(.*)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: dc=\2,dc=\3
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (uid=\1)
```

RFC 2829 DN Syntax

This mapping matches an **authid** that is a valid DN (defined in RFC 2829) prefixed by **dn:**. The **authid** maps directly to the specified DN.

```
dn: cn=rfc 2829 dn syntax,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSaslMapping
cn: rfc 2829 dn syntax
nsSaslMapRegexString: ^dn:\(.*)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: \1
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (objectclass=*)
```

RFC 2829 U Syntax

This mapping matches an **authid** that is a UID prefixed by **u:**. The value specified after the prefix defines a filter of (**uid=value**). The search base is hard-coded to be the suffix of the default **userRoot** database.

```
dn: cn=rfc 2829 u syntax,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSaslMapping
cn: rfc 2829 u syntax
nsSaslMapRegexString: ^u:\(.*)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: dc=example,dc=com
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (uid=\1)
```

UID Mapping

This mapping matches an **authid** that is any plain string that does not match the other default mapping rules. It use this value to define a filter of (**uid=value**). The search base is hard-coded to be the suffix of the default **userRoot** database.

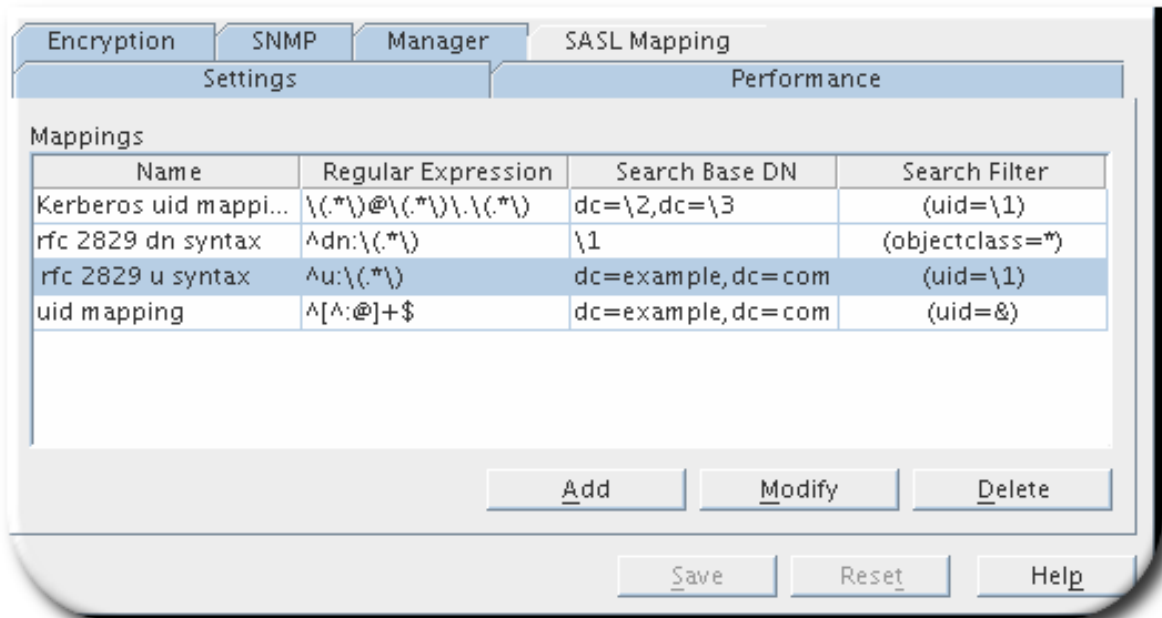
```
dn: cn=uid mapping,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: nsSaslMapping
cn: uid mapping
nsSaslMapRegexString: ^[^\:@]+$
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: dc=example,dc=com
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (uid=&)
```

9.9.3. Configuring SASL Identity Mapping

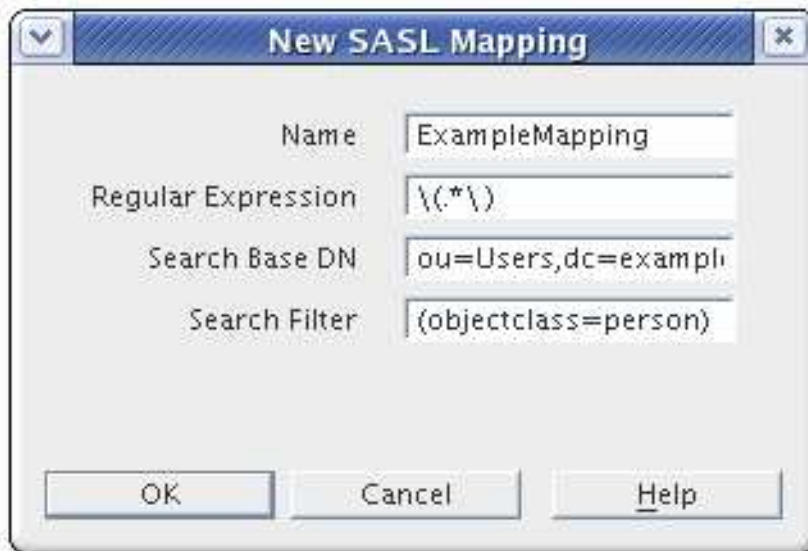
SASL identity mapping can be configured from either the Directory Server or the command line. For SASL identity mapping to work for SASL authentication, the mapping must return one, and only one, entry that matches and Kerberos must be configured on the host machine.

9.9.3.1. Configuring SASL Identity Mapping from the Console

1. In the Directory Server Console, open the **Configuration** tab.
2. Select the **SASL Mapping** tab.



- To add a new SASL identity mapping, select the **Add** button, and fill in the required values.



- *Name*. This field sets the unique name of the SASL mapping.
- *Regular expression*. This field sets the regular expression used to match the DN components, such as `\{.*\}`. This field corresponds to the **nsSaslMapRegexString** value in the SASL mapping LDIF entry.
- *Search base DN*. This field gives the base DN to search to map entries, such as **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**. This field corresponds to the **nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate** value in the SASL mapping LDIF entry.
- *Search filter*. This field gives the search filter for the components to replace, such as **(objectclass=*)**. This field corresponds to the **nsSaslMapFilterTemplate** value in the SASL mapping LDIF entry.

To edit a SASL identity mapping, highlight that identity in the **SASL Mapping** tab, and click **Modify**. Change any values, and save.

To delete a SASL identity mapping, highlight it and hit **Delete**. A dialog box comes up to confirm the deletion.

9.9.3.2. Configuring SASL Identity Mapping from the Command Line

To configure SASL identity mapping from the command line, use the **ldapmodify** utility to add the identity mapping scheme. For example:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=example map,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsSaslMapping
cn: example map
nsSaslMapRegexString: \(.*)
nsSaslMapBaseDNTemplate: ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
nsSaslMapFilterTemplate: (cn=\1)
```

This matches any user's common name and maps it to the result of the subtree search with base **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com**, based on the filter **cn=userId**.



NOTE

When SASL maps are added over LDAP, they are not used by the server until it is restarted. Adding the SASL map with **ldapmodify** adds the mapping to the end of the list, regardless of its ASCII order.

9.9.4. Enabling SASL Mapping Fallback

Using the default settings, Directory Server verifies only the first matching SASL mapping. If this first matching mapping fails, the bind operation fails and no further matching mappings are verified.

However, you can configure Directory Server to verify all matching mappings by enabling the **nsslapd-sasl-mapping-fallback** parameter:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-sasl-mapping-fallback
nsslapd-sasl-mapping-fallback: on
```

If fallback is enabled and only one user identity is returned, the bind succeeds. If no user, or more than one user is returned, the bind fails.

9.9.4.1. Setting SASL Mapping Priorities

If you enabled SASL mapping fallback using the **nsslapd-sasl-mapping-fallback** attribute, you can optionally set the **nsSaslMapPriority** attribute in mapping configurations to prioritize them. The **nsSaslMapPriority** attribute supports values from **1** (highest priority) to **100** (lowest priority). The default is **100**.

For example, to set the highest priority for the **cn=Kerberos uid mapping,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config** mapping:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
dn: cn=Kerberos uid mapping,cn=mapping,cn=sasl,cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsSaslMapPriority
nsSaslMapPriority: 1
```

9.10. USING KERBEROS GSS-API WITH SASL

Kerberos v5 must be deployed on the host for Directory Server to utilize the GSS-API mechanism for SASL authentication. GSS-API and Kerberos client libraries must be installed on the Directory Server host to take advantage of Kerberos services.

9.10.1. Authentication Mechanisms for SASL in Directory Server

Directory Server support the following SASL encryption mechanisms:

- *PLAIN*. *PLAIN* sends cleartext passwords for simple password-based authentication.
- *EXTERNAL*. *EXTERNAL*, as with TLS, performs certificate-based authentication. This method uses public keys for strong authentication.
- *CRAM-MD5*. **CRAM-MD5** is a weak, simple challenge-response authentication method. It does not establish any security layer.



WARNING

Red Hat recommends not using the insecure **CRAM-MD5** mechanism.

- *DIGEST-MD5*. **DIGEST-MD5** is a weak authentication method for LDAPv3 servers.



WARNING

Red Hat recommends not using the insecure **DIGGEST-MD5** mechanism.

- *Generic Security Services (GSS-API)*. Generic Security Services (GSS) is a security API that is the native way for UNIX-based operating systems to access and authenticate Kerberos services. GSS-API also supports session encryption, similar to TLS. This allows LDAP clients to authenticate with the server using Kerberos version 5 credentials (tickets) and to use network session encryption.

For Directory Server to use GSS-API, Kerberos must be configured on the host machine. See [Section 9.10, "Using Kerberos GSS-API with SASL"](#).



NOTE

GSS-API and, thus, Kerberos are only supported on platforms that have GSS-API support. To use GSS-API, it may be necessary to install the Kerberos client libraries; any required Kerberos libraries will be available through the operating system vendor.

9.10.2. About Kerberos in Directory Server

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the supported Kerberos libraries are MIT Kerberos version 5.

The concepts of Kerberos, as well as using and configuring Kerberos, are covered at the MIT Kerberos website, <http://web.mit.edu/Kerberos/>.

9.10.2.1. About Principals and Realms

A *principal* is a user or service in the Kerberos environment. A *realm* defines what Kerberos manages in terms of who can access what. The client, the KDC, and the host or service you want to access must use the same realm.



NOTE

Kerberos realms are only supported for GSS-API authentication and encryption, not for DIGEST-MD5.

Realms are used by the server to associate the DN of the client in the following form, which looks like an LDAP DN:

```
uid=user_name/[server_instance],cn=realm,cn=mechanism,cn=auth
```

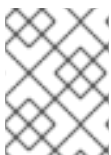
For example, Mike Connors in the **engineering** realm of the European division of **example.com** uses the following association to access a server in the US realm:

```
uid=mconnors/cn=Europe.example.com,cn=engineering,cn=gssapi,cn=auth
```

Babara Jensen, from the **accounting** realm of **US.example.com**, does not have to specify a realm when to access a local server:

```
uid=bjensen,cn=accounting,cn=gssapi,cn=auth
```

If realms are supported by the mechanism and the default realm is not used to authenticate to the server, then the *realm* must be specified in the Kerberos principal. Otherwise, the realm can be omitted.



NOTE

Kerberos systems treat the Kerberos realm as the default realm; other systems default to the server.

9.10.2.2. About the KDC Server and Keytabs

The Key Distribution Center (KDC) authenticates users and issues Ticket Granting Tickets (TGT) for them. This enables users to authenticate to Directory Server using GSS-API. To respond to Kerberos operations, Directory Server requires access to its keytab file. The keytab contains the cryptographic key that Directory Server uses to authenticate to other servers.

Directory Server uses the **ldap** service name in a Kerberos principal. For example:

```
ldap/server.example.com/EXAMPLE.COM
```

For details about creating the keytab, see your Kerberos documentation.



NOTE

You must create a Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) mapping for the Directory Server Kerberos principal that maps to an existing entry Distinguished Name (DN).

9.10.3. Configuring SASL Authentication at Directory Server Startup

SASL GSS-API authentication has to be activated in Directory Server so that Kerberos tickets can be used for authentication. This is done by supplying a system configuration file for the init scripts to use which identifies the variable to set the keytab file location. When the init script runs at Directory Server startup, SASL authentication is then immediately active.

The default SASL configuration is stored in the **/etc/sysconfig/dirsrv** file.

If there are multiple Directory Server instances and not all of them will use SASL authentication, then there can be instance-specific configuration files created in the **/etc/sysconfig/** directory named **dirsrv-*instance***. For example, **dirsrv-example**. The default **dirsrv** file can be used if there is a single instance on a host.

To enable SASL authentication, uncomment the **KRB5_KTNAME** line in the **/etc/sysconfig/dirsrv** (or instance-specific) file, and set the keytab location for the **KRB5_KTNAME** variable. For example:

```
# In order to use SASL/GSSAPI the directory
# server needs to know where to find its keytab
# file - uncomment the following line and set
# the path and filename appropriately
KRB5_KTNAME=/etc/dirsrv/krb5.keytab
```

9.11. SETTING SASL MECHANISMS

Per default, Directory Server enables all mechanisms the simple authentication and security layer (SASL) library supports. These are listed in the root dse **supportedSASLMechanisms** parameter. To enable specific SASL mechanisms, set the **nsslapd-allowed-sasl-mechanisms** attribute in the **cn=config** entry. For example, to enable only the **GSSAPI** and **DIGEST-MD5** mechanism, run:

```
# ldapmodify -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -x

dn: cn=config
changetype: modify
replace: nsslapd-allowed-sasl-mechanisms
nsslapd-allowed-sasl-mechanisms: GSSAPI, DIGEST-MD5
```


**NOTE**

Even if **EXTERNAL** is not listed in the `nsslapd-allowed-sasl-mechanisms` attribute, this mechanism is always enabled.

For further details, see the corresponding section in the [Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference](#).

9.12. USING SASL WITH LDAP CLIENTS

To use SASL with the LDAP clients, such as `ldapsearch`, pass the `-Y SASL_mechanism` to the command. For example:

- To use the **GSSAPI** SASL mechanism over the LDAP protocol:

```
# ldapsearch -Y GSSAPI -U "dn:uid=user_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com" -R  
EXAMPLE.COM -H ldap://server.example.com -b "dc=example,dc=com"
```

- To use the **PLAIN** SASL mechanism over the LDAPS protocol:

```
# ldapsearch -Y PLAIN -D "uid=user_name,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com" -W -H  
ldaps://server.example.com -b "dc=example,dc=com"
```

**NOTE**

SASL proxy authorization is not supported in Directory Server. Therefore, Directory Server ignores any SASL **authzid** value supplied by the client.

CHAPTER 10. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION

The Directory Server offers a number of mechanisms to secure access to sensitive data, such as access control rules to prevent unauthorized users from reading certain entries or attributes within entries and TLS to protect data from eavesdropping and tampering on untrusted networks. However, if a copy of the server's database files should fall into the hands of an unauthorized person, they could potentially extract sensitive information from those files. Because information in a database is stored in plain text, some sensitive information, such as government identification numbers or passwords, may not be protected enough by standard access control measures.

For highly sensitive information, this potential for information loss could present a significant security risk. In order to remove that security risk, Directory Server allows portions of its database to be encrypted. Once encrypted, the data are safe even in the event that an attacker has a copy of the server's database files.

Database encryption allows attributes to be encrypted in the database. Both encryption and the encryption cipher are configurable per attribute per back end. When configured, every instance of a particular attribute, even index data, is encrypted for every entry stored in that database.

An additional benefit of attribute encryption is, that encrypted values can only be sent to a clients with a Security Strength Factor (SSF) greater than 1.



NOTE

There is one exception to encrypted data: any value which is used as the RDN for an entry is not encrypted within the entry DN. For example, if the **uid** attribute is encrypted, the value is encrypted in the entry but is displayed in the DN:

```
# entry-id: 16
dn: uid=jsmith1234,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
nsUniqueId: ee91ea82-1dd111b2-9f36e9bc-39fb8550
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: inetorgperson
givenName: John
sn: Smith
uid:: Sf04P9nJWGU1qiW9JJCGRg==
```

That would allow someone to discover the encrypted value.

Any attribute used within the entry DN cannot be effectively encrypted, since it will always be displayed in the DN. Be aware of what attributes are used to build the DN and design the attribute encryption model accordingly.

Indexed attributes may be encrypted, and attribute encryption is fully compatible with **eq** and **pres** indexing. The contents of the index files that are normally derived from attribute values are also encrypted to prevent an attacker from recovering part or all of the encrypted data from an analysis of the indexes.

Since the server pre-encrypts all index keys before looking up an index for an encrypted attribute, there is some effect on server performance for searches that make use of an encrypted index, but the effect is not serious enough that it is no longer worthwhile to use an index.

10.1. ENCRYPTION KEYS

In order to use attribute encryption, the server must be configured for TLS and have TLS enabled because attribute encryption uses the server's TLS encryption key and the same PIN input methods as TLS. The PIN must either be entered manually upon server startup or a PIN file must be used.

Randomly generated symmetric cipher keys are used to encrypt and decrypt attribute data. A separate key is used for each configured cipher. These keys are *wrapped* using the public key from the server's TLS certificate, and the resulting wrapped key is stored within the server's configuration files. The effective strength of the attribute encryption is never higher than the strength of the server's TLS key used for wrapping. Without access to the server's private key, it is not possible to recover the symmetric keys from the wrapped copies.



WARNING

There is no mechanism for recovering a lost key. Therefore, it is especially important to back up the server's certificate database safely. If the server's certificate were lost, it would not be possible to decrypt any encrypted data stored in its database.



WARNING

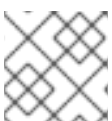
If the TLS certificate is expiring and needs to be renewed, export the encrypted back end instance before the renewal. Update the certificate, then re-import the exported LDIF file.

10.2. ENCRYPTION CIPHERS

The encryption cipher is configurable on a per-attribute basis and must be selected by the administrator at the time encryption is enabled for an attribute. Configuration can be done through the Console or through the command line.

The following ciphers are supported:

- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
- Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES)



NOTE

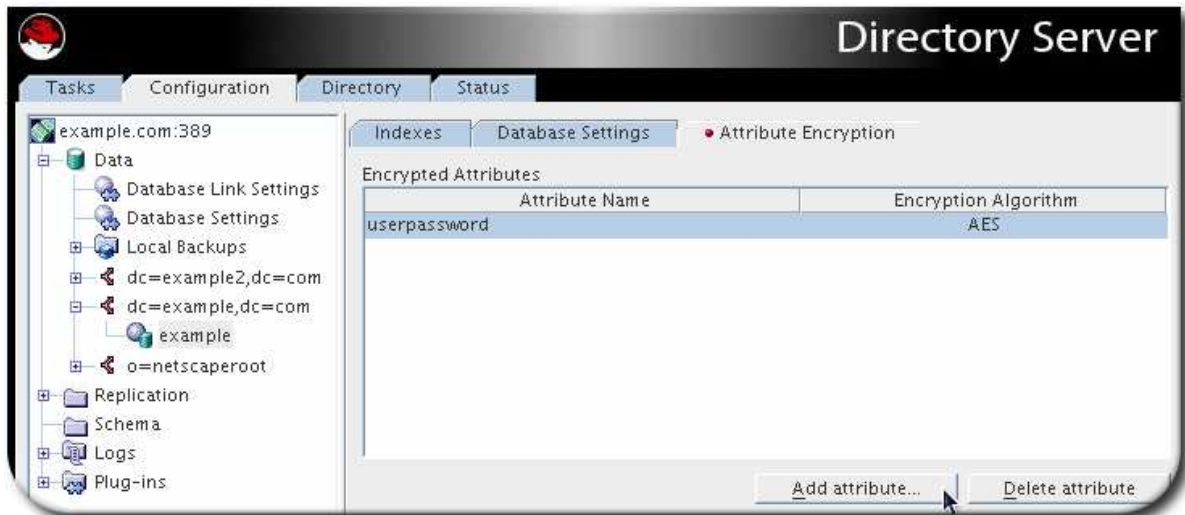
For strong encryption, Red Hat recommends using only AES ciphers.

All ciphers are used in Cipher Block Chaining mode.

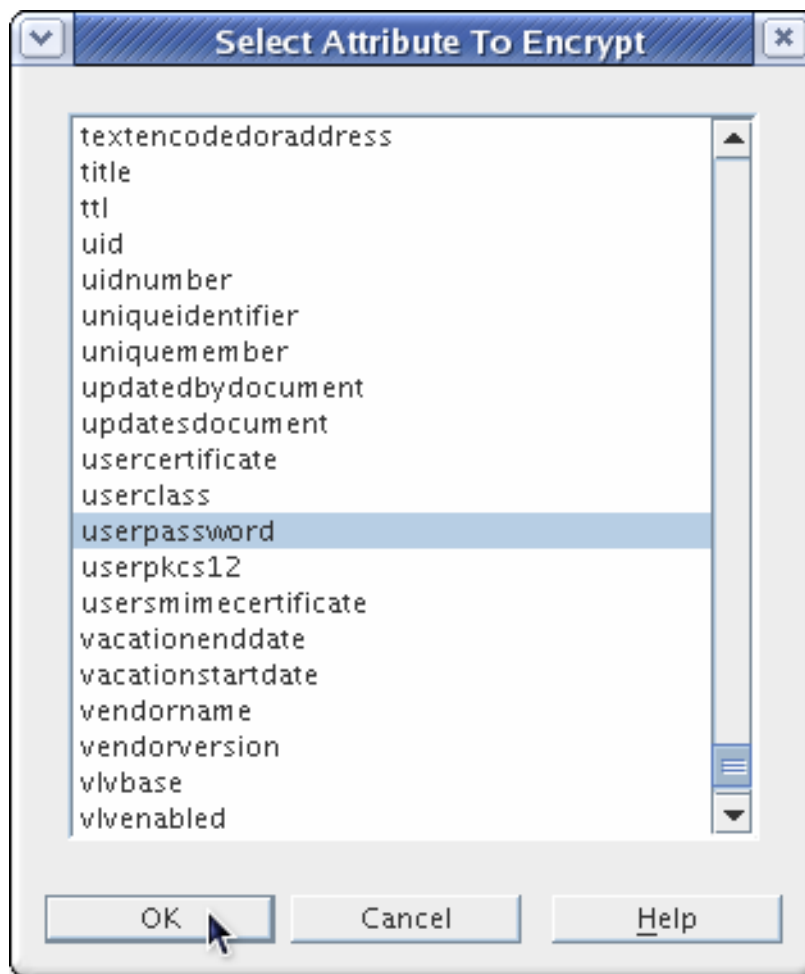
Once the encryption cipher is set, it should not be changed without exporting and re-importing the data.

10.3. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION FROM THE CONSOLE

1. In the **Configuration** tab, select the **Data** node.
2. Expand the suffix, and select the database to edit.
3. Select the **Attribute Encryption** tab.



4. Click the **Add Attribute** button to open the list of attributes. Select the attribute to encrypt.



**NOTE**

For existing attribute values to be encrypted, the information must be exported from the database, then re-imported. See [Section 10.7, "Exporting and Importing an Encrypted Database"](#).

5. Select which encryption cipher to use.

**NOTE**

The encryption cipher to use is set separately for each attribute, so attribute encryption is applied to each attribute one at a time.

To remove encryption from attributes, select them from the list of encrypted attributes in the **Attribute Encryption** table, click the **Delete** button, and then click **Save** to apply the changes. Any deleted attributes have to be manually re-added after saving.

10.4. CONFIGURING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION USING THE COMMAND LINE

1. Run the **ldapmodify** command:

```
# ldapmodify -a -D "cn=Directory Manager" -W -p 389 -h server.example.com -x
```

2. Add an encryption entry for the attribute being encrypted. For example, this entry encrypts the **telephoneNumber** attribute with the AES cipher:

```
dn: cn=telephoneNumber,cn=encrypted attributes,cn=Database1,cn=ldbm
database,cn=plugins,cn=config
changetype: add
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsAttributeEncryption
cn: telephoneNumber
nsEncryptionAlgorithm: AES
```

3. For existing attributes in entries to be encrypted, the information must be exported, then re-imported. See [Section 10.7, "Exporting and Importing an Encrypted Database"](#).

For more information on attribute encryption configuration schema, see "Database Attributes under `cn=attributeName,cn=encrypted attributes,cn=database_name,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config`" in the *Red Hat Directory Server Configuration, Command, and File Reference*.

10.5. ENABLING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION FOR EXISTING ATTRIBUTE VALUES

To enable attribute encryption on an attribute with existing stored data, export the database to LDIF first, then make the configuration change, then re-import the data to the database. The server does not enforce consistency between encryption configuration and stored data; therefore, pay careful attention that all existing data are exported before enabling or disabling encryption.

10.6. GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS AFTER ENABLING ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION

When you enable encryption for data that is already in the database:

- Unencrypted data can persist in the server's database page pool backing file. To remove this data:

1. Stop the instance:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance_name
```

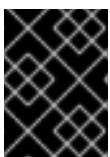
2. Delete the `/var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/db/guardian` file:

```
# rm /var/lib/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/db/guardian
```

3. Start the instance:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance_name
```

- After you enabled encryption and successfully imported the data, delete the LDIF file with the unencrypted data.
- After enabling encryption, the Directory Server deletes and creates a new database when re-importing the data.
- The replication log file is not encrypted. To protect this data, store it on an encrypted disk.
- Data in the server's memory (RAM) is unencrypted and can be temporarily stored in swap partitions. To protect this data, set up encrypted swap space.



IMPORTANT

Even if you delete files that contain unencrypted data, this data can be restored under certain circumstances.

10.7. EXPORTING AND IMPORTING AN ENCRYPTED DATABASE

Exporting and importing encrypted databases is similar to exporting and importing regular databases. However, the encrypted information must be decrypted when you export the data and re-encrypted when you re-import it to the database.

10.7.1. Exporting an Encrypted Database

To export data from an encrypted database, pass the **-E** parameter to the **db2ldif** script. The script uses the password stored in the Directory Server configuration to decrypt the database.

To encrypt a complete database:

```
# db2ldif -Z instance_name -n database_name -E -a /tmp/data.ldif
```

Alternatively, you can export only a specific subtree. For example, to export all data from the **ou=People,dc=example,dc=com** entry into the **/tmp/export.ldif** file:

```
# db2ldif -Z instance_name -n database_name -E -s "ou=people,dc=example,dc=com" \
-a /tmp/data.ldif
```



IMPORTANT

The **db2ldif** script exports the content using the operating system account of the Directory Server instance. Therefore, this account must be able to write to the file set in the **-a** option.

10.7.2. Importing an LDIF File into an Encrypted Database

To import data to a database when encryption is enabled:

1. Stop the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance_name
```

2. If you replaced the certificate database between the last export and this import, edit the **/etc/dirsrv/slapd-*instance_name*/dse.ldif** file and remove the following entries including their attributes:

- **cn=AES,cn=encrypted attribute keys,cn=*database_name*,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config**
- **cn=3DES,cn=encrypted attribute keys,cn=*database_name*,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config**



IMPORTANT

Remove the entries for all databases. If any entry that contains the **nsSymmetricKey** attribute is left in the **/etc/dirsrv/slapd-*instance_name*/dse.ldif** file, Directory Server will fail to start.

3. Import the LDIF file. For example:

```
# ldif2db -Z instance_name -n database_name -E -i /tmp/data.ldif
```

The **-E** parameter enables the script to encrypt attributes configured for encryption during the import.

4. Start the instance:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance_name
```

10.8. UPDATING THE TLS CERTIFICATES USED FOR ATTRIBUTE ENCRYPTION

Attribute encryption is based on the TLS certificate. To prevent that attribute encryption fails after renewing or replacing the TLS certificate:

1. Export the database with decrypted attributes. See [Section 10.7.1, "Exporting an Encrypted Database"](#).
2. Delete the existing private key and certificate from the Network Security Services (NSS) database. See [Section 9.3.8, "Removing a Private Key"](#).
3. Create a new Certificate Signing Request (CSR). See [Section 9.3.2, "Creating a Certificate Signing Request"](#).
4. Install the new certificate. See [Section 9.3.4, "Installing a Certificate"](#).
5. Stop the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl stop dirsrv@instance_name
```

6. Edit the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif` file and remove the following entries including their attributes:
 - o **cn=AES,cn=encrypted attribute keys,cn=*database_name*,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config**
 - o **cn=3DES,cn=encrypted attribute keys,cn=*database_name*,cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config**



IMPORTANT

Remove the entries for all databases. If any entry that contains the ***nsSymmetricKey*** attribute is left in the `/etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name/dse.ldif` file, Directory Server will fail to start.

7. Import the database. See [Section 10.7.2, "Importing an LDIF File into an Encrypted Database"](#).
8. Start the instance:

```
# systemctl start dirsrv@instance_name
```


CHAPTER 11. MANAGING FIPS MODE SUPPORT

Red Hat Directory Server fully supports the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2. When Directory Server runs in FIPS mode, security-related settings change. For example, SSL is automatically disabled and only TLS 1.1 and 1.2 encryption is used.

For general details about FIPS, see [Federal Information Processing Standard \(FIPS\)](#) in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Security Guide*.

Enabling FIPS Mode Support

To enable FIPS mode support for Directory Server:

1. Optionally, enable FIPS mode in Red Hat Enterprise Linux. For details, see the corresponding section in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Security Guide*.
2. Enable FIPS mode for the network security services (NSS) database:

```
# modutil -dbdir /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name -fips true
```

3. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

Disabling FIPS Mode Support

To disable FIPS mode support for Directory Server:

1. Disable FIPS mode for the network security services (NSS) database:

```
# modutil -dbdir /etc/dirsrv/slapd-instance_name -fips false
```

2. Restart the Directory Server instance:

```
# systemctl restart dirsrv@instance_name
```

3. Optionally, disable FIPS mode in Red Hat Enterprise Linux. For details, see the corresponding section in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Security Guide*.